

America and Great  
Britain – Our  
**IDENTITY**  
*Revealed!*

**Ephraim and Manasseh  
in the “*End of Days*”**

*William F. Dankenbring*

**Baruch attah Adonai Elohenu  
Melek ha'Olam  
Asher kidshanu b'mitzvotav**

**“Blessed are You, O Lord our God,  
King of the Universe,  
Who has sanctified us  
by Your Commandments.”**

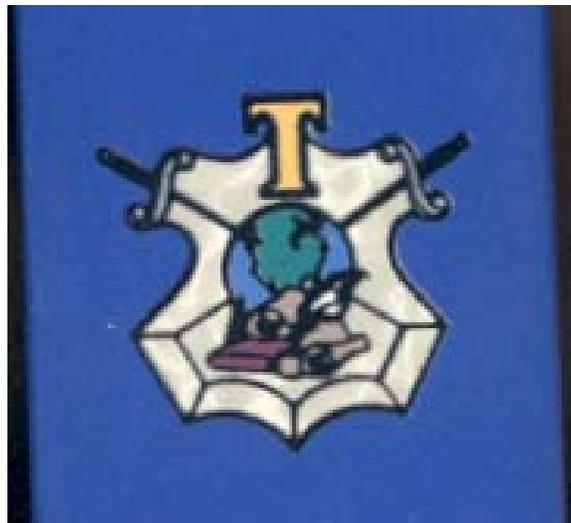
“Twice in a single generation the catastrophe of world war has fallen upon us; twice in our lifetime has the long arm of fate reached across the ocean to bring the United States into the forefront of the battle. . . . Prodigious hammer-strokes have been needed to bring us together again, or if you will allow me to use other language, I will say that *he must indeed have a blind soul who cannot see that some great purpose and design is being worked out here below*, of which we have the honor to be the faithful servants. It is not given to us to peer into the mysteries of the future. Still I avow my hope and faith, sure and inviolate, that in the days to come the *British and American peoples will for their own safety and for the good of all, walk together side by side in majesty, in justice and in peace.*”

-- Winston S. Churchill, December 26, 1941, shortly after Pearl Harbor was attacked, in a speech given before a Joint session of both houses of the U.S. Congress (taken from *Blood, Toil, Tears and Sweat – Winston Churchill’s Famous Speeches*).

In a Jewish Prayer offered every Sabbath,  
Before the Sabbath Dinner,  
A Blessing is recited for Children:

“*Y’simkha Elohim k’Ephrayeem v’khee M’nasheh.*”

“*May the LORD make you like Ephraim and Manasseh.*”



Published by Triumph Publishing Company  
PO Box 292  
Altadena CA 91003  
[www.triumphpro.com](http://www.triumphpro.com)  
triumphpro@aol.com

Copyright 2004 2011 by  
William F. Dankenbring  
All rights reserved

No part of this book may be reproduced without permission  
from the publisher, except for brief portions in reviews which  
may be quoted by reviewers.

## Thanks

I wish to thank all those who have helped in the production of this book, especially Nick Wood of England, who has gone over the manuscript several times, pointing out typographical errors, making suggestions, and very helpful comments on various passages of the book. His help has been invaluable. I also want to thank Terry Humphries, of Wales, who made several very helpful comments. Also Anneke van Delft of Holland helped go over the text, and Bill and Ruth Lund, long-time friends and members of God's Church, were very helpful in proof-reading and checking the book for errors. To all a hearty thank you and job well done. Any remaining errors are my own.

I especially want to thank my wife, Cappy, for standing by me and putting up with my being so "focused," to the exclusion of most everything else, while writing and editing this material. She has been the touchstone of patience and understanding, a true support and mainstay. Truly God says, "A prudent wife is from the LORD," and she is every bit of that. Proverbs 12:4 in the *Living Bible* says, "A worthy wife is her husband's joy and crown." God has certainly blessed me with a wonderful soul-mate and companion all these years since our marriage in 1967. All who know her, know she is a "virtuous woman," a "truly good wife" (Prov.31:10), thoughtful, loving, and considerate of others, always kind and helpful.

Ronald Reagan said in 1990, "I can sum up my marriage in a line I spoke when I played the great pitcher Grover Cleveland Alexander, a line spoken by him in life to his wife Aimee: 'God must think a lot of me to have given me you.' I thank Him every day for giving me Nancy." Well, I thank Him every day for giving me Cappy! My love and appreciation for Cappy only increases by leaps and bounds as we grow older together.

I present this book to the reading audience, all of you, as a labor of love. I most sincerely pray and devoutly hope that this book may be a great blessing to all of you, and pray that God will bless it according to His glorious will as a testimony for the truth of the matter, to reveal His own goodness in history, and His righteous purpose in our lives, as we approach the end of this age and the coming of the Messiah. Surely to come to know and understand our *roots* – our *identity* – who we are, where we came from, and why God brought us as nations into being, and where we are going – is crucial to fulfilling our divine destiny and calling. As David wrote, "Blessed is the nation whose God is the LORD, the people whom He has chosen for His heritage" (Psalm 33:12, NRSV).

“There is nothing so powerful as truth – and often  
nothing so strange.”

-- Daniel Webster

“ ‘Tis strange – but true; for truth is always strange;  
Stranger than fiction.”

-- Byron

“Truth is stranger than fiction, but not so popular.”

-- Anonymous

“Truth stands the test of time; lies are soon exposed.”

-- Proverbs 12:19, *The Living Bible*.

“You will understand the truth, and the truth will set you free”

-- John 8:32, *Moffatt Translation*

Some men stumble over the truth,  
pick themselves up, brush themselves off,  
and carry on as if nothing ever happened.”

-- Winston Churchill

“Let us now praise famous men  
and our fathers that begat us.”

-- Ecclesiasticus 44:1

“The more thou searchest, the more thou shalt marvel.”

-- Esdras

## Comments from Readers

“I don’t know where you find the time to do all you do, as well as write this phenomenal book on the United States and Great Britain in the ‘End Of Days’, and when I say phenomenal I really mean it.

“I have been pondering the meaning of this book over the last few days and its purpose. It is not just a book about the United States and Great Britain, although that of course is a large part of it. For those with a reasonable open mind, this book proves beyond any shadow of doubt that there is a Supreme Being who guides the destinies of entire peoples and nations. I think it was Herbert Armstrong who said and wrote on numerous occasions, that ‘Fulfilled Prophecy’ is one of the major proofs of the existence of GOD.

“This is a book which gives due warning of the catastrophic events which are soon to befall this world, and the way of escape by turning back to our Creator. This book ‘Cries Aloud And Spares Not’, while also preaching the True Gospel of the Kingdom of God, the wonderful good news that Yeshua The Messiah is going to return to this Earth very soon now, to bring an end to all the suffering, heartache, tears and misery of humanity under Satan’s sway.

“This is a book calling people everywhere to repentance. It is a book for people of all races, creeds and colors. It is for both Israelite and Gentile, for Jews as well as Christians, and also for the Atheist and the Agnostic, the Scoffer and the Skeptic. This is a book which will give humanity real hope in the days ahead when they see the events that are prophesied to happen, begin to come to pass. I have no hesitation in saying that in many ways, this book has been inspired by God’s Holy Spirit to witness to the Truth. May Almighty God bless this book in every way.”

-- Nick Wood, England

“Thank you for all the effort you have put in writing this book. Thank you Cappy for being such a great support and loving helper. May our God bless both of you. I pray this book will bring many people to see the truth and repent.”

-- Anneke van Delft, The Netherlands.

“Bill, you really nailed it this time that indeed America is Ephraim and Great Britain is Manasseh. I pray that our peoples will get on their knees in fervent repentant prayer before that great and terrible day of the Lord.”

-- Terry Humphries, United Kingdom.

“Bill – What an AWESOME, inspired and inspiring book! It’s too bad that all history students are not given at least one year to go through this book page by page so they may truly understand where they came from, why they are here, and what is in store for them. What life altering changes it could make in the lives and choices of many of our young people. It makes us sad to realize that there are so few, if any, teachers in our educational system today capable of teaching such a course.”

-- Bill and Ruth Lund, California

## Table of Contents

<i>Prologue</i>	The Mystery on Mystery Mountain	12
<i>Part One</i>	PROOF OF OUR IDENTITY	
<i>Chapter 1</i>	The Enigma of Our Origin	19
<i>Chapter 2</i>	The Great Promises to Israel	26
<i>Chapter 3</i>	Ephraim – “Doubly Fruitful”	42
<i>Chapter 4</i>	American Empire and the “Gates of Our Enemies”	63
<i>Chapter 5</i>	The Proof of Heraldic Emblems	75
<i>Chapter 6</i>	The Number “13” and Ephraim	82
<i>Chapter 7</i>	The Unicorn and Manasseh	91
<i>Chapter 8</i>	What’s in a Name?	103
<i>Chapter 9</i>	Ephraim – God’s “Helmet”	111
<i>Chapter 10</i>	Tribe of Dan – the Serpent’s Trail	127
<i>Chapter 11</i>	Zarah and Pharez – The Red Hand	143
<i>Chapter 12</i>	The Watchman for Ephraim	152
<i>Chapter 13</i>	Ephraim the More Religious Son	169
<i>Chapter 14</i>	The Astonishing Prophetic Times	210
<i>Chapter 15</i>	Honest Objections Answered	226
<i>Chapter 16</i>	Prophesied for America-Ephraim in the End of Days	252
<i>Chapter 17</i>	God’s Awesome Hand in Our History	267

## Foreword

Who are the United States and Great Britain, and the English-speaking peoples, in Biblical prophecy? What difference does it make?

The vast majority of people think that our English stock is basically “Gentile,” and we are just “one of the nations.” But is this true? The Jewish historian of the first century, Flavius Josephus, in his *Antiquities of the Jews*, wrote that during the time of Ezra, about 457 B.C. – when the king of Persia permitted the Jews to return to Jerusalem – many of them did. But, he relates, “the entire body of the people of Israel remained in that country; wherefore there are but two tribes in Asia and Europe subject to the Romans, *while the TEN TRIBES are BEYOND EUPHRATES till NOW, and are an IMMENSE MULTITUDE, and not to be estimated by numbers*” (Josephus, *Ant.*, XI, 5, 2). What happened to this “immense multitude” of people who were still beyond the Euphrates River in 70 A.D., the time when Josephus lived? Where did they go?

In the book of II Esdras, in the Apocrypha, we read: “These are the ten tribes that in the days of king Hoshea were carried away from their own land into captivity, whom Shalmaneser, king of Assyria, made captives, and carried beyond the river; they were carried off to another country. But they formed this plan among themselves, to leave the heathen population, and *go to a more distant region, where the human race had never lived*, so that there perhaps they might keep their statutes, which they had not kept in their own country. And they went in by the narrow passages of the Euphrates River. . . . But it was a long journey of a year and a half to that country, and that country is called Arsareth. There they have lived until the last time . . .” (II Esdras 13:40-46, an American Translation by Edgar J. Goodspeed).

Famed Rabbi Moses Maimonides, in 1131 A.D., declared, “I believe the ten tribes to be in various parts of West Europe.”

And Dr. Moses Margoliouth, a Jewish scholar, wrote, “It may not be out of place to state that the Isles afar off mentioned in the 31<sup>st</sup> chapter of Jeremiah were supposed by the ancients to be Brittainia, Scotia and Hibernia (Ireland) . . . I believe that the old Cornish was a dialect of Hebrew as is Gaelic, Welsh and Breton.”

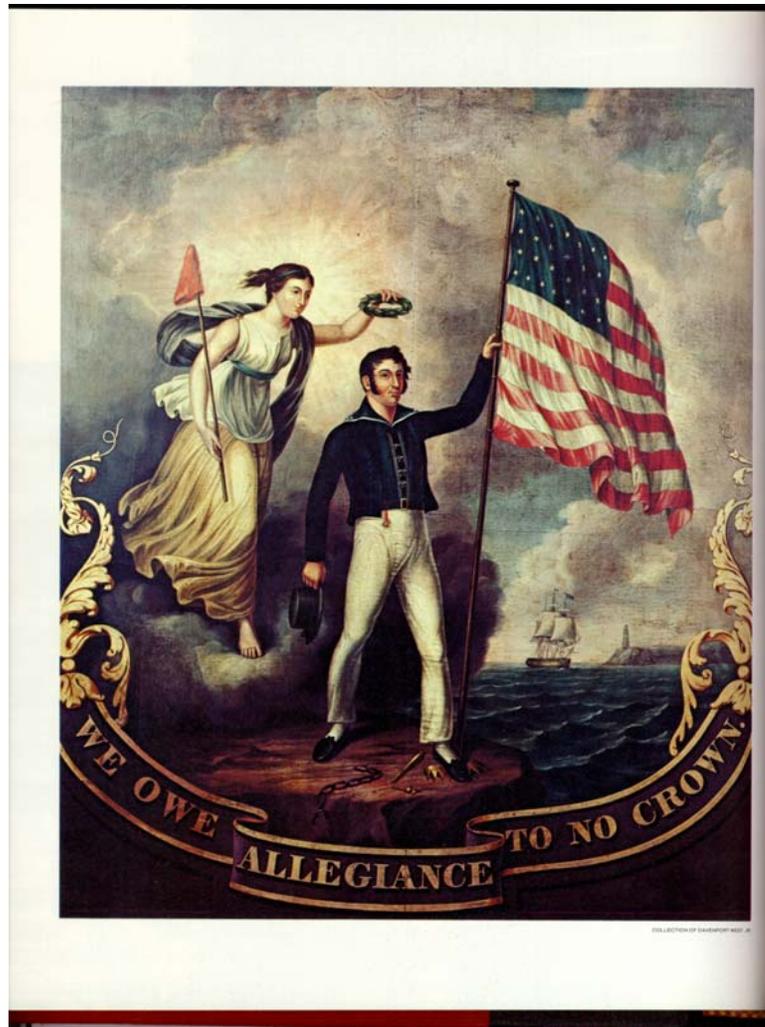
Perhaps the “Lost Ten Tribes” are not lost after all. If that is the case, then where are the *leading tribes of the Lost Ten Tribes*, today? Where is the “birthright” tribe of Joseph, which became two tribes – Ephraim and Manasseh?

This is no mere “footnote” to history and prophecy. It encompasses vital revelation of Biblical prophecy for the end times! The fate of nations – and the world – hangs in the balance! Your own fate is interlocked with the destiny of our peoples.



William F.

Dankenbring



“Is a trumpet is blown in a city, and the people are not afraid? Does disaster befall a city, unless the LORD has done it?”

“Surely the Lord GOD does nothing, without revealing His secret to his servants the prophets.”



Amos 3:6-7, NRSV.

“So we have the prophetic message more fully confirmed. You will do well to be attentive to this as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts. First of all you must understand this, that no prophecy is a matter of one’s own interpretation, because no prophecy ever came by human will, but men and women moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God.”



II Pet. 1:19-21, NRSV

## *Prologue*

# **The Mystery on Mystery Mountain**

Southwest of Albuquerque, New Mexico, lies a fascinating mountain with an incredible secret – a puzzling enigma which has been totally unknown to millions, and which has baffled those who have tried to solve the puzzle. Locals call it “Mystery Mountain.” About half way up the side of this mountain in a dry gorge lies an astonishing discovery – an ancient stone several tons in weight containing a secret that has perplexed scholars and archaeologists. It is an ancient inscription of the Ten Commandments, written in the language of archaic Hebrew!

What is the answer to the real mystery of Mystery Mountain?

Wednesday, October 22, 2003, after celebrating the Feast of Tabernacles in Wichita, Kansas, my wife and I journeyed to Los Lunas, New Mexico, to investigate this astounding artifact. We had a special reason for going there. I was returning to a spot in the desert which I had briefly visited 30 years ago, when I was writing for a religious Christian publication of some 5 million circulation. I was researching an article on “Who Really Discovered America?” which was published sometime about 1974. I had been intrigued by learning about an incredible stone monument – a mysterious writing etched in stone in a dry riverbed up on the sides of a mountain in south-central New Mexico. It was called “The Los Lunas Stone.”

In the fall of 2003, I had just completed and published a new article on the subject, “America BC – Did King Solomon’s Fleets Visit the New World?” In it I wrote of the mysterious rock containing the enigmatic Hebrew writing found in New Mexico back in the nineteenth century. Over the years, some scholars had scoffed and claimed the writing was a forgery, chiseled into the stone by early Mormons. However, further investigation and analysis by Professor Cyrus Gordon of Brandeis University, an expert in ancient Middle Eastern languages, found that the writing was no doubt genuine, and was a form of ancient Paleo-Hebrew, dating to centuries before the time of Christ!

Miracle of miracles! At the Feast in Wichita, we met a woman who had visited Mystery Mountain many times who was herself fascinated by the inscription on the “Los Lunas stone.” She offered to guide my wife and me back to the spot. She also told us that on top of Mystery Mountain were other inexplicable mysteries. On the northeastern side of the top was an ancient stone “zodiac,” or “sky map.” And on the southwestern corner was another stone, inscribed with the holy name of God in Paleo-Hebrew – YHVH!

Thursday, October 23, 2003, we drove out to the mountain, and hiked across the desert sands on a path leading to a ravine which ran up the side of the mountain. We hiked up the ravine about a quarter mile, and there it was – the Los Lunas Stone – with its clear and incisive ancient Hebrew script!

We stopped, took pictures, and then continued up the ancient dry creek bed, until we reached the top of the mountain, from which we could survey the surrounding landscape, seeing about 50 miles in every direction. We walked over to the “Sky Map,” and found fragments of it scattered across the site. It was a solid stone as late as ten years ago, but vandals had obviously broken it into pieces. We could still see the signs of the zodiac as they had been anciently inscribed on the rock.

We walked over to the other side of the mountaintop, about an eighth of a mile away, and came to another stone. This was known as the “Yahweh Stone” because on it was inscribed ancient Paleo-Hebrew script – the name of the God of Israel – “YHWH.” The lettering and style was the same as that which had been used to write the Ten Commandments inscription into the “Los Lunas Stone” down the mountainside.

As we walked over the mountain top, we also noted unmistakable signs of ancient habitation – remains of ancient rock walls and what appeared to be sentry posts and look-outs, and buildings. Standing in the very same spot where ancient Hebrews had obviously once stood, was an awesome, thrilling experience.

### ***The Los Lunas Stone Inscription***

Who wrote the Ten Commandments on the Los Lunas stone? Who wrote the Tetragrammaton (God’s Hebrew name) on the “Yahweh stone”?

Scholars point out that the “Los Lunas Stone” inscription in archaic Hebrew was written in the Hebrew letters of the style of the Moabite Stone, dated to about 1,000 B.C. This would place the writing on the stone to the time of the kingdom of ancient Israel under its most affluent and powerful king, Solomon, who reigned from 1014 B.C. to 974 B.C. This would imply that king Solomon’s sailors visited the New World *2,500 years before Columbus!*

*Ancient Hebrews in early America? Is it possible?*

But is this really so incredible, after all?

The Moabite stone evidence suggests the writing is roughly 3,000 years old, which would put it in the time of king Solomon. Dr. Barry Fell states that separation points found in the inscription on the stone date to as early as 1200 B.C. The Paleo-Hebrew characters used in the Los Lunas inscription were used approximately 1200-600 B.C., which includes the reign of King Solomon.

Another intriguing piece of evidence is the nature of the monument itself. Why would any ancient explorer engrave *the Ten Commandments* and the *Hebrew name of*

*God* on stones in the New World? Only a society in which the worship of the Hebrew God was paramount and which celebrated and honored the Ten Commandments would concern itself with such a feat. These monuments were evidently left in place by ancient Hebrew worshippers of the God of Israel! Why else would any ancient explorer chisel the *Ten Commandments* on a remote stone weighing many tons in a gorge on the side of a mountain? Such a religious inscription would only be written during a time when the worship of God was strong in the society which sent the explorers. Such a society would have to be incredibly wealthy to finance such voyages, and be led by a very inquisitive monarch. It would have to be a sea-faring power, knowledgeable about navigation, and associated with the Phoenicians. The time would have to be a time of peace for the country, without the distraction of war with its neighbors. Such a peaceful time marked the forty year reign of king Solomon of Israel!

Only a Hebrew speaking people which highly revered the Ten Commandments, found in the Torah given to ancient Israel, would make the effort to inscribe a giant stone with those same Ten Commandments. Such a monument would have been created by Israelites at a time when they worshipped the God of the Bible. It could only have been carved during a time when those worshippers were part of a great kingdom which had the capacity for making and financing vast oceanic voyages of discovery in search of wealth and knowledge.

### ***In the Days of Solomon***

In the days of Solomon there was an alliance between Hiram, the king of Tyre and the Israelites under Solomon. They were not only allies, but very friendly toward one another (II Chronicles 2:2-12). Israelites and Phoenicians even worked together to build the Temple of God in Jerusalem (vs.13-18). This alliance included shipping together, although the Phoenicians were known to jealously guard the secrets of oceanic navigation from other nations. We read in the book of I Kings:

*“And king Solomon made a navy of ships in Ezion-geber, which is beside Eloth, on the shore of the Red sea, in the land of Edom. And Hiram sent in the navy his servants, shipmen that had knowledge of the sea, with the servants of Solomon. And they came to Ophir, and fetched from thence gold, four hundred and twenty talents, and brought it to king Solomon” (I Kings 9:26-28).*

Four hundred and twenty talents of gold, at 100 pounds per talent, would be about 42,000 pounds, or 672,000 ounces of gold. At today’s price (\$400 per ounce), the value of the gold Solomon’s fleets brought to him was \$268,800,000, a nice tidy sum!

In the heyday of Solomon silver was “not any thing accounted of” (II Chron. 9:20). We read, “And the king made silver in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycamore trees that are in the low plains in abundance” (v. 27). Solomon had his own personal fleets and dominated world trade. “And king Solomon passed all the kings of the earth *in riches and wisdom*” (v. 22). Solomon’s kingdom enjoyed peace, and enormous wealth, and the king was noted for his wisdom and scientific, enquiring mind, and it makes perfect sense that it was therefore in his own time when the God of Israel

was still being worshipped that his sailors, accompanied by a priest, would have inscribed such a monument as the Los Lunas stone!

After the time of Solomon, the Kingdom of Israel quickly degenerated into pagan practices. But during Solomon's time, the power and influence of ancient Israel was at its zenith. According to the Scriptures, Solomon was an incredibly wealthy monarch. It would have required great wealth to finance sailing ventures and voyages of discovery and trade. Such were the characteristics of Solomon's empire.

Also, during Solomon's reign, Israel was in league with the other major world powers of the day, including Tyre and the Phoenicians, and the nation of Egypt. For example, Solomon married the daughter of Pharaoh, cementing an alliance with Egypt, and he also married the daughter of Hiram, king of Phoenicia.

Search as we might, no other historical period makes as much sense as being the time when the Los Lunas monuments were engraved. The Ten Commandments were given to Israel in 1492-91 B.C. during the time of Moses. The script appears to date the monument to about 1,000 B.C. This would have been the very time of king Solomon. Prior to his time, the wealth did not exist to finance such worldwide exploratory ventures. Nor would Israel have been wealthy enough to do so hundreds of years later.

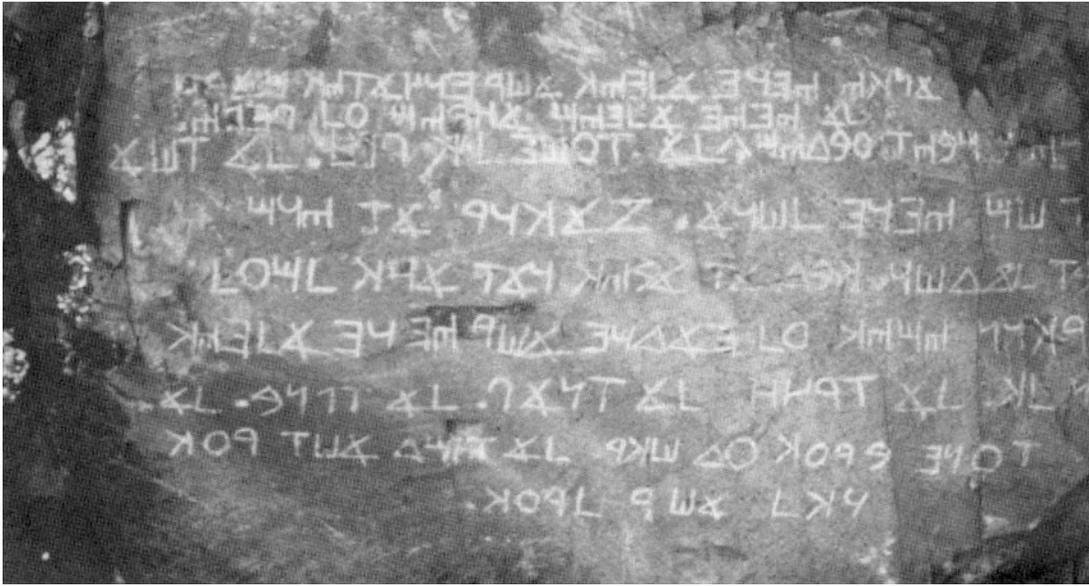
### ***But WHY?***

This intriguing mystery relates in a most amazing way to the subject of this book. Believe it or not, our modern Anglo-Saxon peoples are *also* descended from the ancient tribes of the Kingdom of Israel!

It was as if that ancient voyage 3,000 years ago, when Hebrews visited the region of New Mexico, and built an outpost there, had anticipated their descendants millennia later. They blazed a path, a trail, pioneering a region to be settled by the children of Israel many generations later. They left tell-tale evidence of their presence, and a "marker" or "memorial stone" testifying that they were the owners and possessors of the land. The Los Lunas stone, therefore, stands as an ancient monument and memorial that this vast land belongs to the Hebrew people – the descendants of the tribes of Israel! It stands in mute yet eloquent, powerful testimony to the passing of the children of Israel, even as God told Joshua to set up stones to denote the children of Israel crossing the Jordan River. God said to Joshua this would be a "sign" among them. God told him, "So these stones shall be to the Israelites a memorial forever" (Joshua 4:7, NRSV).

In the pages of this profound story, probing the ancient roots of the American and British peoples, you will come to see the vital connection between America, Great Britain and Israel – a saga never fully explored.

## ***The Los Lunas Stone, Mystery Mountain***



The Paleo-Hebrew script runs from the lower right side of the stone to the upper left. Here's a close-up view of the ancient Hebrew script on the Los Lunas stone. Various opinions have been suggested over the years as to the origin of the inscription. Some have said Mormons made it, trying to prove American Indians were descended from ancient Israel. Such opinions are mere conjecture made by those lacking understanding of ancient Middle Eastern languages. To anyone knowledgeable of early Hebrew, the letters are plainly a form of paleo-Hebrew unknown to early Mormons. Therefore, the inscription must be truly authentic. Indians themselves refer to "Mystery Mountain," where the inscription is found, as "Cerro Los Moqujino", or "Cliff of the Strange Writings." They would hardly say this if they created them. Says David Deal, "Nevertheless, the emerging evidence compels us to conclude that this wilderness region was in ancient times visited by adventurers from the Middle East" (David Allen Deal, *Discovery of Ancient America*, 1984, p.1).

Writes David Allen Deal, "The words chiseled on these rocks are without a doubt ancient Hebrew. The greater inscription recites the ten commandments; the smaller reads 'Yahweh is our Mighty One.' The ramifications of these words, if authentically composed by an ancient scribe, are enormous, giving direct proof that a connection anciently existed between the Americas, through explorations of mariners, with the Middle East. The evidence would tend to indicate naval power for some countries as early as 3500 years ago" (*ibid.*).

Says Deal, "The letters of the inscription, cut deeply and accurately in very hard, flinty igneous rock, are by no means a mystery. They are clearly and unequivocally a form of paleo-Hebrew. A comparison of alphabets easily proves this point" (p.3).

Below is the “YHWH stone” on the top of Mystery Mountain. The four letters on the first top line, reading from your right to left, are the Tetragrammaton – YHWH.



The “YHWH stone” on top of Mystery Mountain is not as large as the “Los Lunas” stone. The top line of the stone is the name YHWH. The second line contains the word ELHYNV, which translates as “Our God.” The whole phrase is “The LORD our God” or “The LORD our Mighty One.”



My wife Cappy blows the shofar or ram's horn on top of Mystery Mountain, toward the north, south, east and west. Very likely an ancient Levitical priest would have done the same thing, on top of this same mountain.

This spot was very likely a holy place for the ancient mariners, explorers, and sailors of Israel during the time of Solomon. In the distance is the Rio Puercos, a long tributary of the Rio Grande which empties into the Gulf of Mexico. Solomon's sailing vessels probably sailed up the Rio Puercos, which in those days was most likely navigable to this region.



The importance of this archaeological site can hardly be over-estimated – and yet there seems to be no interest on the part of academics, scholars, or government officials to protect this sacred heritage. Its remoteness and difficulty of approach, and the general lack of knowledge as to its existence, appears to be the only reason this priceless treasure is still relatively intact and undamaged.

Yet, as we already mentioned, vandals have scratched their names on the rocks, and broken the tablet of the zodiac found at the top of the mountain.

Would it not be wonderful if some interested individuals got together to form a foundation or archaeological research team, to work with the state of New Mexico, to protect and investigate this ancient mystery and unlock its hidden secrets?

James Tabor, archeologist and Biblical scholar who has participated in many archaeological digs in Israel, has expressed deep interest in becoming involved in such a project.

Perhaps the time is coming soon, when such an endeavor can become a reality.

## The Second Coming

Turning and turning in the widening gyre  
The falcon cannot hear the falconer;  
Things fall apart; the centre cannot hold;  
Mere anarchy is loosed upon the world,  
The blood-dimmed tide is loosed, and everywhere  
The ceremony of innocence is drowned;  
The best lack all conviction, while the worst  
Are full of passionate intensity.

Surely some revelation is at hand;  
Surely the Second Coming is at hand.  
The Second Coming! Hardly are those words out  
When a vast image out of *Spiritus Mundi*  
Troubles my sight: somewhere in sands of the desert  
A shape with lion body and the head of a man,  
A gaze blank and pitiless as the sun,  
Is moving its slow thighs, while all about it  
Reel shadows of the indignant desert birds.

The darkness drops again; but now I know  
That twenty centuries of stony sleep  
Were vexed to nightmare by a rocking cradle,  
And what rough beast, its hour come round at last,  
Slouches towards Bethlehem to be born?

-- W. B. Yeats

“A people which takes no pride in the noble achievements of remote ancestors will never achieve anything worthy to be remembered with pride by remote descendants.”

-- Lord Macaulay

## *Chapter One*

# The Enigma of Our Origin

There are some fascinating oddities about the American nation and its origin. In the history of the United States, especially at its birth, there seem to be amazing, and mysterious parallels and connections with the ancient people of Israel.

Why would this be the case?

Consider the following facts, and ponder their meaning.

### **The American Flag**

The American flag was designed by George Washington, father of our country. As leader of the Flag Committee (together with Col. Ross and Robert Morris), he went to the home of Mrs. Betsy Ross and drew for her a sketch of the “stars and stripes.” The first flag, containing 13 stars in a circle on a blue field, together with the red and white stripes, was adopted by Congress on June 14, 1777.

The Washington family tree has been traced back to the tribe of Judah. The red, white and blue of our flag were also the colors of ancient Israel. Red is the color of sacrifice and redemption; white is the color of purity, the color of the garments worn by the Levites and priests of Israel, in the service of the sanctuary of God; the blue represents the color of water, the color of the sky, and the universe – representing love and devotion. The “fringes” God commanded his people Israel to wear in the corners of their garments were white, with one blue fringe (Num.15:37). White represents righteousness (Rev.19:8), and blue represents God in heaven. The vail of God’s Temple was wrought in the colors “blue, and purple, and crimson [red], and fine linen [white]” (II Chron.3:14; Exodus 26:31).

### ***The Great Seal of the United States***

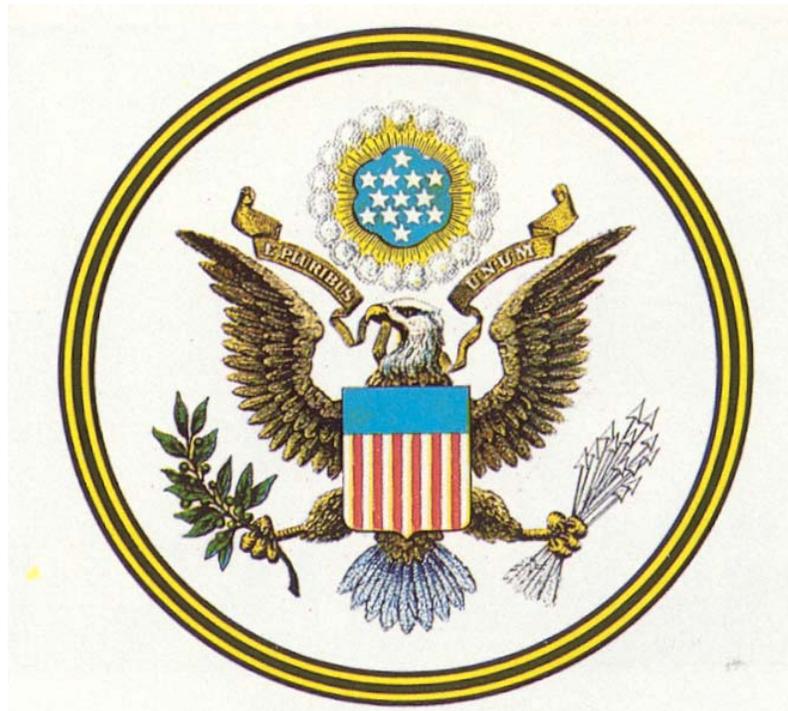
On the day the Declaration of Independence was signed, a committee was appointed to design a national seal. The committee consisted of Benjamin Franklin, John Adams, and Thomas Jefferson. Concept after concept was rejected, as artists and others contributed their ideas. The present seal was formally adopted June 20, 1782. As the Revolutionary War involved great sufferings, trials, and loss of life, the colonies looked to God and His Word for spiritual guidance. Both sides of the United States seal have been printed on the one dollar bill, allowing us to determine the full meaning of the seal.

When ancient Israel marched out of Egypt under Moses, they marched under the four standards bearing the figures of the Lion, Bull, Eagle, and Man. There were three tribes under each standard or flag – and they marched or camped in the form of a hollow square, positioned around the Tabernacle of God which was at the center of their camp and marching formation. This “hollow square” was a form of fighting used by the British for years, until the development of high explosives.

We read of these four figures in Ezekiel: “As for the likeness of their faces, each of the four had the face of a man; and each of the four had the face of a lion on the right side, and each of the four had the face of an ox on the left side, and each of the four had the face of an eagle” (Ezek.1:10). These were the cherubim (Ezek.10:1-14, NKJV).

### *The Bald Eagle*

The eagle in the American seal has its face turned to the right – or westward. It is in full flight, indicating the American march to the western horizon. The motto of early America, coined by Horace Greeley, was, “Go west, young man,” and generations of



Americans followed that advice, settling the entire continent from the east to the west coasts.

The eagle is an illustration of God’s guardianship over Israel. “As the eagle stirs up its nest, and hovers over its young; as it spreads its wings, takes them up, and bears them aloft on its pinions, the LORD alone guided him; no foreign god was with him. He set him atop the heights of the land, and fed him with produce of the field; he nursed him with honey from the crags, with oil from flinty rock; curds from the herd, and milk from the flock, with fat of lambs and rams; Bashan bulls and goats, together with the choicest

wheat – you drank fine wine from the blood of grapes. Jacob ate his fill; Jeshurun grew fat, and kicked. You grew fat, bloated, and gorged! He abandoned God who made him, and scoffed at the Rock of his salvation” (Deut.32:11-15, NRSV).

God brought Israel out of Egypt on “eagle’s wings” (Exodus 19:4). Thus the eagle is a symbol for God – and His loving protection. Interestingly, the eagle is noted for its keen eyesight, its powerful flight, its soaring aloft, and its nest amidst the towering crags where its young are protected. The eagle mates for life. It is also a very clean bird, keeping its nest clean with “maidenhair,” a special herb. It raises only two or three eaglets a year, and when the time comes, does not permit its young to remain near the nest, but forces them out of the nest, teaching them to fly, and then forcing them to seek other regions to dwell in.

The British seal has two of the ancient standards or flags of Israel – the lion and the unicorn (or bull). On the front side of the British seal is a lion, symbol of the tribe of Judah, which was to bear the kingship (I Chron.5:1-2), and the unicorn.

The obverse side of the Royal Seal of Britain shows the Sphinx of Egypt. The obverse side of the American Seal pictures the Great Pyramid. Both of these objects are close to each other in Egypt. I have visited them, with my family, and like so many other tourists, marveled at their majesty and profound visual impression to all the major senses. We enjoyed a spectacular “light show” at the base of the Great Pyramid and the Sphinx, depicting some of the history of Egypt in the time of its original glory.

American soldiers are commonly call “G.I.s,” and a nickname for an American soldier during World War II was “G.I. Joe.” Where does this term come from? The “G.I.” stands for “Government Issue.” Joe, of course, is a shortened form of *JOSEPH*, the name of the son of Jacob, through his wife Rachel, who was given the “birthright” promises of God. Could this Joseph be our illustrious ancestor and progenitor?

### *The Escutcheon or Shield*

In Deuteronomy we read: “Happy are you, O Israel! Who is like you, a people saved by the LORD, the shield of your help, and the sword of your triumph! Your enemies shall come fawning to you, and you shall tread on their backs” (Deut.33:29).

Over the breast of the eagle on the United States seal is a shield – the shield of FAITH. It has thirteen stripes or bars, red and white, signifying the number “13” – the number of the original American colonies. However, “13” was also the number of the tribe of Ephraim, Joseph’s son, which was the “13<sup>th</sup> tribe” of Israel (being the youngest of all). There were twelve tribes of Israel, but Joseph had two sons and each of them became a tribe – hence, thirteen tribes, with Ephraim, the youngest son, number “13.”

The shield itself reminds us that God is our shield. He said to Abraham, “I am your shield; your reward shall be very great” (Gen.15:1). David cried, “But you, O LORD, are a shield around me, my glory, and the one who lifts up my head” (Psa.3:3).

David prayed, “For you bless the righteous, O LORD; you cover them with favor as with a shield” (Psa.5:12).

The 13 paleways or stripes on the shield represent the 13 original colonies. The shield is not fastened to the eagle, but spread across in front of it, as if held there by the unseen Hand of God.

In the eagle’s beak there is a scroll, representing the proclamation of liberty and freedom, and justice for all – the Constitution of the United States, based on the laws of God and the Torah which God gave to ancient Israel.

The motto “E Pluribus Unum” means “One from Many,” or “Out of many, One.” It represents UNITY – the FIFTY *united* States of America! This One nation combines the peoples and ethnic groups of many different nations and peoples from around the world – out of many, ONE. And if we remained faithful to the laws of God, this national UNITY would be preserved forever. But if we BREAK God’s laws, then the very unity we possess will become disunity and division – the “unity” will become a relic, a shallow memory, a distant dream, forgotten in onrushing calamity and cataclysm.

America is a COMMONWEALTH of fifty states. At our national political conventions, members from each state rise to address the chair, saying, “Mr. Chairman, we the Commonwealth of Maine,” or, “The commonwealth of Massachusetts,” etc., etc.

Notice that in the eagle’s right claw is clutched an olive branch. This olive branch has 13 leaves, and 13 olives. Joseph is compared in prophecy to a fruitful bough – of an olive tree (Gen.49:22). In a parable in the book of Judges, we are told that the olive tree is supreme among trees. The first tree the other trees asked to reign over them was the olive tree (Judges 9:8). But the fruit of the olive honors God and man (v.9). It seeks not to reign but to bear fruit. It is a sacred tree, and a symbol of the Holy Spirit of God, and of the Torah – the life-giving Law and Revelation of God. The olive branch is the greatest symbol also of Peace – Shalom.

### ***The Bundle of Arrows***

“Joseph is a fruitful bough, a fruitful bough by a spring; his branches run over the wall. The archers fiercely attacked; they shot at him, and pressed him hard. Yet his bow remained taut, and his arms were made agile by the hands of the mighty one of Jacob, by the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel” (Gen.49:22-24).

Joseph – Ephraim and Manasseh – America and Britain – are famous therefore for their military prowess. Their “bow” is strong – they are powerful archers. The “bow,” today, is a symbol of AIR POWER. It was largely the U.S. and British air power that defeated the Axis during World War II; that devastated Saddam Hussein in the Gulf War; that wreaked havoc in Iraq during the Iraq War of “Shock and Awe.” The arrow is a symbol of war-making power and today’s guided missiles and attack from the air. The

ancient Anglo-Saxons were excellent archers. Who hasn't heard of Robin Hood and his merry men of Sherwood forest?

In the eagle's left claw are 13 arrows – representative of Ephraim, the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe. They symbolize national readiness and preparedness to fight and to safeguard the truth, the liberty, the freedoms which God has given us to enjoy. Thomas Jefferson, one of the founding fathers of America, said: "Eternal vigilance is the price of liberty." The arrows of the Almighty will protect His people so long as we obey Him; but woe unto us, if God Himself sends His arrows to punish us for our disobedience (Deut.32:23; Ezek.5:16).

On the Seal of the United States of America, there are 13 olive leaves, 13 olives, 13 arrows, 13 paleways or stripes on the shield, 13 letters in "E Pluribus Unum," 13 stars above the eagle's head. Interestingly, there were 13 original colonies, and 13 ships in the original American Navy. In World War I, 13 ships were sent to Europe, and took 13 days to cross the Atlantic, landing on Friday the 13<sup>th</sup>; the American troops on board fought in 13 battles in France. On the obverse side of the U.S. Seal, there are 13 tiers of stone in the Great Pyramid!

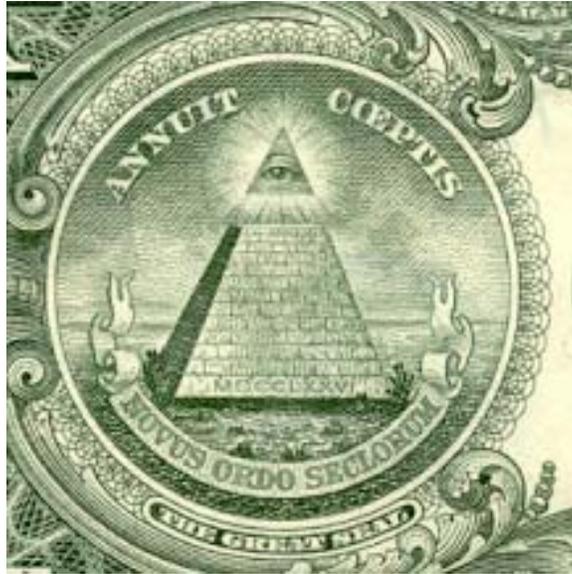
Over the eagle's head is a cloud or crest – a glorious scene of the Glory of God shining through and breaking up a cloud, shining upon 13 stars. The statute of endorsement stated, "A glory breaking through a cloud." It was a pillar of fire and a cloud of the Presence of God that led ancient Israel out of Egypt (Exo.13:21-22; 14:24). The Divine Glory breaking through the cloud shows that it is the power and glory of God, shining upon Israel, that keeps her safe and makes her great, and gives her deliverance. So long as we acknowledge our God, and His Presence, and obey His Laws, our nations will be great. But if and when we forget God, then our punishment and doom is assured (Isaiah 1:1-21; Prov.1:22-32; Hosea 4:6-8).

The 13 stars in the cloud above the eagle represent two truths: 1) the number 13 reveals the 13 tribes of Israel, in total; and 2) the scene depicts 12 stars below (bowing down before) the highest star – the star of Joseph. This was in fulfillment of Joseph's amazing dream, where he said, "Look I have had another dream: the sun, the moon, and eleven stars were bowing down to me" (Gen.37:9; see also verses 10-11).

### ***The Great Pyramid of Gizeh***

The statute adopted by the Seal Committee declared, "A Pyramid unfinished." Above the unfinished pyramid – remember, the great pyramid of Egypt at Gizeh has no capstone and was never finished, yet it remains the most perfect building ever built by man – hovers a capstone surrounded by glory. This is the stone rejected by the builders, but which becomes the chief corner stone – the Messiah, Jesus Christ, returning soon to complete the pyramid and to usher in the Messianic Age and Kingdom of God! (I Pet.2:6-8; Isa.28:16; Psa.118:22-23).

Underneath this pyramid is the Latin phrase, “NOVUS ORDO SECLORUM,” which means, “New World Order.” But this refers to the TRUE New World Order which



will be brought to this earth by the returning Christ when He comes in power and glory to establish His Kingdom (Matt.25:31-32; Rev.19:11-16). The fact that the symbol shows the capstone hovering over the pyramid, not yet finished, depicts the fact that Christ has not yet returned to complete His program and the plan of God on the earth. We are now awaiting with bated breath, breathlessly, that awesome, and for many ominous, Day!

Many of the later pyramids in Egypt were built by the Israelites, who were master builders. Joseph himself built ancient Lake Tanis, and a tremendous water irrigation system for the desert, bringing immense wealth and prosperity to Egypt. Isaiah the prophet speaks of the Great Pyramid: “On that day there will be an altar to the LORD in the center of the land of Egypt, and a PILLAR to the lord at its border. It will be a sign and a witness to the LORD of hosts in the land of Egypt” (Isa.19:19-20). Thus the Great Pyramid lies at the true border of Israel and Egypt.

### *The “Eye of God”*

The “eye” depicted in the cornerstone of the Great Pyramid in the American Seal, represents the eye of God who sees all our human undertakings, and beholds all the activities of the sons of men. “The LORD looks down from heaven on humankind to see if there are any who are wise, who seek after God” (Psalm 14:2). “The LORD looks down from heaven; he sees all humankind. From where he sits enthroned he watches all the inhabitants of the earth” (Psalm 33:13). The eyes of God behold the righteous, and their suffering – He is the “God who sees,” and who provides – Yahveh-Yireh (Gen.22:13-14). “For the eyes of the LORD range throughout the entire earth, to strengthen those whose heart is true to him” (II Chron.16:9).

Above the pyramid we see the motto, “ANNUIT COEPTIS,” which is Latin for “He has prospered our undertakings.” In Genesis we read about Joseph: “. . . the LORD was with him, and that the LORD caused all that he did to prosper in his hands” (Gen.39:3). How fitting that this very motto reminds us of our forefather Joseph, who lived by the commandments of God, and who was blessed for his obedience, even as Abraham was before him (Gen.26:5). The implication of course is that if we also obey God and keep His commandments, as a nation, today, we also will achieve success in all our undertakings, be successful in all our endeavors, and prosper in all our ways. But if we disobey the Divine will, and disregard His laws, we will suffer the consequences of disobedience (Lev.26; Deut.28; Ezek.5:12).

How amazing that the Great Seal of the United States tells such a vivid story in Biblical history and prophecy! Have we found the tribe of Joseph? Do the emblems of the United States and Great Britain identify them as being the descendents of Joseph and ancient Israel, on the earth, today?

Ancient “Israel” was Caucasina. Their descendants most assuredly could not be the Chinese, or the Japanese, or the Eskimos of Greenland and Alaska. They most assuredly could not be the Russians, the Mongols, the Arabs, or the blacks of Africa, or the aborigines of Australia. The Central Europeans do not possess these symbols and emblems.

Is it really possible that the United States and Great Britain, and the English-speaking peoples of the earth, are also descended from Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob? Do we really bear the heritage of Joseph, son of Jacob, son of Isaac, son of Abraham?

If it is true, then we bear, as Rudyard Kipling wrote so eloquently in “The White Man’s Burden,” an awesome responsibility to carry salvation and the knowledge of God to the ends of the earth – to bear the message of the truth of God’s purpose and great plan to the world. It is our commission to take to the nations the truth of the Torah and the truth of the Messiah, and the knowledge of salvation. But, sadly, we have been ignorant of our heritage, and we have to this date failed this awesome calling and trampled in the dust this tremendous opportunity and destiny!

If we are indeed the sons of Joseph, then that means we are Ephraim and Manasseh – for these were Joseph’s two sons. But who today best represents Ephraim? And who represents Manasseh? And what does the answer to this question have to do with these tremulous, frightful, terrifying times in which we live today? To know our roots gives us a glimpse also into our destiny! What does the future hold in store for our peoples?

## *Chapter Two*

# The Great Promises to Israel

Four thousand years ago, God made some very exciting promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and their descendants – promises which most people might think were never fulfilled. God promised that their descendants would be *mighty peoples and nations* in the world, and a blessing to all mankind – especially in the “latter days” and the “time of the end.”

## *The Original Promises*

The amazing story begins in Genesis, chapter 12. God said to Abraham, “Go from your country and your kindred and your father’s house to the land that I will show you. I will make of you a GREAT NATION, and I will bless you, and make your name great, so that you will be a blessing. I will bless those who bless you, and the one who curses you I will curse; and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed” (Gen.12:1-3, NRSV).

Notice, because of his obedience, God promised to bless Abraham’s descendants and make them into a mighty nation. All the world would be blessed through them. (This also has a spiritual application, as all the world would be blessed through the Messiah, who would be descended from Abraham’s descendants).

The promises are expanded in Genesis 17. God says, “I am God Almighty; walk before me, and be blameless. And I will make my covenant between me and you, and will make you exceedingly numerous. . . . You shall be the ancestor of a *multitude of nations*. No longer shall your name be Abram, but your name shall be Abraham; for I have made you the ancestor of a multitude of nations. I will make you exceedingly fruitful; and I will make nations of you, and kings shall come from you. I will establish my covenant between me and you, and your offspring after you throughout their generations, for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and your offspring after you” (Gen.17:1-7).

These great promises were amplified further in Genesis 22. When Abraham demonstrated his willingness to obey God, even when it required great faith, God said to him: “By myself have I sworn, says the LORD: Because you have done this, and have not withheld your son, your only son, I will indeed bless you, and I will make your offspring as numerous as the stars of heaven and as the sand that is on the seashore. And your offspring shall possess the gate of their enemies, and by your offspring shall all the nations of the earth gain blessings for themselves, because you have obeyed my voice” (Gen.22:15-18).

Abraham's descendants were to be numerous as the *stars in the heavens* and as plentiful as the *grains of sand on a seashore* – innumerable! Most people today think the descendants of Abraham are the Jewish people – but the Jews only number about 15 million out of the earth's 6.1 billion inhabitants! They alone cannot fulfill this promise.

Where and who are the *other* descendants of Abraham?

The next mention of similar incredible promises is made to Rebekah, who was to marry Abraham's son Isaac. Her brothers said to her, as she was about to depart her home to marry Isaac, "May you, our sister, become thousands of myriads [thousands of ten thousands, or millions]; may your offspring gain possession of the gates of their foes" (Gen.24:60).

God then appeared to Isaac, and declared, "I will make your offspring as numerous as the stars of heaven, and will give to your offspring all these lands; and all the nations of the earth shall gain blessings for themselves through your offspring, because Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my charge, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws" (Gen.26:4-5).

When he was old, Isaac blessed his son Jacob similarly, saying to him: "May God give you of the dew of heaven, and of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine. Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be lord over your brothers, and may your mother's sons bow down to you. Cursed be everyone who curses you, and blessed be everyone who blesses you" (Gen.27:28-29). Jacob also received the double-portion of the birthright promises, because Esau, his older brother, sold the birthright to him for a bowl of lentil soup! (Gen.25:29-34).

Because Jacob's life was threatened by Esau who was in a rage of jealousy and hatred, Isaac sent him to the land of Padan-Aram, away from Esau's hostility. At that time he blessed Jacob further, saying, "May God Almighty bless you and make you fruitful and numerous, that you may become *a company of peoples*" (Gen.28:3).

As Jacob fled for his life, he stopped to rest at a place called Bethel, meaning "House of God." That night as he slept, he dreamed he saw a ladder connecting heaven and earth, with angels of God ascending and descending upon it. "And the LORD stood beside him and said, 'I am the LORD, the God of Abraham your father and the God of Isaac; the land on which you lie I will give to you and to your offspring; and your offspring shall be like *the dust of the earth, and you shall spread abroad to the WEST and to the EAST and to the NORTH and to the SOUTH*; and all the families of the earth shall be blessed in you and in your offspring'" (Gen.28:12-17).

Notice what great promises God made to the children of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. To no other nation or patriarch did He ever make such astonishing promises of national greatness, abundance, and blessings of power and prosperity!

### *The Children of Israel*

The descendants of these men became known as the “children of Israel.” Jacob, whose name was changed to “Israel,” meaning “One who prevails with God and man,” had 12 sons. During their lifetimes, one of them – Joseph – was hated by his brothers, and they sold him into slavery. He was taken to Egypt, where he ended up in prison because of false charges against him. He was blessed and protected by God, and after God inspired him to predict seven years of great prosperity followed by seven years of grievous famine, Pharaoh appointed him over all the land of Egypt as his co-ruler (see Gen.39-41). When the famine arose in Canaan, Jacob and his other sons went down to Egypt to obtain grain for sustenance.

A hundred years later, the descendants of Jacob were enslaved by the Egyptians, and suffered greatly. But God raised up Moses, as their deliverer, and brought them back to the land He swore to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. After their deliverance from slavery in Egypt, in 1491 B.C., they carved out a homeland in Canaan – the “Promised Land.”

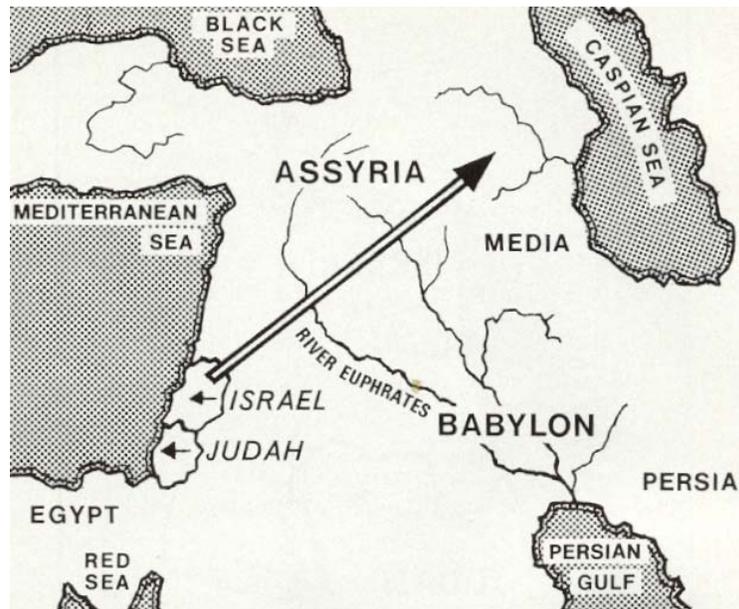
For centuries, their fate was to suffer a series of ups and downs, blessings and captivity, and they never really fulfilled the promises made to their forefathers – certainly not in full. Their disobedience to God caused these promises and their fulfillments to be postponed again and again. The book of Judges recounts the sorrowful history of their disobedience, when “every man did what was right in his own eyes” (Judges 21:25).

During the days of David and Solomon, they reached a short term apogee of greatness, when God blessed the people of Israel and prospered them, and David conquered far and wide, extending the boundaries of his kingdom throughout the Middle East. Solomon’s empire was one of the greatest of ancient times – but when he died, the kingdom of Israel became divided. Ten tribes split off, becoming the “Kingdom of Israel,” and two tribes remained with his son Rehoboam, known as the “Kingdom of Judah.” This occurred about 975 B.C., according to archbishop Ussher’s chronology.

For ensuing centuries, there was competition, fighting, sparring, and strife between the two kingdoms, and they seldom got along very well. The northern kingdom, under Jeroboam, began to worship idols and combined pagan practices with the worship of God, melding the Torah with paganism. Because of their mounting sins, God gave them up in the days of king Hoshea, and the whole of the northern ten tribes was carried away into captivity in 718 B.C. by the growing Assyrian Empire.

We read, “Then the king of Assyria invaded all the land and came to Samaria; for three years he besieged it. In the ninth year of king Hoshea the king of Assyria captured Samaria; he carried the Israelites away to Assyria. He placed them in Halah, on the Habor, the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

“This occurred because the people of Israel had sinned against the LORD their God” (II Kings 17:5-7, NRSV). How had they sinned? They had plunged into idolatry and forsaken the commandments of the Lord God of Israel.



The Scriptures tell us that they rejected all the commandments of the Lord, made two golden idols for worship, and followed the ways of the nations around them. “Therefore the LORD was very angry with Israel *and removed them out of his sight; none was left but the tribe of Judah only*” (II Kings 17:18).

What happened to these multitudes of the northern kingdom? Where did they go? Did God break His promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph’s children? Can God’s Word and promises be trusted?

Josephus, the great Jewish historian of the first century, tells us that they *never returned* to the promised land. In his day, they were still far removed.

Flavius Josephus, in his *Antiquities of the Jews*, wrote that during the time of Ezra, about 457 B.C. – when the king of Persia permitted the *Jews* to return to Jerusalem – some of them did so. But, he relates, “the *entire body* of the people of *Israel* remained in that country; wherefore there are but two tribes in Asia and Europe subject to the Romans, *while the TEN TRIBES are BEYOND EUPHRATES till NOW, and are an IMMENSE MULTITUDE, and not to be estimated by numbers*” (Josephus, *Ant.*, XI, 5, 2).

This means that the *vast majority* of the people of the ten tribes remained beyond the Euphrates River – a huge multitude of peoples – and they *never returned!* Where did they go? Who are they, today?



What happened to this “immense multitude” of people of the northern kingdom of Israel who were still beyond the Euphrates River in 70 A.D., the time when Josephus lived? Where did they go? Were the ancient promises ever fulfilled? Or did Almighty God break His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and their descendants?

This is the most intriguing, greatest mystery of all history! What happened to these people? We know from the Scriptures that “God CANNOT lie” (Titus 1:2), so His promises HAD to be fulfilled!

Where are these people on the earth, *in our modern day? Can we know?*

Remember, the Jews are only one/twelfth of the tribes of ancient Israel. There are about 15 million Jews on the earth today, out of a world population of over six billion souls. That hardly would constitute a “great multitude.” What happened to the other tribes of Israel?

### ***What Happened to God’s Promises?***

On the other side of the coin, when we look at the world around us, we see that the GREATEST nations and most technologically advanced, vastly superior, and militarily powerful, are the United States of America and the British Commonwealth. Where are the United States of America and Great Britain mentioned in Biblical prophecy – or are they? Could prophecy IGNORE these mightily important nations in these “END TIMES”?

Both of these twin great mysteries can be SOLVED if we can succeed in *identifying* where the ancient tribes of Israel went, and who the modern people of the United States and Great Britain are – in Biblical terms.

It may come as an electrifying shock, but the truth is that these two peoples are mentioned OFTEN in the Scriptures – but they have not been recognized because their *identities have been hidden* – a secret only to be revealed in this “end of the age” at the close of 6,000 years of human history.

Modern historians and ministers have been ignorant of the identity of these peoples, because they have overlooked and ignored the *vital Biblical and historical evidence*.

Stop and consider! Would the pages of Bible prophecy, 90 percent of which deals with prophecies of the End Time, completely IGNORE two of the most important countries on the face of the earth at the End Time?

Is it conceivable that Bible prophecy would IGNORE completely the identity and destiny of the United States of America – the world’s last remaining “Superpower” at the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century? Or is it possible that such a nation would be treated in Bible prophecy as a “second rate” nation, so relatively unimportant that it is only

mentioned in combination with other nations?

Where are America and Great Britain, Canada, and the English-speaking nations mentioned in Biblical prophecy?

In this climactic, pulsating “crisis at the close” of human civilization, no question could be more pregnant with meaning, significance, and importance! Let’s examine these questions carefully, and see what Scripture reveals about the English-speaking peoples around the globe, today!

Long ago the northern Ten Tribes of Israel were carried into captivity by the Assyrians (718-721 B.C). They migrated to Northwestern Europe, and became known as the Celts, Anglo-Saxons, and Cimmerians, of history. Books such as *The Tribes, Lost Israelite Identity, Ephraim, Joseph*, by historian and scholar Yair Davidy, and *The Lost Ten Tribes – Found!*, by researcher Steve Collins, and *The History and Future of Israelite America*, by Walter Baucum, document the proof of this historical migration.

They demonstrate that the tribe of Joseph – the birthright tribe – migrated to Great Britain, and thence to the British colonies around the world. These were the sons of Ephraim and Manasseh!

### *The Saga Continues*

Now let’s go back to the story of the promises God made to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, once again. We come down to the generation of Joseph and his two sons.

The Biblical saga continues in the 48<sup>th</sup> chapter of the book of Genesis. When Jacob was old and ill, his son Joseph took his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim, to visit him. When Jacob was told of his presence, he rallied his strength, sat up in bed, and said to Joseph, “God Almighty appeared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan, and there he blessed me and said to me, ‘I am going to make you fruitful and will increase your numbers. I will make you a COMMUNITY OF PEOPLES, and I will give this land as an everlasting possession to your descendants after you.’

“ ‘Now then, your two sons born to you in Egypt before I came to you here will be RECKONED AS MINE; Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine. . . .’” The account continues:

“When Israel saw the sons of Joseph, he asked, ‘Who are these?’  
 ‘They are the sons God has given me here,’ Joseph said to his father.  
 Then Israel said, ‘Bring them to me so I may bless them.’ Now  
 Israel’s eyes were failing because of old age, and he could hardly  
 see. So Joseph brought his sons close to him, and his father kissed  
 them and embraced them. . . .

“And Joseph took both of them, Ephraim on his right toward Israel’s  
 left hand and Manasseh on his left toward Israel’s right hand, and

brought them close to him. But Israel reached out his right hand and put it on Ephraim's head, though he was the younger, and crossing his arms, he put his left hand on Manasseh's head, even though Manasseh was the firstborn.

“Then he blessed Joseph and said, ‘May the God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, the God who has been my shepherd all my life to this day, the Angel who has delivered me from all harm – may he bless these boys. May they be called by MY NAME and the names of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and may they increase GREATLY on the earth.’

“When Joseph saw his father placing his right hand on Ephraim's head he was displeased; so he took hold of his father's hand to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head. Joseph said to him, ‘No, my father, this one is the firstborn; put your right hand on his head.’

“But his father refused and said, ‘I know, my son, I know. He too will become a people, and he too will become great. Nevertheless, his younger brother will be GREATER than he, and his descendants will become a GROUP OF NATIONS.’ He blessed them that day and said, ‘In your name will Israel pronounce this blessing: “May God make you like Ephraim and Manasseh.”’ For he put Ephraim ahead of Manasseh” (Genesis 48:3-20, NIV).

Notice that BOTH sons were to multiply into mighty peoples and nations, but the YOUNGER son was to become the greater people of the two – he was to inherit the DOUBLE PORTION of the birthright promises!

### ***“Multitude of Peoples”***

Jacob said Manasseh also would be great. But he said “truly his YOUNGER brother shall be GREATER than he, and his descendants shall become a MULTITUDE OF NATIONS [i.e., STATES or GROUPS]” (Gen.48:19). Many have misunderstood this. In Hebrew, the word for “nations” here is *goyim*, and means “peoples, nations, states, a troop, a flight,” a word that has the sense of “massing.” Thus Jacob really said the descendants of Ephraim would become a TROOP of people, a MASS of people, MANY states, families, or groupings.

Notice! This prophecy does NOT state he would become ruler OVER a multitude of nations, but rather would actually *BECOME* a “multitude” or “massing” of “peoples” or “states.” Some have suggested that this prophecy identifies Great Britain as modern day Ephraim, because the British ruled over India, the Middle East, and numerous peoples, during its period of greatness. However, the prophecy did not say Ephraim would *rule* many people, but rather would *BECOME* a “multitude of peoples.” There is a big difference between the two concepts!

At its greatest, the British Empire or Commonwealth did control vast parts of the earth, when you include India, but these were GENTILE nations under British rule – they

were not Josephite people at all. The blessing of Jacob was not that Ephraim would rule over many nations, per se – it was that Ephraim would reproduce and BECOME a multitude or troop or massing of people – by having a greater multitude of descendants, becoming many groupings – i.e., STATES!

Now let's compare the United States of America, and Great Britain, in the light of this prophecy. Great Britain is a nation of about 60,000,000 population. The United States, on the other hand, has a population of 280,000,000 – over four and one half times as much as Great Britain!

Furthermore, we have in fulfillment of this prophecy the FIFTY states of the United States – 50 different states, UNITED, but ONE PEOPLE. Each state has its own constitution and government.

An honest look at this Scripture, and our two peoples, today, would certainly seem to imply that it is the United States of America which best fulfills the description of the people of Ephraim! Back in the days when the Anglo-Saxon people first began to suspect that they were descended from Israel, and comprised the sons of Joseph, the discovery was initially made in Great Britain. The people became known as “British Israel.” At that time, during the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, Britain was still greater in many respects than the United States. So the discoverers concluded that Britain and the Commonwealth comprised the descendants of Ephraim, and believed that Manasseh who was to be a single mighty nation was the United States of America.

But since that time, the United States has, as we shall see, FAR surpassed Great Britain and the Commonwealth in terms of population, military power, and industrial might. What seemed so obvious back in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century has become much more doubtful and controversial in the 20<sup>th</sup> and 21<sup>st</sup> centuries!

### *The Fruitful Vine*

Now let us turn to the next recounting of the blessings upon the sons of Jacob, or Israel, and notice the blessings which were to accrue to the sons of JOSEPH! Jacob called for his sons, and said concerning Joseph, his firstborn by his wife Rachel:

“Joseph is a FRUITFUL VINE, a fruitful vine near a spring, whose branches climb over a wall. With bitterness archers attacked him; they shot at him with hostility. But his bow remained steady, his strong arms stayed limber, because of the hand of the Mighty One of Jacob, because of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel, because of your father's God, who helps you, because of the Almighty, who blesses you with blessings of the heavens above, blessings of the deep that lies below, blessings of the breast and womb. Your father's blessings are greater than the blessings of the ancient mountains, than the bounty of the age-old hills. Let all these REST ON THE HEAD OF JOSEPH, on the brow of the prince among his brothers” (Genesis 49:22-26).

Notice that the descendants of Joseph were to become mighty warriors, who would defeat their enemies with the everlasting help of the Mighty One of Jacob! They were to become a great people, with magnificent blessings of climate, topography, geography, soil, mountains, verdant valleys, and blessings of lakes, rivers, and bays. As the inheritors of the BIRTHRIGHT PROMISES made to Israel, they were to inherit the GREATEST PLACES in the earth – the most physically accommodating, beautiful, abundant, and fertile fields of the globe. Others, in dire jealousy, would attack them – and be defeated – unless or until their sins became so great that God Almighty Himself would have to send punishment upon them!

There is no doubt that Great Britain is a blessed land, with beautiful hills and valleys, mountains and moors, grasslands and verdant farmland. However, let's compare the awesome blessings of the United States which is noted worldwide for being the "breadbasket of the world," and greatly blessed with iron ore, copper, tin, coal, and oil deposits, as well as fisheries, and agricultural produce – it has been "doubly blessed," as the very name "Ephraim" implies.

### *Comparative Populations*

We continue the saga of the blessings to the children of Israel, by coming down to the generation that came out of Egypt under Moses' leadership. Moses also gave special prophetic blessings to the tribes of Israel. Notice what he was inspired by God to say about the descendants of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh:

"About Joseph he said: 'May the LORD bless his land with the precious dew from heaven above and with the deep waters that lie below; with the best the sun brings forth and the finest the moon can yield; with the choicest gifts of the ancient mountains and the fruitfulness of the everlasting hills; with the best gifts of the earth and its fullness and the favor of him who dwelt in the burning bush. Let all these rest on the head of Joseph, on the brow of the prince among his brothers.

"In majesty he is like a FIRSTBORN BULL; his horns are the horns of a WILD OX. With them he will GORE THE NATIONS, even those at the ENDS OF THE EARTH. Such are the TEN THOUSANDS OF EPHRAIM; such are *the thousands* of Manasseh'" (Deuteronomy 33:13-17).

A picture is worth a thousand words. Here is a picture, a vivid description, of what the two sons of Joseph would inherit – and what they would be like in the Last Days, when this prophecy would be fulfilled. Notice that the two brother peoples, Ephraim and Manasseh, would both be like the firstborn BULL, threshing the nations to the ends of the earth! Is it any wonder then, that in World War I and World War II, it was the English-speaking nations that primarily led the fight against German aggression, and Hitlerism, and the Japanese onslaught, and fought their enemies to the far corners of the earth?

But notice most carefully. This prophecy speaks of the TEN THOUSANDS of

Ephraim, and the THOUSANDS of Manasseh. Obviously, the descendants of Ephraim were to far outnumber those of Manasseh! We will discuss these numbers at greater length later on. But for now, suffice it to say that the population of the United States far surpasses that of England, Scotland, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, *combined*, by far more than two to one! If Great Britain and her daughter nations were indeed Ephraim, we should expect the numbers to be the other way around!

This fact alone strongly suggests that the fifty states of the United States of America represent the tribe of Ephraim, today, whereas the United Kingdom represents Manasseh!

### ***Who's the Youngest and Oldest?***

Manasseh was the elder brother; he grew up first. But he became “thousands.” On the other hand, Ephraim is the younger brother. He grows up last. But he finally surpasses his brother in strength and magnitude and numbers and power! He becomes “tens of thousands.”

Now consider, for a moment, the United States and British Commonwealth. Which rose to supremacy in the world first? The British Empire! But the Empire has passed into history, left with a “Commonwealth,” of which most of the member nations are Gentile in composition. Only Britain, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand, can claim to be primarily of Anglo-Saxon extraction.

But in 1776-1783, just 220 years ago, there were thirteen colonies in North America which broke away from British rule, and established their own government – thirteen UNITED COLONIES, which in merely 200 years exploded to become FIFTY UNITED STATES! Their population also exploded. In 1630 there were 4,600 people in the colonies of Plymouth and Jamestown; in 1770 this number had grown to 2,148,000; and today it has exploded to a phenomenal 280,000,000!

The “younger brother” was prophesied to grow up last, but eventually surpass his older brother in power, numbers, and economic strength!

Today, the descendants of the Anglo-Saxon nations of the British Commonwealth total as follows: Great Britain, 60 million; Canada, 31 million; Australia, 19 million; New Zealand, 4 million – a combined total of 114 million people. But the population of the United States of America is 280,000,000 – about 2.5 times that of the other brother!

Interestingly, the very name *Ephraim* in Hebrew means “DOUBLE FRUIT” (see *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance*).

This is a vital KEY to Ephraim's identity. God names people *what they are, or what they are to become!* Ephraim, by the meaning of his very name, was to be a DOUBLY-FRUITFUL people, in every way imaginable! Who could this be, today?

It is the United States which exploded onto the world scene, becoming a world power in the days of Theodore Roosevelt at the beginning of the twentieth century. The twentieth century has been hailed as “America’s Century,” and the world peace following World War II has been called the “Pax Americana.”

In a very short time, historically speaking, the United States grew up, burgeoned, tested his strength with rippling muscles, and shouldered past his older brother Manasseh. Yet there has been very little sibling rivalry since the early days. The two peoples are united by language and cultural ties unlike that of any other separate nations on the face of the earth. They are true brothers, sometimes arguing, squabbling, fighting, but back-to-back against any common enemy from the outside!

In the centuries before 1800, the descendants of Joseph’s sons grew into a multitude in the midst of the earth, just as Jacob prophesied (Gen.48:16). Jacob prophesied that Ephraim would become “a multitude [group, fullness] of nations” (vs.19-20).

This prophecy recalled the words God uttered to Jacob at Luz: “I am El Shaddai. Be fertile and increase; a nation, yea an ASSEMBLY of nations, shall descend from you” (Gen.35:11, Tanakh). Some think this “group of nations” must be the British Commonwealth. But is this so? Today, the Anglo-Saxon components of the Commonwealth are essentially Britain, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. That is, four nations! In what sense, really could we ever call this small grouping a “*multitude of nations*” (Gen.48:19)?

Notice! The prophetic reference in Genesis 35:11 is to ALL the sons of Jacob – all TWELVE sons! The “nation” here undoubtedly refers to the southern kingdom of JUDAH, or the modern state of “Israel” (composed primarily of the Jewish people). The “assembly” of nations would refer to the TEN TRIBES of the northern kingdom of Israel, and their national descendants today – the modern nations of northwestern Europe!

The Jews primarily settled in the Middle East until dispersed in captivity by the Romans in 70 and 135 A.D., and were scattered around the world, until they began returning to the Middle East during the twentieth century, especially after the Holocaust and death camps of Hitlerite Germany during World War II.

### **“A Company of Nations”**

The Hebrew word translated “assembly” or “company” or “community” of nations in Genesis 35:11 is the Hebrew *qahal* and means “a congregation which is called together,” and is translated “assembly” 17 times in the KJV, “company” 17 times, “congregation” 86 times, and “multitude” 3 times. The word is often used when referring to any large army.

The Hebrew word here translated “nations” is *goy* and comes from a word meaning “massing,” and can be translated also as “people, a troop of animals, a flight of

locusts, Gentile, or heathen.” It simply means a collection or group massed together. Thus a “company” or “assembly of peoples” would be an accurate translation!

Although this term in Gen.35:11 definitely applies to ALL the nations that came out of the northern ten tribes of Israel, it would also include the tribe of Ephraim, which was to be the birthright tribe. Thus Ephraim was to become a “company,” “assembly,” “community,” or “fullness” of peoples or “states.”

Webster’s Dictionary defines a “state” as “a politically organized body of people usually occupying a definite territory; especially one that is sovereign.” We often speak of the “nation-states” of Europe. Originally, the thirteen colonies that became The United States of America, were each independent, sovereign entities. But they agreed to become UNITED STATES. Thus more than any other single country on the face of the earth, today, the United States of America fulfills this prophecy if we apply it toward the sons of Ephraim! It alone today is truly a “company” or “group” of states, united politically, into the greatest single country on the face of the earth! The state of California, just one state, alone has an economy that would make it the fifth greatest national economy on the earth!

A “company of nations,” or “states,” then, is simply a gathering, a congregation, a group, or an assembly of nations, a union of equal members who may or may not be under central control – just as the “sovereign states” of America gathered together to form “a more perfect UNION,” and wrote and agreed to the United States *Constitution*, which cemented that union together. They all agreed to a joint Congress or legislature, with representatives from each state, and a central Executive Branch, under an elected President, and an independent Judiciary, represented by the Federal Court system.

### *The United States Constitution*

The United States Constitution is a remarkable document. It unifies a “multitude of states” – 50 in number – as one harmonious entity composed of disparate units. It is a document sealing the unity of many “states” into one nation. As Americans say in their Pledge of Allegiance:

“I pledge allegiance to the *United States of America*,  
and to the Republic for which it stands;  
one nation, *under God*,  
with liberty and justice for all.”

Our nation with its Constitution is the most remarkable nation on earth with its system of government. Consider: formerly 13 colonies became 13 independent states, and they *voluntarily* gave up their independence to join together to form a *union* of states with each state having its own state government, to rule in that state, but also forming a federal government to make decisions regarding matters concerning ALL the member states.

At the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia, the UNITED STATES of America was born. It was 1789 – just 215 years ago.

America was founded and formed on solid governmental principles, testifying to the wisdom of our forefathers as a whole. Benjamin Franklin attended the Constitutional Convention in 1787. He was then 81 years old. It seemed the convention was hopelessly deadlocked, at one point, so Franklin rose up, and made a short speech in which he beseeched the delegates to daily seek Divine guidance for their meetings and deliberations. He declared:

“In this situation of this Assembly, groping as it were in the dark to find political truth, and scarce able to distinguish it when presented to us, how has it happened, Sir, that we have not once hitherto thought of humbly applying to the Father of lights, to illuminate our understandings? In the beginning of the contest with Great Britain, when we were sensible of danger, we had *daily prayer in this room* for the divine protection. Our prayers, Sir, were heard, and they were graciously answered.

“All of us who were engaged in the struggle must have observed frequent instances of a superintending Providence in our favor. To that kind Providence we owe this happy opportunity of consulting in peace on the means of establishing our future national felicity.

“And have we now forgotten that powerful friend? Or do we imagine that we no longer need his assistance?

“I have lived, Sir, a long time, and the longer I live, the more convincing proofs I see of this truth – that God governs in the affairs of men. *And if a sparrow cannot fall to the ground without his notice, is it probable that an empire can rise without his aid?*

“We have been assured, Sir, in the sacred writings, that ‘except the Lord build the house they labor in vain that build it.’ I firmly believe this; and I also believe that without his concurring aid we shall succeed in this political building no better than the builders of Babel. . . .

“I therefore beg leave to move – that henceforth prayers imploring the assistance of Heaven, and its blessings on our deliberations, be held in this Assembly every morning before we proceed to business, and that one or more of the clergy of this city be requested to officiate in that service.”

What kind of Union came out of that Constitutional Convention?

Irene Welling, a woman of deep insight, wrote me a letter regarding the union of states called the United States of America. She wrote, in March, 2004:

“I say, ‘Stick to your guns’ when it comes to teaching that the United States of America is modern-day Ephraim. In Genesis 48:19 it is prophesied that Joseph’s youngest son Ephraim would be greater than the oldest son Manasseh. Ephraim’s ‘seed (descendants) shall become a multitude of nations,’ and in verse 20 Joseph ‘set Ephraim before Manasseh.’

“In England (modern-day Manasseh) the middle classes of people fought their kings to win the right to representative government. Pilgrims who went to America took government practices from the English rulers with them. Representative government and many civil liberties became even broader than they had been in Great Britain.

“The colonies became states after the Declaration of Independence was signed in 1776. They formed the first independent general government in the unique union of states. Under the Articles of Confederation, the 13 states guarded their individual powers so strictly that they failed to give Congress the power to tax or to regulate interstate and foreign commerce. Congress could not even create an army without asking the state governments for men and money.

“Fearing a weak national government might collapse, leaders in the colonies led a constitutional convention in Philadelphia in 1787 that wrote the United States Constitution. The document went into effect in 1789. Then the federal government could exercise powers directly over the people, not through the state governments.

“Now a federal government pertains to or of the nature of a union of states under central government distinct from the individual governments of the separate states. You might say the federal government is ‘a league between states or nations.’ By 1959 the United States grew to becoming ‘a multitude of nations’ as prophesied of Ephraim’s destiny.

“Each state has its own laws. ‘Supreme Court decisions suggest that states have some latitude to exercise their own judgment and to consider their own laws’ in situations. The following information was in Lea Brilmayer’s article in *The Seattle Times*, March 7, 2004.

“ ‘Agreement between states’ laws has had a “certainty” which is important for commercial relationships, but ‘many pressing social issues have been fought out on the battleground of CONFLICT OF LAWS (emphasis mine). In the 19<sup>th</sup> century the issue was slavery and the states of slaves taken temporarily to the North; the question was framed in terms of whether a “contract” enforceable in one state had to be honored in others.’

“A hundred years later, a burning issue was divorce and whether an unhappy spouse might travel to Nevada (the only state in the country with lenient divorce laws) to dissolve the union.

“Today, same-sex marriages, allowed by Massachusetts’ law, have not been treated as automatically recognized by other states. Thirty-eight states have

made it clear they don't intend to respect the legal validity of [such] marriages entered into elsewhere.

“Only Ephraim's descendants, not Manasseh's, have a ‘multitude of nations,’ each with its own laws. This supports your other conclusive information in knowing who modern Ephraim is.”

Our Constitution is remarkable for its clarity, its concept of forging diverse states together into one common, united Republic while preserving individual states' rights. The federal government itself is a model of prudence and wisdom, with powers divided as equally as possible, between three branches of government – legislative, judicial, and executive. This republican form of government has endured for over 200 years. Sadly, there is now a growing movement to emasculate and eradicate the Constitution of the United States, and replace it with a United Nations “constitution,” a “New World Order,” which will effectively destroy American sovereignty, independence and greatness!

### *God Rules the Destiny of Nations*

It is God in heaven who controls the rise and fall of nations. The prophet Daniel declared, “The Most High rules in the kingdom of men, gives it to whomever He will” (Dan.4:17, NKJV). Although virtually no one has seemed to notice it, God Almighty is the One who founded this great end-time nation of states, and allowed them to be hammered together into one strong union! Benjamin Franklin's prayers, and the prayers of the men of the Continental Congress, were answered in an amazing fashion!

And that Great Most High God has left the identity of modern America in the most obvious place one could imagine – in the very *name* of our nation! The United States of America is the *only* nation in the world directly named “United States” – that is, “company of states”!

Not only that, but Manasseh was to become a *great* nation, and only one modern nation is known as being “great” in *its* very name – “Great Britain”!

The United States is an assembly of fifty united states which have given up their sovereignty in the interests of collective political union and are, for the most part, united geographically, as was the house of Israel anciently. The United States began with thirteen states. When we reached the West Coast we had “filled up” our land with forty-eight states, perhaps paralleling the forty-eight cities for the Levites in ancient Israel. Then we added two more to reach a “fullness” of fifty, or five times the number in the house of Israel of old.

“50” is an interesting number – in ancient Israel there were “50” years in a Jubilee year cycle (Leviticus 25). Fifty is  $7 \times 7$  (49) plus 1 – and represents total or complete perfection.

Thus, the United States is literally a “company, fullness, or assembly of states” – precisely what the sons of ancient Ephraim were prophesied to become!

### Chapter Three

# Ephraim – “Doubly Fruitful”

The name “Ephraim” in Hebrew means “double fruit” (Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance, #669). It is dual of a masculine form of #672, *ephrath*, which means “fruitfulness,” from #6509, *parah*, meaning “to bear fruit,” “bring forth fruit,” “be, cause to be or make fruitful,” “grow, increase.”

Gesenius Hebrew-Chaldea Lexicon defines “Ephraim” as “perhaps, ‘double land,’ ‘twin land.’” Says Gesenius, “(1) Ephraim, the younger son of Joseph, ancestor of the tribe of Ephraim . . . Ephraim, as being the royal tribe, is applied as a name – (2) of the *whole kingdom and people of the ten tribes*, especially in the books of the prophets.”

If the modern descendants of Ephraim were the nations of Great Britain, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand, then we would have a problem in the book of the prophet Hosea. We read in Hosea 7:11 of Ephraim: “Ephraim is like a silly DOVE without heart: they call to Egypt, they go to Assyria.” This implies that Ephraim is not a group of nations – plural – such as the British Commonwealth. Rather, Ephraim is compared to A DOVE – one bird, not several! This implies that Ephraim is in essence ONE NATION, not several – and it, as a nation, “calls to Egypt” and “goes to Assyria” – modern Germany! It is the United States which has formed treaties and agreements with modern Egypt and Germany – much more so than Great Britain. It is the United States, in fact, which came to the support of Egypt when it nationalized the Suez Canal, at the expense of the British.

What nation today has alliances and agreements with Egypt and Germany, in particular? The United States! The USA supports the Egyptian government with loans, military weapons, and foreign aid. The USA also coordinates strategy and actions with Germany, and the growing European Union. Therefore it best fulfills this important prophecy in Hosea – as a single witless, foolish nation. The British Commonwealth simply does not fulfill this description at all.

If the prophecies of Hosea speaking of Ephraim “calling to Egypt” or “going to Assyria,” referred to the British Commonwealth, then which of the nations comprising the Commonwealth nations would be meant? (Hos.7:11). If Ephraim were composed of

widely scattered nations, the prophecies of Hosea would be inexplicable; it would be impossible to determine to which “part” of Ephraim they applied, or how they could possibly apply to every “nation” of Ephraim! Obviously, the prophecies directed toward Ephraim in the Bible are directed to ONE UNITED COUNTRY, one sovereign nation – as Ephraim was historically, and as the United States is, today!

The very words of the U.S. Constitution reveal our national identity! The Constitution begins, “We the people of the United *States*, in order to form a more perfect *union* . . .”

### ***The U.S.A. Melting Pot***

Ephraim was to become a united company or *assembly of peoples*. Isn't it interesting that the United States is famous around the world for being the greatest “melting pot” of the nations? The United States has more emigrants from more diverse locations, than any other nation on earth! It is world renowned for its “open doors” and “open borders.” It prides itself on its national diversity! The American population today consists of a rich mosaic of national origins.

The population of the United States is composed of 82% white, 13% black or Afro-American, and 4% Asian, with 1% American Indian, Aleut, or Eskimo. In the 1990 census, 12% or 32 million were of Hispanic origin. Hispanics may become the nation's largest minority by 2005, according to population projections. Many of these are from Mexico, and some have dual citizenship.

The prophet Hosea foretold this condition would describe Ephraim in the last days! Hosea wrote, “Ephraim MIXES with the nations; Ephraim is a flat cake not turned over [white on one side, baked black or brown on the other side]. Foreigners sap his strength, but he does not realize it. His hair is sprinkled with gray, but he does not notice” (Hosea 7:8-9). This diversity and mixing of peoples in the United States is a “mixed bag” – it is both a strength, and also a potentially fatal weakness.

### ***The Greatness and Wealth of Ephraim***

Jacob prophesied that the younger brother, Ephraim, was to be *greater* than his older brother, Manasseh. Jacob plainly said, without equivocation:

“Nevertheless, his younger brother will be GREATER than he”  
(Gen.48:19).

Manasseh, the firstborn, was the older brother. Which nation is older – the United States or Great Britain? That fact alone should tell us that Great Britain was the older brother.

But what about the United States? Is it greater than Great Britain, even as Ephraim was to be greater than Manasseh?

The United States is the *wealthiest nation* in the world in terms of resources, business and assets, and gross national product – although we have also become the world’s biggest debtor nation by far due to our sins and living beyond our means during the past decade. We comprise only six percent of the world’s population, and yet we control over 40 percent of the world’s wealth! We are the bread basket of the world. Our gross national product in 1999 was \$9.299 TRILLION DOLLARS. Personal income for Americans that year totaled \$7.9 trillion dollars. Great Britain was seventh in the world, with a gross domestic product of \$1.252 trillion.

Either California or New York could be the world’s fifth or sixth richest nation in the world. The state of Illinois produces more than the entire continent of Africa! The eight industrial states from New York to Illinois produce as much as the Common Market, the Soviet Union, or all of Latin America, Africa, most of Asia except Japan, and the Middle East *combined!*

Jacob plainly, clearly, says Ephraim was to be greater than Manasseh. The United States is greater than Britain and the entire Commonwealth by far. It is the United States which is the greatest and most powerful nation or “union of states” that the world has *ever* seen. The US spends \$265 billion annually, or thereabouts, on national defense alone. Great Britain spends one seventh as much – \$36 billion. The United States has 1.4 million troops under arms, whereas the United Kingdom has 200,000 – one seventh as many. Younger Ephraim was to be greater than older brother Manasseh.

These facts alone, apart from anything else, should give us a strong indication or “hint” and help settle the question once and for all as to what nation or people best represent Ephraim, today, and what people best represent the sons of Manasseh!

Ephraim’s great national wealth and prosperity in the End Time was *prophesied* by Hosea. The prophet foretold, “Ephraim boasts, ‘*I am very rich; I have become wealthy.*’ With all my wealth they will not find in me any iniquity or sin” (Hos.12:8). It has been the United States which has soared to the status of the richest of nations during the end times – not Great Britain.

The economy of the United States has been the engine that has driven the free world since the end of World War II. It has led to postwar recovery of the entire Western World. Although it is presently sputtering, and showing signs of instability, it has prevented global recession and depression until the present.

There is simply no comparison in military power between the two nations in these last days. Hosea prophesied of Ephraim –

“When Ephraim spoke, men *trembled*; he was EXALTED in Israel. But he became guilty of Baal worship and died. Now they sin more and more; they make idols for themselves from their silver, cleverly fashioned images, all of them the work of craftsmen” (Hos.13:1-2).

American power has been projected around the world, causing nations to tremble.

Japan felt the wrath of the United States with the nuclear bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, ending World War II. The world has trembled before American might during the Cold War era, and even now the United States is widely recognized as the world's only remaining "Superpower."

### *Time Sequence of Blessings*

Now notice the time sequence of Jacob's blessing. Manasseh was mentioned first, that he would be great. THEN – after that – Jacob mentioned Ephraim would be greater than his brother. Time wise, therefore, we would expect that Manasseh was to rise up to greatness first, even as Great Britain did. But then, later, his younger brother Ephraim was to shoot past him, and surpass him in greatness, wealth, and military might!

This is just what happened! Britain became a great country, and colonizer, first; but then America suddenly grew up, burst her bonds, and became the economic, industrial, and military colossus of the world – the greatest UNITED STATES the world had ever seen in all its history!

What an amazing, incredible fulfillment of Jacob's prophecy, uttered almost 4,000 years ago, shortly before his death!

After World War II, no nation and no empire could compete with the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA! It ruled the sea lanes of the world; its currency, the dollar, was the foundation of international trade. Thus Ephraim, the United States, surpassed his older brother, Manasseh, or Great Britain.

It was all prophesied long ago!

It is true that the British Empire *used to* rule the seas, but God is concerned with the end-time in Bible prophecy, the time we are living in, the present age at the END. That's *now* – not 100-200 years ago or more. To claim that Britain is Ephraim because Britain was at *one time* greater than the United States, *at that time*, is missing the whole point. We would expect the "older brother" to grow and become great first. We would expect the younger brother to mature and grow up and become great later, as he reaches maturity! History shows that the British Empire was "great" during the 1800s, but it was the United States that became great during the 1900s. The sun began to set on the British Empire in the early 1900s. It gradually became a distant, flickering memory. After World War II, its sun quickly set and its former glory became history.

Prior to 1800, however, many of the people of both Ephraim and Manasseh were still dwelling together in Britain. During England's rise to world power status, during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, the two tribes were still largely dwelling together. Any greatness of that period would have to be ascribed to both of them, jointly. At the pivotal defeat of the Spanish Armada in 1588, the people of Ephraim and Manasseh were UNITED, and dwelling in the British isles. It was when Ephraim and Manasseh were joined together, that Britain rose to her position of premier greatness. But after the

United States was born, it quickly began to assume the mantle of world dominance and leadership

Therefore, the real issue is: Who is greatest at the END of this age – just before the return of the Messiah? Those who claim that Great Britain is Ephraim because she *used to* be greater in the 1800's, are focusing on “yesteryear.” That is ancient history. The real question is, *who is great at the END of this present age, before the coming of the Messiah? What about NOW?* It reminds me of the old question, “What have you done for me, *lately?*”

Prophecy was written for the END of the age, not the eighteenth or nineteenth century. One of the strongest objections to the “Anglo-Israel” theory that Great Britain and the Commonwealth is Ephraim is this fact of Britain’s decline and loss of power and influence during the twentieth century, and America’s incredible RISE to world SUPER-power status and pre-eminent position in world affairs! This fact seems to cry out loudly and roar that Jacob’s words have been fulfilled – and Ephraim is mostly represented by the United States of America in today’s world!

### ***Population Explosion in America***

One of the tremendous blessings God promised the descendants of Israel in the end-times was great fertility and fruitfulness, the blessings of the womb (Gen.17:6, 22:17, Deut.28:4). Jacob referred to Joseph as a “fruitful vine near a spring, whose branches climb over a wall” (Gen.49:22). The descendants of Israel in the End Time were to be “as the sand of the sea” (Isa.10:22). “Who can count the dust of Jacob, or number the fourth part of Israel?” (Numbers 23:10).

The population of Britain is about 60 million. The population of the United States is 280 million – about four times as much! The prophet Hosea indicated that of all the Israelite nations, Ephraim was to become the most fruitful; “even though he thrives [“be fruitful,” KJV, “flourishes,” Tanakh] among his brethren,” God foretold, “an east wind from the Lord will come, blowing in from the desert; his spring will fail and his well dry up. His store house will be plundered of all its treasures” (Hos.13:15).

“The more they increased, the more they sinned against me,” God foretold (Hos.4:7, Tanakh). These Scriptures show that Ephraim was to be the MOST FRUITFUL of the tribes of Israel – the MOST POPULOUS! The only nation descended from ancient Israel which can truly fit this description today is the United States!

But notice! This immense, incredible prosperity *will not last forever*. It is destined to be dried up, withered, and plundered, because of Ephraim’s increasing wickedness and iniquity during these last days! With an increase in prosperity has come an exponential increase in crime, prostitution, adultery, murders, rape, homosexuality, drug proliferation, pornography, and violence!

### *Ephraim – “Doubly Fruitful”*

The United States is Ephraim because of the two brothers, it is the most populous, “doubly fruitful” Israelite nation. It is also “doubly fruitful” in *rate* of population *growth*.

Fruitfulness, flourishing population, can also refer to the *rate* of growth. The growth rate of the United States has been nothing short of phenomenal – from virtually nothing to 280 million in only 220 years! During that time Britain has grown from 15 million to 60 million – four times.

But the United States has grown from a population of 3,240,000 in 1784 to 280,000,000 in the same length of time – an exponential population growth of *over 86 times!—or 8,600%!*

No country in history has, like the United States, literally come from out of nowhere, and literally EXPLODED in population growth and power, both military and economic!

Truly, the United States – modern Ephraim – has experienced a dramatic population increase.

Truly it has lived up to its name – and is “DOUBLY fruitful”!

### *Agricultural Blessings*

In agricultural blessings, too, America is “doubly fruitful.” Recall that God promised outstanding natural resources and blessings to the descendants of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh, with Ephraim receiving the “double portion” as the “birthright son” of the two. This promise of the choicest gifts of heaven above, of the deep below, of the everlasting hills and valleys, and most fertile fields, and precious metals, has been fulfilled nowhere like it has in the United States. God also promised national greatness, and prestige and honor among the other nations. Again, this promise has been fulfilled nowhere as much as in the United States!

God said of Isaac’s descendants, “May God give you of heaven’s dew and of earth’s richness – an abundance of grain and new wine. May nations serve you and peoples bow down to you. Be lord over your brothers, and may the sons of your mother bow down to you. May those who curse you be cursed and those who bless you be blessed” (Gen.27:28-29).

Although these blessings would accrue to all the children of Israel, as the primary inheritor of the BIRTHRIGHT, they would accrue to Ephraim most of all! We read in I Chronicles 5:2, “the rights of the FIRSTBORN belonged to Joseph.”

Balaam prophesied of Israel, “How beautiful are your tents, O Jacob, your dwelling places, O Israel! Like valleys they spread out, like gardens beside a river, like

aloes planted by the Lord, like cedars beside the waters” (Numbers 24:5-6).

Isaiah was inspired to prophesy of Ephraim, “Woe to that wreath, the pride of Ephraim’s drunkards, to the fading flower, his glorious beauty, *set on the head of a fertile valley* – to that city, the pride of those laid low by wine” (Isa.28:1). Ephraim is described by the prophet as a land of hills and mountains, lakes and rivers, and vast fertile valleys. What land fits that description more than the United States? The KJV translates this passage “fat valleys,” the Living Bible has “rich valleys.” Either way, no nation on earth has richer, fatter, more fertile and vast valleys than the United States of America!

“Fat valleys” is a symbol of rich agricultural bounty. Of the two, the U.S. and Britain, which is known as the “breadbasket of the world”? Of the two, which is known for its abundant wine production? Britain is famous for its ales and beer, and Scotland for its whiskey, but the United States is world famous for its wines – especially California wine! The United States has such world renowned agricultural valleys as the San Joaquin, San Fernando, and the Central Valley of California, the Willamette Valley in Oregon, Piedmont Valley, the Cumberland Valley, and the Shenandoah Valley of Virginia.

The United States had 2,194,000 farms in 1999, with an average of 432 acres per farm. It had under cultivation 947 million acres. In wheat, rice and corn production in 1999, the United States and Great Britain compared as follows, in metric tons:

<i>Crop</i>	<i>United States</i>	<i>Great Britain</i>
Wheat	62,662,000	14,800,000
Rice	9,500,000	none
Corn	239,719,000	none

Canada produces 26,850,000 metric tons of wheat, no rice, and 9,096,000 tons of corn; Australia produces 21,269,000 tons of wheat, 1,410,000 tons of rice, and 319,000 tons of corn. The United States is by far the leading exporter to the world of wheat and corn. In 2000, the US had 98 million cattle and over 7 million sheep, down from its numbers one hundred years previously.

### ***Glorious Natural Beauty***

This passage in Isaiah 28:1 also speaks of Ephraim’s “glorious beauty.” What nation on earth is more famous for its “glorious beauty” and natural scenery than the United States?

From sea to shining sea, from the redwoods and Sequoias of California to the majestic waters of Niagara Falls, from the Blue Ridge Mountains of Tennessee to the Mojave Desert, from the Grand Canyon of the Colorado to the paint pots and geysers of Yellowstone, from the Grand Tetons of Wyoming to the towering granite spires of Yosemite, from the Everglades of Florida and the Texas Big Bend Country to the waters of Waikiki, Hawaii, you name it – no country on the face of the earth can compare with

the glorious beauty of Ephraim – the United States of America!

We sing the song, “O beautiful for spacious skies, for amber waves of grain; for purple mountain majesties, above the fruited plain – America, America, God shed His grace on thee; O crown thy good with brotherhood, from sea to shining sea!” We sing the song, “God bless America, land that I love; stand beside her, and guide her, through the night with the light from above.” We sing, “This land is your land, this land is my land, From California to the New York Islands, From the Redwood Forests to the Gulf Stream Waters, This land was made for you and me.” But as we sing these inspiring, rich, bountiful songs, little do we realize that we are singing the songs of Ephraim – the youngest son of Joseph, who was to inherit the blessings of the FIRSTBORN!

The “glorious beauty” of Ephraim refers to the glorious and awe-inspiring beauty of the United States, and must be seen to be appreciated. A few years ago I took my family on a trip through the summer. We went through the National Parks of Mount Rainier and the Northern Cascades, in the state of Washington, to Glacier in Montana, Yellowstone and Grand Tetons in Wyoming, and dropped down to the Canyonlands, Arches National Monument, Bryce Canyon, and Zion National Park, in Utah – we covered seven National Parks in just one trip, but didn’t have time for Yosemite, Sequoia, King’s Canyon in central California, or Crater Lake in Oregon. Nor did we have time for the Big Sur country along the California coastline, or the beautiful Oregon coast.

Just this past year, October 2003, my wife and I spent a weekend at the Grand Canyon of the Colorado River, in northern Arizona. A more beautiful, majestic sight your eyes have never ever seen. It takes your breath away. Tourists come from around the world to witness its majesty and stand in subdued awe.

It is easy to be overwhelmed by the greatness of the heritage of the beautiful places God has bequeathed to the children of Joseph, especially Ephraim, when we travel throughout the United States of America!

The United States has the Great Plains, the Mississippi River system, the Great Lakes – the finest breadbasket and grazing land, commercial water base and drainage system of the whole world. The Great Plains are the greatest area of useful land in the world. Half the fresh water of the world is contained in the Great Lakes system. Incalculably rich deposits of iron ore, coal and limestone lie along this great waterway. In this region was erected the world’s greatest steel industry that helped make America the strongest and richest nation on earth.

Hosea the prophet further describes the blessings that would come to Ephraim as the recipient of the blessings of the firstborn of Israel, and then to all Israel. God says of Ephraim, “I have seen Ephraim, like Tyre, *planted in a pleasant place*” (Hos.9:13). What nation on earth has a more “pleasant place” than the United States? What mercantile city today more resembles ancient Tyre, the mercantile hub of the ancient world, than New York City – the modern day financial capital of the world and the bazaar of the nations?

Why were the vast, far-flung resources of North America left virtually untapped and unused for millennia until the arrival of the Anglo-Saxon descendants of ancient Jacob, or Israel – the peoples of Ephraim, and Manasseh? Was it all “manifest destiny,” as our forefathers believed?

Moses was inspired to write: “When the Most High gave the nations their inheritance, when he divided all mankind, *he set up boundaries* for the peoples according to the number of the sons of Israel” (Deut.32:8, NIV). The apostle Paul wrote that “The God who made the world and everything in it . . . From one man he made every nation of men, that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he determined the times set for them and *the exact places* where they should live” (Acts 17:24-26).

God reserved the choicest portions of the earth for the birthright tribe of Israel. He gave the beautiful North American continent to the sons of Joseph – to Ephraim He gave the part belonging to the United States, and to Manasseh He gave the sprawling land of Canada, not quite so rich and fertile, lying as it does so far to the north, but still a very blessed nation.

The evidence abounds – when our eyes are open to behold it, the truth is serene, majestic, and wonderful. The prophesied blessings of Ephraim, the “birthright tribe,” belong primarily and are fulfilled most fully in the United States!

### *Astonishing Agricultural Blessings*

How significant was this prophetic fulfillment? How impressive was this LAND which God gave to the people of the United States? Remember, since Ephraim was given the share of the “firstborn,” he was promised to receive the greater share of incredible physical blessings!

The children of Joseph were promised incredible agricultural blessings (Deut.33:13-14) and mineral wealth (verse 15). America’s mineral resources are vast – much greater than those of Great Britain and the Commonwealth nations. Iron, tin, coal, oil, uranium, copper, manganese – you name it – America has been incredibly blessed.

In the *Pentateuch and Haftorahs*, in reference to Deut.33:13-17, the commentators point out that Ephraim and Manasseh were blessed and prophesied to possess “the temporal blessings of fertility of soil and military prowess.” They were to receive: “*the precious things of heaven*. The gifts of nature – rain, sunshine, warmth – that are indispensable for fertility.” They were to receive: “*fruits of the sun*. Every form of yearly produce matured by the light and warmth of the sun. *yield of the moons*. ‘The produce of the months’; *i.e.* the fruit and vegetation of successive seasons.” And verse 16: “*precious things of the earth*. After speaking of the fertility of the hills and mountains, the Seer turns to the precious products of the plains and valleys” (p.912).

America, lying in the temperate zone of the earth, has been blessed with the most

profoundly productive agricultural land imaginable. Paul Syltje, in his book *Millennial Agriculture: The New Eden*, describes the original state of the soil of the United States, before modern agricultural methods began to ruin it. He writes, “The marvelous productivity of the Mississippi and Ohio Rivers and their expansive, fertile valleys in the early 1800s cannot be appreciated by words alone.” He quotes Timothy Flint, a missionary, who describes a trip down these rivers: “. . . the exuberant fertility of the soil, evidencing itself in the natural as well as cultivated vegetation, in the height and size of the corn, of itself alone a matter of astonishment to an inhabitant of the northern states, in the thrifty aspect of the young orchards, literally bending under their fruit . . .” (page 292).

Flint goes on: “Large flocks of cattle and horses are seen grazing together. It is often that a flock of wild deer is seen bounding over the plain. In the autumn immense flocks of pelicans (possibly white pelicans), standbills, cranes (sand-hill cranes), geese, swans, ducks, and all kinds of aquatic fowls, are seen hovering over it. The soil is of the easiest culture and most exuberant productiveness. . . The grass is thick and tall. Corn and wheat grow in the greatest perfection. When I first saw this charming scene, ‘Here,’ said I to my companion who guided me, ‘here shall be my farm, and here I will end my days!’ In effect, take it all in all, I have not seen, before nor since, a landscape which united, in an equal degree, the grand, the beautiful, and fertile” (p.292-293).

The land was so bountiful and productive, that along the Minnesota River pioneer women “found fish so plentiful that they could flip them out of the water with a pitchfork” (p.290). William Bartram, describing areas of flora and fauna in the southeastern United States, tells of the incredible abundance of that portion of the country before man’s intrusions into the environment. Writing in 1774, traveling along the St. John’s River and nearby Florida, he related: “How shall I express myself so as to convey an adequate idea of it to the reader, and at the same time avoid raising suspicions of my veracity? Should I say, that the river (in this place) from shore to shore, and perhaps near half a mile above and below me, appeared to be one solid bank of fish, of various kinds (large-mouthed bass, hadiness, etc.), pushing through this narrow pass of St. John’s into the little lake, on their return down the river, and that the alligators were in such incredible numbers, and so close from shore to shore, that it would have been easy to have walked across on their heads, had the animals been harmless?” (p.282).

John Muir, famous naturalist, describes early California: “When California was wild, it was one sweet bee garden throughout its entire length, north and south, and all the way across, from the snowy Sierra to the ocean. Wherever a bee might fly within the bounds of this virgin wilderness – through the redwood forests, along the banks of the rivers, along the bluffs and headlands, fronting the sea, over valley and plain, park and grove, and deep, leafy glen, or far up the piney slopes of the mountains – throughout every belt and section of climate up to the timberline, bee flowers bloomed in lavish abundance. . . . The Great Central Plain of California, during the months of March, April and May, was one smooth, continuous bed of honey bloom, so marvelously rich that, in walking from one end of it to the other, a distance of over four hundred miles, your foot would press about a hundred flowers at every step” (p.295).

Early America teemed also with buffalo. Stewart Udall wrote, “The size of the buffalo herds was a source of awe to the plainsmen, and Colonel R. I. Dodge wrote once of a herd he saw in Arkansas in the early 70s: ‘From the top of Pawnee Rocks I could see from six to ten miles in almost every direction. This whole vast space was covered with buffalo, looking at a distance like a compact mass’” (*ibid.*).

Truly America has been tremendously blessed, although we have squandered our heritage and abused the land and have begun to suffer the consequences. Nevertheless, the rich agricultural productivity of this wonderful land so blessed by God ought to show us that, in truth, we have been blessed with the birthright blessings that were promised to the seed of Joseph, both Ephraim and Manasseh, but preponderantly Ephraim, the younger son who inherited the birthright. Moses declared: “Blessed by the Lord be his land, with the choice gifts of heaven above, and of the deep that lies beneath; with the choice fruits of the sun, and the rich yield of the months; with the finest produce of the ancient mountains, and the abundance of the everlasting hills; with the choice gifts of the earth and its fullness, and the favor of the One who dwells on Sinai” (Deut.33:13-16, NRSV).

“Let these come upon the head of Joseph, on the brow of the prince among his brothers. A firstborn bull – majesty is his! His horns are the horns of a wild ox; with them he gores the peoples, driving them to the ends of the earth; such are the myriads of Ephraim, such are the thousands of Manasseh” (Deut.33:16-17).

The term for “myriads” or “ten thousands” here in reference to Ephraim is *rebabah* and means “abundance (in number), i.e. a *myriad* – many, million, multiply, ten thousand,” from *rabab*, “to cast together, i.e. *increase*, especially in number; also to *multiply by the myriad*, be many, manifold, be more, multiply, ten thousands.”

The term for “thousands” here in reference to Manasseh is an entirely different word – *eleph*, which means “thousand.”

Thus the Hebrew differentiates between the blessings and numbers of these two adopted sons of Jacob. The greater blessing was to go to Ephraim, and the secondary blessing to Manasseh. But both were to be incredibly blessed and favored.

The Jews, to this day, remember this truth, and every week, before Sabbath, when they hold a family meal, a blessing is said for the young sons in the family. The patriarch Jacob declared of Ephraim and Manasseh, “By you Israel will invoke blessings, saying: ‘God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh.’ So he put Ephraim ahead of Manasseh” (Gen.48:20, NRSV).

Says the *Pentateuch and Haftorah*, “To this day every pious Jewish father on Sabbath eve places his hands on the head of his son, and blesses him in the words: ‘God make thee as Ephraim and Manasseh’ . . . Ephraim and Manasseh would not barter away their ‘Jewishness’ for the most exalted social position, or the most enviable political

career, in the Egyptian state. They voluntarily gave up their place in the higher Egyptian aristocracy, and openly identified themselves with their ‘alien’ kinsmen, the despised shepherd-immigrants. Every Jewish parent may well pray that his children show the same loyalty to their father and their father’s God as did Ephraim and Manasseh” (p.182).

Let’s review once again the sudden explosion of growth of this remarkable people. In 1630 there were 4,600 inhabitants in the American colonies. By 1780 there were 13 colonies, with a population of 2,780,000 inhabitants. By the Civil War, 1860, the American population grew to 31,443,000. By the year 2000 it had skyrocketed to 281,421,906. Truly the American people have been, like Ephraim was prophesied to be, “doubly fruitful.”

Looking at the amazing history of the United States, one is compelled to say, as God inspired Balaam to say of Israel: “For from the top of the rocks I see him, and from the hills I behold him: lo, the people shall dwell alone, and shall not be reckoned among the nations” (Numbers 23:9). “Who can count the dust of Jacob, and the number of the fourth part of Israel? Let me die the death of the righteous, and let my last end be like his!” (v.10). Surely America has “the strength of an unicorn” (verse 22).

Of the United States, it might well be said, “How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob, and thy tabernacles, O Israel!” (Num.24:5), “his king shall be higher than Agag, and his kingdom shall be exalted” (v.7). Balaam truly foretold, “it shall be said of Jacob and Israel, What hath God wrought!” (Numbers 23:23). This applies to both Ephraim *and* Manasseh – and to *all Israel!* But the greatest and most spectacular blessing was to rest on the head of Ephraim!

### ***Ephraim – Land of Wine-Bibbers***

Ephraim, also, unfortunately, was to become a people who drank too much WINE. Isaiah foretold, “Woe to the crown of pride, to the DRUNKARDS of Ephraim. . . To those who are overcome with WINE” (Isa.28:1). Here is another identifying characteristic of Ephraim. They were to have a problem with wine consumption – drinking too much wine! In a word, inebriation.

Wine is produced in abundance in the United States. Our wines rival those produced in France. Wine grapes are grown in California, Oregon, Washington, Pennsylvania, in almost every state of the Union. California wines are world famous.

On the other hand, the English are not known for producing or consuming wine. The British are not known as wine-bibbers; their drink of choice is *beer*. Go into an English pub and you will find *beer* – a completely different beverage.

Isaiah says Ephraim would have a problem with drunkenness from *wine!* The word for “wine” here is *yayin* in Hebrew and means “to effervesce, *wine* (as fermented); by implication, intoxication.” *Vine’s Complete Expository Dictionary* states: “This is the usual Hebrew word for *fermented grape*. It is usually rendered ‘wine.’” This fact again

points to the United States as being modern-day Ephraim, rather than Great Britain! This may not seem like a major point of evidence, but nevertheless, it is once again the United States which has the greater problem of alcohol abuse, alcoholism, and produces an abundance of wine, as well as beer, and other intoxicating beverages. Once again, Ephraim is shown to be “doubly-fruitful” – even in areas where it should not be proud!

### **“Doubly Fruitful”**

It was Joshua – an *Ephraimite* – who led the children of Israel into the Promised Land. Today America is a new “Promised Land” of our time. Millions of foreigners strive to emigrate here, legally or illegally, regarding this fair land as the “last best hope for mankind.”

Interesting, also, is the fact that Joseph was the brother that was “separated from his brethren” (Deut.33:16, KJV). Modern-day Joseph, also, is “separated” from his brothers – other Israelite nations – by the Atlantic Ocean! Only Ephraim, and a portion of Manasseh, are located on the North American continent, thus “separated” from their brother nations in northwestern Europe! Great Britain itself is separated from the rest of Europe by the English channel.

Hosea says of Ephraim, “like a wild donkey wandering *alone*” (Hos.8:9). Balaam said of Israel, “I see a people who LIVE APART and do not consider themselves one of the nations. Who can count the dust of Jacob, or number the fourth part of Israel?” (Num.23:9-10).

When Ephraim was born, Joseph gave him that name, saying, “It is because God has made me FRUITFUL in the land of my suffering” (Gen.41:52). Like his father Joseph, Ephraim has been fruitful in the land of his affliction or early suffering. The early colonists in North America underwent extreme privation and troubles, before the foundation was laid for a new land, a new nation. The exploits of the voyagers on the Mayflower, most of whom perished en route to the New World, and the harrowing difficulties of the Pilgrims, and the settlers at Jamestown, in a sense duplicate the earlier sufferings of their forefather Joseph who was sold into slavery by his brothers, and cast into the dungeon of Pharaoh and virtually forgotten there.

On the other hand, Manasseh means “Causing to forget.” When he was born, Joseph said he named him that, “Because God has made me forget all my trouble and all my father’s household” (Gen.41:51). Notice how this name reveals the nature of Manasseh. Britain, the older of the two sons, has truly “forgotten all his father’s household” – and even his Biblical roots and lineage – his national identity.

In Great Britain there are the legends of Jeremiah bringing the king’s daughters to Ireland, where Princess Tea married into the royal line already established by early Israelites. There is the name of Tara, the ancient Irish capital, meaning “Torah.” There is the Stone of Scone, or Jacob’s Pillar Stone, and its traditions and history. There are the royal genealogies, which trace the British monarchy back to the line of ancient Judah, son

of Jacob, and other genealogies which connect the dynasty of King David to the British royal throne. There is the very name “British” itself – derived from “Brit” meaning “covenant” in Hebrew – and “ish” meaning “man.” So “Brit-ish” is simply Hebrew for “Covenant man.” Likewise, the very name “Saxons” derives from “Isaac’s sons.” In spite of these things, however, the average British citizen gives no recognition to these traditions and facts. Their ancestral heritage has been “forgotten.”

The British flag is called the “Union Jack.” The term possibly dates from the time of Queen Anne (1702-1714). Its origin is uncertain; it could derive from the name of King James I who began the first “union” in 1603. King James name in Latin was “Jacobus,” and in Hebrew, “Jacob.” The name “Jack” is actually a derivation of the Hebrew name “Jacob,” the son of Isaac. Therefore the term “Union Jack” actually means, by definition, the “Union of Jacob.”

Jamestown, the first British colony established in America, could just as easily be referred to as “Jacob’s town.” Thus both Great Britain and America can be identified with Jacob, the son of Isaac, whose name was changed by God to “Israel.” Jamestown, therefore, could also be called “Israel-town.” It identifies our ancestral line back to ancient Jacob or Israel.

The American flag began with thirteen stars, symbols of the thirteen original colonies, and Americans came to be called “Yankees.”

The term “Yankee” or “Yank” – meaning an American (especially one from the Northern States), comes from the name Jacob. The fact is, in the Hebrew that was used by Jews in Europe, “Yank” was a shortened form of the name “Jacob.” In Hebrew, “Jacob” is pronounced “Ya-kov” or “Ya-kob.” The title of a famous Hebrew book, *Ayin Yaacov* (“Spring of Jacob”), a collection of Talmudic stories, among Jews of European origin was pronounced as “*Ayin Yankov*.” In fact, the Yiddish and Eastern European pronunciation of “Jacob” was “Yankov.” Thus it is easy to see how “Yank,” a term for Americans used by Europeans, derives from our ancestor “Jacob.”

Over the centuries, God caused ancient Israel to go into captivity. While there, all of them eventually lost their true identity, being far removed from the land of Palestine. God later released their captivity, and led them to their new inheritances, in Western Europe, the British Isles, and the New World. He blessed them, and caused them to become great. But Manasseh, despite all the legends, history, and evidence, lost the knowledge of his own identity, and “forgot” who he really was, just as his name implies!

Here then is more evidence that Manasseh is Great Britain, “Forgetfulness,” and Ephraim is the United States of America, “Doubly fruitful”!

These Biblical allusions would fit perfectly to two peoples, both descended from Joseph, both *dwelling apart* as he did from his brethren – who was “separated from his brethren” (Deut.33:16, KJV) – dwelling apart from the Old World countries – in the British Isles, and in the “New World,” the Western hemisphere! And both brothers have

names which describe their intrinsic, basic, prophetic character and which help identify them, today!

### *The “Coastlands of Ephraim”*

The prophet Jeremiah was inspired of God to write, “Ephraim is MY FIRSTBORN” (Jeremiah 31:9). He was to dwell in the “north lands” and “the *ends* of the earth” (verse 8). He was to dwell in the “isles afar” (v.10), and the “coastlands” (Isa.49:1, Tanakh).

The United States, with the longest habitable coastline of any nation, best fits this description. The US coastline is 12,282 miles long, and its shoreline is 88,633 miles in length. It is in the western hemisphere; it is “far off” and at the “ends of the earth” from Jerusalem – half way around the world, in fact! – and it possesses a long and valuable “coastland.” No other nation’s land combines all these qualifications, like the United States!

When God scattered His people in 718-721 B.C., he drove them among the peoples of the earth; “yet in DISTANT LANDS they will remember me,” He foretold (Zech.10:9). He prophesied of them, “Stand silent before me, *coastlands*, And let nations renew their strength” (Isa.41:1).

The same Hebrew word *yam* is translated “sea” and “west.” Therefore, the “islands of the sea” or “coastlands of the sea” could just as readily be translated as “coastlands of the *west*.” Needless to say, the United States is a “coastland of the WEST”! – far west of Jerusalem!

Isaiah writes, “Look! These are coming from AFAR, these from the NORTH and the WEST, and these from the land of Sinim” (Isa.49:12, Tanakh). If you draw a line due north of Jerusalem to the North Pole, and due west, and followed both of them till they intersected, the section of the globe carved out would include Europe, and North America – the portion of the globe which includes most of the Israelite nations of the earth – The United States, Canada, Great Britain, Sweden, Norway, Denmark, Finland, Switzerland, Holland, Belgium, and France!

Hosea the prophet wrote, “*Ephraim* feeds on the wind; he pursues the east wind all day” (Hos.12:1, NIV). The east wind blows WEST. *Thus Ephraim was prophesied to move to the WEST of Jerusalem.* The United States lies in part due *west* of modern day Israel and Jerusalem! Los Angeles and Jerusalem are both at about the 30° degree parallel of latitude!

God says of His firstborn son Ephraim, “How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel?” “I will not carry out my fierce anger, nor will I turn and devastate Ephraim. For I am God, and not man – the Holy One among you. I will not come in wrath. They will follow the Lord; he will roar like a lion. When he roars, his children will come TREMBLING FROM THE WEST” (Hos.11:8-11, NIV).

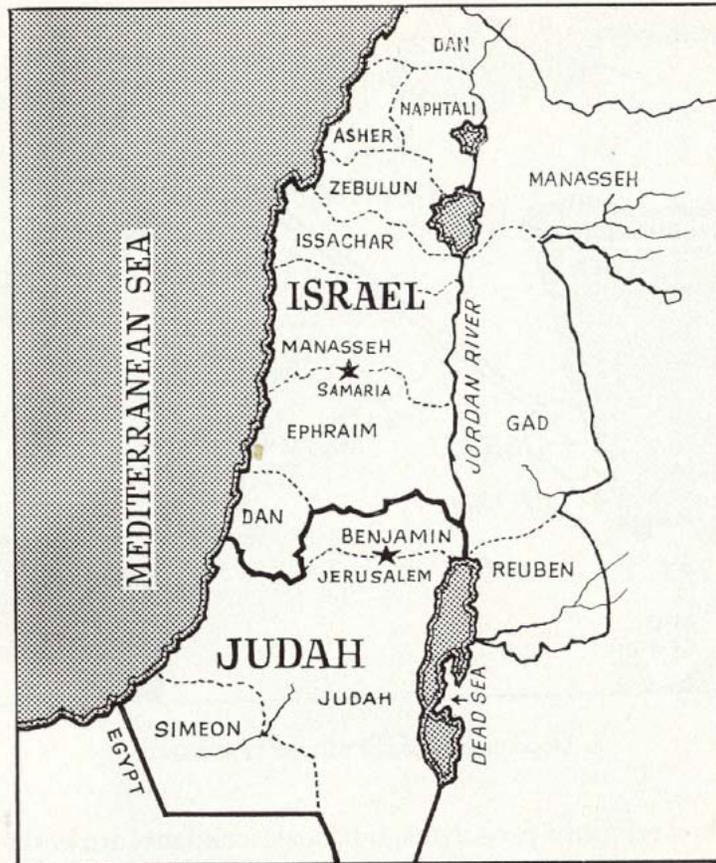
When we look carefully at a map of the globe, we find that the Northern hemisphere and the western hemisphere – *North America* – most perfectly fulfills the description of “coastlands” afar off to the *north and west of Jerusalem!* And to the far northwest from Jerusalem, we come to America’s 49<sup>th</sup> state – the state of Alaska, the largest state of all!

### ***Geographical Relativity***

In ancient times, Manasseh was divided into two parts – one part dwelt on the EAST side of the Jordan river, and one part dwelt WEST of the Jordan, and due north of Ephraim, settled adjacent to their northern border. In modern times, too, much of Manasseh dwells in the east, in Britain, with the Atlantic Ocean to the west, while many others chose to come to the New World, and settled in Canada – north of the United States and west of the Atlantic Ocean. Modern Manasseh is divided, just as ancient Manasseh was, separated by a body of water. If the United States were Manasseh, then IT should be divided – half across the Atlantic, and the other half NORTH of the present United States, where Canada exists!

Ephraim (the United States) still lies to the south of Manasseh (Canada), even as it did in Biblical times. The border between the two peoples is the longest unfortified, friendly border in the world! No passports are required to cross between the two countries.

In ancient times, West Manasse's border stretched from the Jordan River to the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Likewise, Ephraim's border also stretched from the Jordan to the Mediterranean. Thus, in ancient times and modern times, the relative geographical positions of the two nations or tribes is IDENTICAL! Only this time the



eastern boundary is the Atlantic Ocean, and the western boundary is the Pacific Ocean!

When Joshua gave each tribe its territory in ancient Canaan, we read, “There were towns belonging to Ephraim lying among the towns of Manasseh, but the boundary of Manasseh was the northern side of the ravine and ended at the sea. On the south the land belonged to Ephraim, on the north to Manasseh. The territory of Manasseh reached the sea . . .” (Josh.17:9-10). Today, the western borders of Manasseh and Ephraim STILL terminate at a western sea – the Pacific Ocean!

The parallels are simply too striking to ignore!

It is also interesting to note the fact that in ancient Israel, West Manasseh had “ten portions” of Canaan (Josh.17:5). Similarly, modern Canada has *ten provinces*. West Manasseh's land area was larger than that of Ephraim's. Similarly, Canada occupies a larger land area than the United States.

Finally, no geographic, social, or racial barriers separate our two nations. We

speak a common language. We are each other's best trade partner. We are *just like brothers*. But of course – we ARE brothers!

Moses said of Joseph's descendants, "Such are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and such are the thousands of Manasseh" (Deut.33:17). The populations of the United States and Canada are about 280,000,000 and 31,000,000 respectively – a ratio of nine to one – close to the ratio or proportion implied by the words of Moses!

### ***Time of Existence***

The ancient kingdom of Israel lasted from 975 B.C., when the ten tribes revolted against Rehoboam, king of Judah and son of Solomon, until 721-718 B.C. – a span of about 260 years. The modern United States has endured from its Declaration of Independence in 1776 until 2004, a span of 228 years.

The leading tribe of ancient Israel was Ephraim. The leading national tribe of modern Israel is still Ephraim, God's "firstborn." As Ephraim represented all Israel during ancient times, so modern Ephraim – the United States of America – represents all Israel, today. The prophecies in the Bible which are directed against modern "Israel" are mostly for the United States, the leading nation of the "lost tribes" of Israel! The prophecies are directed toward the most powerful nation on the earth, today – the United States!

### ***The Proof of David's Throne***

Many Biblical prophecies indicate that the Davidic throne would endure through the centuries, and a descendant of David would still be ruling on that throne up until the coming of the Messiah (see Gen.49:10; II Sam.7:4-5, 12-16; Jer.33:17-26). When ancient Judah was carried into captivity to Babylon, to all human appearances, that throne vanished into thin air. Did God break His promises? Not at all! History shows that the throne was transplanted to the house of Israel, where the northern Ten Tribes had migrated (Ezek.17:22-23). This fact is documented in the book *Judah's Sceptre and Joseph's Birthright* by J. H. Allen (Destiny Publishers, 1902). We discuss the transference of this royal line later in this book.

According to those who have studied this issue, the royal throne of Great Britain is traced back to the throne of David, and its occupants have been descended from king David himself! This is very interesting from the point of view of the question – who is Ephraim and who is Manasseh?

One might think that God would place David's throne in the leading nation of end-time "Israel," Ephraim – but is this really so? This is what most people believe or assume, as they believe Great Britain is Ephraim and that is where the throne is located.

However, let's not take this assumption at face value.

The location of David's throne today is in Great Britain, and continues today as the throne of the United Kingdom and currently is sat upon by Queen Elizabeth. There is much documentation for the connection between the British throne and David – ancient English, Irish, Scottish and Welsh history, and genealogies, combine to prove this truth.

But strangely, the fact is that this truth itself is startling proof that England or Britain IS NOT and CANNOT be “Ephraim”! Why?

The northern Kingdom of Israel revolted against David's throne in the days of king Rehoboam in 975 B.C. They were led by Jeroboam, *an Ephraimite!* It was the tribe of *Ephraim* which LED THE REVOLT AGAINST THE THRONE OF DAVID! The primary issue was, interestingly, the issue of TAXATION! Onerous taxes spawned the rebellion (I Kings 12)!

Thousands of years later, it was the American colonists who led the REVOLT against the British throne – the “throne of David” – once again! In 1760 Britain began passing harsh laws restricting the freedom of colonists and taxing them. In 1763 Parliament voted to move a standing “occupation” army to the colonies, to quell any discontent. The colonists bitterly opposed the new British policies, claiming Britain had no right to restrict them, or deny their freedom in any way. Since the colonies were not represented in Parliament, they claimed Parliament had no right to tax them. Widespread boycotts were organized against British goods.

In 1767 the British Parliament passed the notorious Townsend Acts which taxed lead, paint, paper, and tea imported into the thirteen colonies. Colonial hostility increased to the point that Parliament sent troops into Boston and New York City. The sight of British troops only provoked and aroused greater colonial anger.

In 1770 British troops fired upon Americans, killing three, in an incident which became known as the “Boston Massacre,” and infuriated Americans and alarmed the British. In 1773 colonials, dressed as Indians, boarded British ships in Boston harbor and dumped all the cargo of tea overboard. This became known as the “Boston Tea Party.” To punish the colonists, the “Intolerable Acts” were enacted by Parliament in 1774. The first Continental Congress met in 1774, to consider action against the British, and in 1775 the Revolutionary War began, ending in 1783 with the “Treaty of Paris,” giving the thirteen colonies their freedom, and control of all the territory of the colonies. Thus modern “Ephraim” shook off the control of his older brother Manasseh, as well as the hated “crown” to which they had never been reconciled.

### ***Ephraim's Anti-Royalist Sentiment***

In 975 B.C. and also in 1775 A.D. it was the Ephraimites who revolted against the throne of David – both times the controversy was over the same issues – taxation and repressive government! Today, we have no monarchy in the United States, having formed a distrust of monarchical government due to bitter experience.

How interesting that both in 975 B.C. and 1775 A.D., an unwise and unjust king was in power who attempted to rule by coercion, force, and brutal display of power – an arrogant king who would not listen to wise counsel of seasoned men. Both ancient Ephraim, and the House of Israel, and modern Ephraim – the United States – were BORN IN REBELLION – and not only that, but rebellion against *the very same throne!*

The British and Canadian peoples have remained loyal to the throne of David. But just like their ancestors, the Ephraimites of the United States rebelled against that throne 200 years ago and have remained without a throne ever since. Says I Kings 12:19, “Thus Israel *revolted* against the House of David, *as is still the case.*”

In the days of Isaiah the prophet, Pekah, king of Israel, allied with Rezin, king of Syria, to attack Jerusalem and the throne of David. Ephraim allied itself with the Syrians against the Jews and David’s throne (Isaiah 7:1-3)!

When David first became king of Judah, the Ephraimites did not immediately submit to the authority of even David himself (II Samuel 2:8-9).

These historical facts show us that David’s throne would not likely be located in Ephraim, a very anti-royalist people – and in particular, who held an ancient antipathy to the throne of David in particular.

God promised David’s throne would always exist, like the sun and moon (Psalm 89:20, 24-37). British royalty traces its royal line back to king David himself. Thus David’s throne is located there, where British kings are crowned. Britain has a queen – Queen Elizabeth. But *Ephraim* would *never* tolerate a Davidic king on its throne – *not since the time of Jeroboam’s original revolt against Rehoboam, son of Solomon.*

According to Hosea, Israel (led by Ephraim) says to God, “We have no king because we did not revere the Lord. But even if we had a king, what could he do for us?” (Hos.10:3). It is easy to imagine the United States saying this, but modern Britain still has the throne in England and loves pageantry, royalty, and Queen Elizabeth. Therefore, Britain simply does not fit the description that Hosea the prophet provides of the people of Ephraim.

Furthermore, it is not likely that Britain will ever say “we have no king,” because prophesy indicates that the throne of David will always exist, and will not be overturned again until the Messiah Himself returns to sit upon it! (Luke 1:32).

Hosea goes further, saying of Israel-Ephraim: “They set up kings [rulers or governors – not necessarily literal kings] *without my consent*; they choose princes *without my approval*” (Hosea 8:4). This verse describes, in essence, the electoral process in the United States. We choose leaders, God says, without consulting Him and without His consent or blessing or approval. In our country, men “buy” elections, and the man with the most money (in the form of campaign contributions) usually wins. Our nation’s leaders are chosen by popularity contests, and television “spots” or commercials, and by

sloganeering and visual ads and imagery – not by force of character or qualifications. Thus God does not approve of our system at all.

The “king of Ephraim” in ancient times was always independent of and often allied against the Davidic monarchy. The king of Ephraim was never the king sitting on David’s throne, after the time of Solomon. Why then should we suppose that Ephraim has changed, and that the Ephraimites would allow the throne of David, which they always scorned, to rule over them now?

God has set David’s throne in Manasseh – but not in Ephraim, which was always hostile toward the throne. Manasseh, however, did not have the same animosity toward the throne of David that Ephraim did. In fact, some of the men of Manasseh deserted to David when he came with the Philistines to fight Saul (I Chron.12:19-22). *This fact is another strong indicator of where modern day Ephraim is, and where it is NOT located!*

### **“God Is Not Fair”**

In the twentieth century, Ephraim finally came to its full power, and suddenly found itself in the position of WORLD SUPERPOWER! Never in history has there been a nation like the United States of America! God has granted our nation pre-eminence among the world’s nations. He has allowed us to be the head, and not the tail. He has blessed us with all the blessings promised to the birthright tribe of Joseph! One can hardly visit our National Parks, and travel across our broad and bustling land, and climb the Rockies and Sierras, without observing, with awe, and a sense of mystery and wonder at the immensity and beauty and glory of our divine inheritance. Truly, the blessings of God Almighty have been poured out on this fair and beautiful land! Even the writings of John Muir, the poet and prophet of the wilderness, can scarcely do justice to it all!

Former Prime Minister Kakuei Tanaka of Japan was once interviewed by *U.S. News and World Report* magazine. He made several comments about the Americans, and revealed how many foreigners look at us. In the interview he said:

“I often wonder why you [Americans ] worry so much about domestic problems when you have such an abundance of resources. For example, look at American agricultural productivity. It’s easy for the U.S. to expand its output whenever it chooses. We can’t do that in Japan. When I compare the situation here in Japan with the situation in your country, I think that as a nation you are too privileged.”

When asked if he really meant we were too privileged, he replied:

“Yes, I think *God has not been very fair* in the distribution of resources.”

Why has Almighty God blessed our country with such superlative natural resources? Why, indeed! Gentile nations look with envy at our abundance, and prosperity. With eyes of jealousy they peer at our enormous national wealth and

potential. They covet what we so easily and so often take for granted!

Truly, the United States is Ephraim, and has inherited the “birthright promises” which God made to ancient Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph!

But just because we are blessed more than any other people on earth with physical and material blessings, doesn't make us any better. In fact if we don't improve our conduct, God says He will strip us of our blessings and give us national curses instead.

God warns us over and over in Scripture that blessings have a price – they must be merited by obedience to His commandments. But if any nation forsakes His covenant, despises His law, and thumbs their collective noses at Him, they will be in for a serious day of reckoning, rebuke, and recompense.

## Chapter Four

# American Empire and the “Gates of Our Enemies”

In the book of Genesis, God promised Abraham: “By Myself I have sworn, says the LORD, because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son – blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply your descendants as the stars of the heaven and as the sand which is on the seashore; and your descendants shall *possess the gate of their enemies*” (Gen.22:16-17, NKJV).

Rebekah, the wife of Abraham’s son Isaac, was also given a similar blessing. Her brothers blessed her, saying, “Our sister, may you become the mother of thousands of ten thousands; and may your descendants *possess the gates of those who hate them*” (Gen.24:60). Thousands of ten thousands means tens of millions of descendants! And possessing the “gates of their enemies,” this implies they would be very strong and capable, and widespread, with awesome military power, controlling the entrance and access points to these nations.

It should be instantly obvious that this prophecy has not been fulfilled in the Jewish people. As a nation, they do not possess the “gates of their enemies.” They are surrounded by hostile enemies who threaten their very existence!

But there were *eleven other* sons of Jacob, grandson of Abraham, and one of them was Joseph, whose two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, were adopted by Jacob as his own sons (Gen.48:5-6). They became two of the tribes of Israel, and to them especially were given prophecies of becoming numerous, great, and powerful in the earth – they were to “grow into a *multitude* in the midst of the earth” (Gen.48:14-16).

### *The Sons of Joseph*

Who has fulfilled this prophecy? And who has become a “multitude” in the midst of the earth?

Ephraim, the younger brother, was to become a “multitude of peoples” – that is, a great “massing,” as in a troop of animals or a flight of locusts, a numerous people. The word is often used of “Gentiles,” and translated that way. How would descendants of Israel become described as a massing troop or peoples called “Gentiles”? Would it not

be because they would reject God's Torah and His government, and be sent into exile among the nations, and would become known as "Gentiles" due to their departure from the laws of God?

And so it is – most people today think of the peoples of the United States, Great Britain, and others, as "Gentiles" – but nothing could be further from the truth! They are the LONG-LOST BROTHERS OF THE JEWISH PEOPLE, sent into exile in 718-721 B.C., and who migrated westward, and who *never returned!*

As Jacob foretold, they are the most powerful nations in the earth, militarily! (Gen.48:19). The sons of Joseph were prophesied to be very fruitful – like a fruitful vine planted by water (Gen.49:22). They were to abide "in strength," militarily (verse 24). They were prophesied to "push the peoples to the ends of the earth; they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh" (Deut.33:17).

God also declares of Ephraim, "I will strengthen the house of Judah, and I will save the house of Joseph. I will bring them back" (Zech.10:6). He declares, "Those of *Ephraim* shall be *like a mighty man*" (Zech.10:7). Would Ephraim become a mighty world super-power in the "last days" – become a mighty world "Empire"?

### ***Ancient Empires***

Ancient Babylon on the Euphrates ruled the world with an iron thumb. Babylon was the world master in economic and military power, a cosmopolitan center of banking and trade. It sent armies plundering, pillaging, and uniting the world in one vast sprawling empire, sustained and governed by its military might. It ruled the world from 607 to 539 B.C., when Babylon was suddenly attacked, and the city was seized by Cyrus the Great and the Persians.

The new world empire was known as the Persian Empire, lasting from 539 to 331 B.C., when it fell to the onslaught of the Greek troops under Alexander the Great. The Greco-Macedonian Empire ruled the known world next, until the death of Alexander, when the kingdom was divided into four parts. The Roman Empire arose in the west, with the victories of Julius Caesar in Gaul and Pompey in Asia. It became an empire under Julius Caesar, and finally fell in 476 A.D.

Ancient Rome, was world famous for its administrative laws, government, trade, military might, and civil engineering – aqueducts and roads and buildings. It was, however, a brutal government, and finally fell amidst corruption, heavy taxes, bread and circuses, alliances with other powers, and social upheaval. It was at its height for about 200 years, before decline set in. During its hey-day, the world enjoyed "Pax Romana," the "Roman peace," and no nations were strong enough during that time to contest Roman rule in the empire.

Is there another "Roman" or "Babylonian" Empire in our day? Has the United States of America become a world colossus – a global "Empire"?

### *Growth of American Power*

Just a little over 200 years ago, America was mostly an unexplored country, with only 13 small states along the Atlantic seaboard. Within a seventy-five year period, the nation spanned the entire continent, from Maine to the Oregon Territory and California!

The world has never seen such a staggering success story. Only some 200 years ago America consisted of thirteen small colonies, dwarfed by the British Empire. But after it threw off the British yoke, in the Revolutionary War, in 1776-1783, the young country began to grow and expand more rapidly than any nation heretofore.



The maps above show the territory the United States gained after the end of the Revolutionary War in 1783, and the vast territory added from 1845 to 1848, after the close of the Mexican-American war. But sandwiched inbetween was the amazing Louisiana Purchase of 1803 which was obtained during the presidency of Thomas Jefferson.

With the Louisiana Purchase in 1803, from France, the country got a “jump-start” in growth potential. “Go west, young man,” was the hue and cry that reverberated in the newspapers and town councils in the eastern establishment.

In 1803 France sold the Louisiana Territory to the United States for 3 cents an acre – the most incredible land purchase in all history, thereby making the future of the nation as a great power in the world assured. In this transaction, the United States bought an incredible 827,987 square miles of land from Napoleon Bonaparte’s France for the paltry sum of \$15 million dollars. Eventually all or parts of 15 states were formed out of the region.

And so at that time began the “blessings” of modern Ephraim, and no nation has ever grown so great – numerically, industrially, and militarily – in so short a length of time.



America began flexing its muscles in the Spanish-American War of 1898 when the fledgling nation conquered the military forces of Spain, ousting the Spanish from Cuba, Puerto Rico, and the Philippine Islands. Upon returning from his victory at Manila, the Philippines, Admiral Dewey was hailed as a conquering hero. He became the only “Admiral of the Navy” in U.S. history.

The burgeoning strength of American power came to the rescue of the western democracies during World War I and World War II.

A continent removed from the fighting, American industrial might soared unimpeded, and she soon became the “arsenal of democracy.” America’s military supply-lines to the Soviet Union during World War II prevented that country from succumbing to the onslaught of Hitler’s divisions.

### **American Power Exerted Around World**

Indeed, America has inherited the birthright promises given to Joseph’s younger son, Ephraim. Jacob prophesied of the descendants of Joseph, and primarily of Ephraim: “With bitterness archers attacked him; they shot at him with hostility. But his bow remained steady, his strong arms stayed limber, because of the hand of the Mighty One of Jacob, because of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel, because of your father’s God, who helps you, because of the Almighty, who blesses you with blessings of the heavens above, blessings of the deep that lies below, blessings of the breast and womb. Your father’s blessings are greater than the blessings of the ancient mountains, than the bounty of the age-old hills. Let all these REST ON THE HEAD OF JOSEPH, on the brow of the prince among his brothers” (Genesis 49:22-26).

Of the tribe of Joseph, Moses wrote 1442 B.C., “In majesty he is like a firstborn bull; his horns are the horns of a wild ox. With them he will gore the nations, even those at the ends of the earth. Such are the ten thousands of Ephraim; such are the thousands of Manasseh” (Deut. 33:17).

### *American Imperators*

At the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, we find an American “Colossus” struggling with the burden of empire. It seems a paradox. At the end of World War II, German economist Moritz Julius Bonn declared, “The United States has been the cradle of modern Anti-Imperialism, and at the same time the founding of a mighty empire.”

Unmatched by peer competitors since the end of that war, the United States almost by default became the guarantor of global stability.

Nial Ferguson, in *Colossus: The Price of America’s Empire*, points out, “The decline of the Pax Britannica in the mid-20<sup>th</sup> century brought a power vacuum that the United States filled as instability threatened American interests, but the Cold War masked the nature of this gradual transition to a Pax Americana” (William Anthony Hay, “American ‘Colossus’: Shouldering the burden of an empire,” *Washington Times*, May 3-9, 2004, National Weekly Edition, p.26).

Ferguson sees the United States as Britain’s natural heir in imposing benevolent imperial rule. However, he asks if an empire can operate effectively while denying the scope of its responsibilities, while being “an empire in denial.”

The word “Empire,” he contributes, has been used carelessly to describe the post-World War II system. He uses the term as a synonym for “hegemony, primacy, or global leadership” (*ibid.*). Americans have looked upon their country as an “empire” since the beginning. Thomas Jefferson referred to it as “an empire of liberty,” involving continental expansion and conquest of the frontier.

After World War II, the Cold War forced America into the role of transforming Germany and Japan into democracies. British weakness and the European devastation “created a vacuum that Washington felt compelled to fill for fear of the repercussions.” Says Hay, “America did not so much claim an imperial role after World War II as find itself saddled with one by the consequences of other decisions.” Its empire was not one of deliberate creation but “an empire by invitation,” according to Geir Lundestad.

### *The Reluctant Empire*

Although most Americans today may be reluctant to see themselves as modern day imperators, the rest of the world isn’t so queasy about such comparisons. They fear and tremble before the onslaught of American power – commercial, economic, military and industrial.

All these factors combine to demonstrate the superiority of America's claim to be the descendant of ancient Ephraim, the "birth-right" tribe of the sons of Joseph, the holder of the birthright and therefore the greater inheritance!

In fact, the world today looks upon the United States as a behemoth – a gargantuan Empire!

And most of the world is not very happy about it. Increasingly, the world fears and hates America's imperialistic role in world affairs. Particularly, the nations of China, Russia, Germany, and even France despise the American swagger and power. But also increasingly the Muslim nations are escalating in hatred toward the American "monster" and look upon America as the "Great Satan"!

Much has changed since the Americans played an important role in saving the world for freedom and liberty during World War II!



In 1945, the United States was indeed looked upon as the great Liberator. Symbolical of the U.S. might is the amazing photograph of the United States Marines raising the American flag atop Mount Suribachi on Iwo Jima in World War II – the most celebrated and exciting military photograph taken in American history. Truly, American

power was being exerted thousands of miles away from American shores – in fulfillment of Biblical prophecy – and for a righteous cause.

This picture taken during the Iwo Jima campaign by photographer Joe Rosenthal won a Pulitzer prize in 1945. It demonstrates the extension of American military power during World War II, fulfilling Moses' prophecy. How greatly the world's perceptions have changed since that glorious day almost sixty years ago!

### *The United States – Modern Rome?*

Writes Jonathan Freedland of *The Guardian*, “The word of the hour is empire. As the United States marches to war, no other label quite seems to capture the scope of American power or the scale of its ambition. ‘Sole superpower’ is accurate enough, but seems oddly modest. ‘Hyperpower’ may appeal to the French; ‘hegemon’ is favoured by academics. But empire is the big one, the gorilla of geopolitical designations – and suddenly the US is bearing its name.

“Of course, enemies of the US have shaken their fist at its ‘imperialism’ for decades: they are doing it again now, as Washington wages a global ‘war against terror’ and braces itself for a campaign aimed at ‘regime change’ in a foreign, sovereign state [this was written shortly before the war in Iraq]. What is more surprising, and much newer, is that the notion of an American empire has suddenly become a live debate inside the US. And not just among Europhile liberals either, but across the range – from left to right.

“Today a liberal dissenter such as Gore Vidal, who called his most recent collection of essays on the US *The Last Empire*, finds an ally in the likes of conservative columnist Charles Krauthammer. Earlier this year Krauthammer told *The New York Times*: ‘People are coming out of the closet on the word “empire”.’

“He argued that Americans should admit the truth and face up to their responsibilities as the undisputed masters of the world. And it wasn't any old empire he had in mind. ‘The fact is, no country has been as dominant culturally, economically, technologically and militarily in the history of the world since the Roman empire.’”

In the eyes of much of the world, 21<sup>st</sup> century America is behaving much like the ancient Roman empire. Especially since the tragic events of 9-11.

The *New York Review of Books* illustrated a recent article on American military might with a drawing of George W. Bush dressed up as a Roman centurion, complete with shield and spear. Tom Wolfe has written that the US of today is “now the mightiest power on Earth,” and is as omnipotent as ancient “Rome under Julius Caesar.”

There is no doubt that America is the greatest and strongest nation on the face of the earth, today. The Soviet Union has collapsed. America is the world's solitary remaining super-power, and this causes immense jealousy and distrust among our supposed present allies, especially some in Europe – in particular, France and Germany.

Is America striding across the globe like the ancient Roman Empire? Says Freedland:

“More to the point, the US has military bases, or base rights, in *some 40 countries across the world* – giving it the same global muscle it would enjoy if it ruled those countries directly. According to Chalmers Johnson, author of *Blowback: The Costs and Consequences of American Empire*, these US military bases, numbering into the *hundreds around the world*, are today’s version of the imperial colonies of old. Washington may refer to them as ‘forward deployment’, says Johnson, but colonies are what they are. On this definition, *there is almost no place outside the US’s reach*. *Pentagon figures show that there is a US military presence in 132 of the 190 member states of the United Nations.*”

### ***The U.S. Global Empire***

Laurence M. Vance, in an article on the internet on “The U.S. Global Empire,” writes, “There is a new empire in town, and its global presence is increasing every day.”

He asserts that the American “empire” is by far the greatest ever – much greater than that of ancient Rome, the Mongolian Empire, the Byzantine Empire, the Ottoman Empire, or even the British Empire.

Says Vance, “The kingdom of Alexander the Great reached all the way to the borders of India. The Roman Empire controlled the Celtic regions of Northern Europe and all of the Hellenized states that bordered the Mediterranean. The Mongol Empire, which was the largest contiguous empire in history, stretched from Southeast Asia to Europe. The Byzantine Empire spanned the years 395 to 1453. In the sixteenth century, the Ottoman Empire stretched from the Persian Gulf in the east to Hungary in the northwest; and from Egypt in the south to the Caucasus in the north. At the height of its dominion, the British Empire included almost a quarter of the world’s population.

“*Nothing, however, compares to the U.S. global empire*. What makes U.S. hegemony unique is that it consists, not of control over great land masses or population centers, but of a global presence unlike that of any other country in history.”

How vast is the United States “presence” around the globe? Says Vance:

“The extent of the U.S. global empire is almost incalculable. The latest ‘Base Structure Report’ of the Department of Defense states that the Department’s physical assets consist of ‘more than 600,000 individual buildings and structures, at more than 6,000 locations, on more than 30 million acres.’ The exact number of locations is then given as 6,702 – divided into large installations (115), medium installations (115), and small installations/locations (6,472). This classification can be deceiving, however, because installations are only classified as small if they have a Plant Replacement Value (PRV) of less than \$800 million.

“Although most of these locations are in the continental United States, 96 of them are in U.S. territories around the globe, and 702 of them are in foreign countries. But as

Chalmers Johnson has documented, the figure of 702 foreign military installations is too low, for it does not include installations in Afghanistan, Iraq, Israel, Kosovo, Kuwait, Kyrgyzstan, Qatar, and Uzbekistan. Johnson estimates that an honest count would be closer to 1,000.

“The number of countries that the United States has a presence in is staggering. According the U.S. Department of State’s list of ‘Independent States in the World,’ there are 192 countries in the world, all of which, except Bhutan, Cuba, Iran, and North Korea, have diplomatic relations with the United States. All of these countries except one (Vatican City) are members of the United Nations. According to the Department of Defense publication, ‘Active Duty Military Personnel Strengths by Regional Area and by Country,’ *the United States has troops in 135 countries.*”

The list of nations is very impressive. These statistics may seem dry and rather mundane, but they are highly significant. The point we need to register in our minds is that *it is the United States in this end time who is doing this – not Great Britain, Canada, Germany, Russia, China, Japan, or any other nation on the earth!*

Clearly, in our debate about who is Ephraim, and who is Manasseh, these salient, cogent facts argue strongly for the United States being the modern descendants, in large part, of ancient EPHRAIM, the birth-right people descended from Joseph, the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, who was the son of Abraham, to whom the original promises were given! God has *kept His Word astoundingly!* The tragic fact is that the vast majority of us don’t realize these things and have *lost our own identity* as a race, a people, and a nation.

Vance goes on to say: “This means that the United States has troops in 70 percent of the world’s countries. The average American could probably not locate half of these 135 countries on a map.

“To this list could be added regions like the Indian Ocean territory of Diego Garcia, Gibraltar, and the Atlantic Ocean island of St. Helena, all still controlled by Great Britain, but not considered sovereign countries. Greenland is also home to U.S. troops, but is technically part of Denmark . . .

“Regular troop strength ranges from a low of 1 in Malawi to a high of 74,796 in Germany. At the time the most recent ‘Personnel Strengths’ was released by the government (September 30, 2003), there were 183,002 troops deployed to Iraq, an unspecified number of which came from U.S. forces in Germany and Italy. The total number of troops deployed abroad as of that date was 252,764, not including U.S. troops in Iraq from the United States. Total military personnel on September 30, 2003, was 1,434,377. This means that 17.6 percent of U.S. military forces were deployed on foreign soil, and certainly over 25 percent if U.S. troops in Iraq from the United States were included. . .

“*The U. S. global empire – an empire that Alexander the Great, Caesar Augustus, Genghis Khan, Suleiman the Magnificent, Justinian, and King George V would be proud of.*” (“The U.S. Global Empire, by Laurence M. Vance, [vancepub@juno.com](mailto:vancepub@juno.com)).

### ***Prophesied Long Ago***

Moses foretold the greatness of the United States when he prophesied the futures of the children of Israel. Of the children of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh, Moses wrote:

“May the LORD bless his land with the precious dew from heaven above and with the deep waters that lie below; with the best the sun brings forth and the finest the moon can yield; with the choicest gifts of the ancient mountains and the fruitfulness of the everlasting hills; with the best gifts of the earth and its fullness and the favor of him who dwelt in the burning bush. *Let all these rest on the head of Joseph, on the brow of the prince among his brothers.*”

“In majesty he is like a *FIRSTBORN BULL*; his horns are the *horns of a WILD OX*. With them he will *GORE THE NATIONS*, even those at the *ENDS OF THE EARTH*. Such are the *TEN THOUSANDS OF EPHRAIM*; *such are the thousands of Manasseh*” (Deuteronomy 33:13-17).

Notice that militarily, Ephraim and Manasseh are united; but in power and strength, Ephraim’s military is much greater than Manasseh’s – a ratio of *ten to one superiority!*

This fact illustrates why it is the United States that is being compared to the ancient Roman Empire by the world’s analysts and pundits – not Britain, Canada, or Australia!

### ***“The Gates of His Enemies”***

God declared that in the “last days” the children of Israel would possess “the gate of his enemies” (Gen.22:17). What are these “gates”? The Hebrew word translated “gates” in these passages is *sha’ar*, #8179 in Strong’s Concordance, and means “an opening; i.e. *door* or *gate – city, door, gate, port.*” It is used for the “gate of a city,” (as in Genesis 23:10, etc.). It is a point of entrance.

The expression “gate of his enemies” means strategic passes, sea lanes, islands and lands throughout the world, often at the doorstep of nations which are potential and real adversaries. These include world “choke points” for commerce and trade.

In 1890 strategic “gates” possessed by Great Britain included Malta, Gibraltar, Aden, Heligoland (off the German coast), the Cape of Good Hope (South Africa), Hong Kong, Falkland Islands, Malaya, Singapore, the Suez Canal, and the nations of India, Australia, New Zealand, and Canada.

But in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the policy of establishing such “gates” became that of the United States. Major “sea gates” controlled by the United States included the Panama Canal and the Philippine Islands and numerous island bases throughout the world.

Between Britain and the United States, virtually every single major strategic international gateway of importance was at some time or other under their control.

Today, the United States alone has numerous strategically located overseas bases all over the world that it can employ to counteract the aims and purposes of potential enemy states!

An article by Zoltan Grossman, “New US Military Bases: Side Effects or Causes of War?” in the February 2<sup>nd</sup>, 2002, issue of *Counter Punch* describes American policy since the end of the Cold War.

“Since the end of the Cold War a decade ago, the U.S. has gone to war in Iraq, Somalia, Yugoslavia, and Afghanistan. . . Since 1990, each large-scale U.S. intervention has left behind a string of new U.S. military bases in a region where the U.S. had never before had a foothold. The U.S. military is inserting itself into strategic areas of the world, and anchoring U.S. geopolitical influence in these areas, at a very critical time in history.

“As each intervention was being planned, planners focused on building new U.S. military installations, or securing basing rights at foreign facilities, in order to support the coming war. But after the war ended, the U.S. forces did not withdraw, but stayed behind. . . The new U.S. military bases were not merely built to aid the interventions, but the interventions also conveniently afforded an opportunity to station the bases.

“Indeed, the establishment of new bases may in the long run be more critical to U.S. war planners than the wars themselves, as well as to enemies of the U.S. . . . This is not to say that all U.S. wars of the past decade have been the result of some coordinated conspiracy to make Americans the overlords of the belt between Bosnia and Pakistan. But it is to recast the interventions as opportunistic responses to events, which have enabled Washington to gain a foothold in the ‘middle ground’ between Europe to the west, Russia to the north, and China to the east, and turn this region increasingly into an American ‘sphere of influence.’ The series of interventions have also virtually secured U.S. corporate control over the oil supplies for both Europe and East Asia. It’s not a conspiracy; it’s just business as usual.”

What an amazing fulfillment of Biblical prophecy! The enemies of America must feel “choked” and “surrounded” and outmaneuvered around the world.

### ***Sea and Land “Gates” in 2002 AD***

How extensive are American foreign bases today?

According to official reports for the year 2002, the United States has major bases in Germany designed to support forces throughout Europe, Africa, and the Mediterranean. It also has bases in Hungary, Bosnia, Panama, in Saudi Arabia, in Northern Iraq, in Central Asia, in Guam in the Western Pacific. It has other bases in Iceland, Italy, Spain, Libya, Cuba, Turkey, Japan, Okinawa, Korea, and elsewhere.

In addition to these land bases, the United States has powerful naval fleets and aircraft carriers which patrol the world’s oceans, constituting “roving gates” which are

ever-ready to strike anywhere necessary. The American Pacific Fleet includes approximately 200 ships, 2,000 aircraft, and 250,000 Sailors and Marines and covers more than 50% of the earth's surface – just over 100 million square miles. These fleets patrol every day in the Pacific, Indian, and Arctic Oceans, from the west coast of the U.S. to the Arabian Gulf.

Leonid Shebarshin in a Russian intelligence-linked weekly named *Zavtra*, observes that the U.S. made a demonstration of its power in Afghanistan, overwhelmed the Taliban, and put in its chosen Prime Minister, gave him 72 bodyguards, and established an island of stability. People are now talking about a U.S. presence in Afghanistan of 5-10 years, and maybe longer. Another important result that he mentions is that “the Americans used Afghanistan to take over the positions of the former Soviet Union in Central Asia. They got very good bases in Kyrgyzstan, bases in Tadjikistan, agreements with Uzbekistan, pressure on Kazakhstan.”

These kinds of “gates” and “points of control” were promised thousands of years ago to the descendants of Jacob. Since the children of Ephraim were to inherit the “birthright promises,” and be given military power throughout the world, it stands to reason that most of these “gates” would be under the control and influence of Ephraim! Since the United States possesses these “choke points” in this “end time” generation, this is more evidence that it is the United States which best represents “Ephraim” in the world today.

### *Space “Gates”*

Another major arena of “gates” controlled by the descendants of the Biblical Joseph – Ephraim and Manasseh – are those in outer space – earth-orbiting satellites. The satellites placed in orbit by the American space program headed by NASA circle the globe and take incredibly revealing photographs of whatever territory or terrain is desired. The United States is in the forefront of space research, satellite launching, and military technology used in “spy satellites” to monitor events on the ground in potential enemy countries around the world.

This is another example of controlling the “gates of her enemies” and those who “hate” us! This practice of obtaining powerful “gates” has always been a fundamental pillar of American and British foreign and military policy.

This kind of power was promised by God to the descendants of Joseph, in particular. And since Ephraim is God's “firstborn,” these promises would primarily apply to the people of Ephraim! Since it is the United States which possesses most of these far-flung “gates,” it follows that it is the United States who is Ephraim in Bible prophecy!

## Chapter Five

# The Proof of Heraldic Emblems

In the forty-ninth chapter of Genesis, Jacob gathered together his sons, and told them “what shall befall you in the *last days*” (Gen.49:1). Let us notice specifically what he said of Joseph (whose inheritance passed through Ephraim and Manasseh).

Declared Jacob, “Joseph is a *fruitful bough, a fruitful bough by a well; his branches run over the wall*” (Gen.49:22). Fruitful means plenteous in numbers, bearing much fruit. Dwelling by a “well” means his land would have plenty of water, which is nourishing to productivity and wealth. Jacob continues: “The archers have bitterly grieved him [other nations attack him], shot at him and hated him [who is the greatest but most hated nation on earth, today?]. But his *bow remained in strength*, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the Mighty God of Jacob (from there is the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel), by the God of your father who will help you . . .” (Gen.49:22-26).

Notice now – Joseph’s KEY attributes are listed here – and these KEY attributes would, of course, be MOST dominant in the tribe of Ephraim, which was prophesied to be greatest. They are 1) a vine of fruitfulness, having many branches; and 2) having a strong bow, that is, being a powerful archer, and subduing his enemies.

*These characteristics, mentioned by their forefather Jacob, should be the identifying attributes of Joseph; and since Ephraim is the leading tribe of Joseph, these “signs” or attributes should be identified with HIM more so than with his brother Manasseh!*

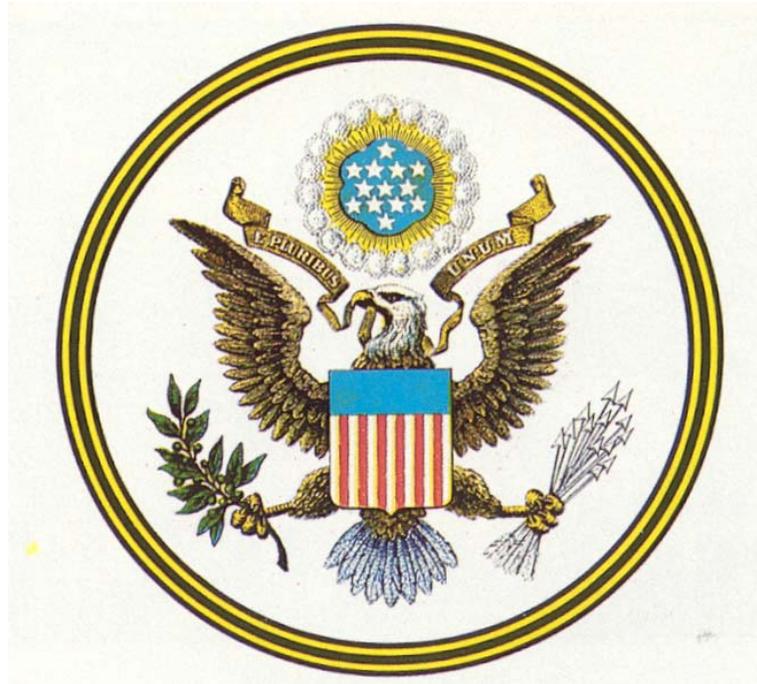
Now let’s look at the evidence!

Which great nation today, between the United States and Great Britain and Canada, has the sign of the fruitful vine or tree, with many branches running over the wall? And which has the sign of the bow and arrows of the powerful archer? Remember, *these are the first two SIGNS that Jacob said would identify Joseph IN THE LAST DAYS – OUR DAY, TODAY!*

### *Symbols of Our Celto-Saxon Heritage*

In the book *Symbols of Our Celto-Saxon Heritage*, by W. H. Bennett, the author discusses the science of hereditary symbolism, as it is expressed in heraldry. He devoted his study of heraldic emblems to the ancient tribes of Israel, each of which had a “standard” given to it, depicting its major attributes. He connects these ancient heraldic symbols of the tribes of Israel with their counterparts in the modern world, notably, in western Europe, Scandinavia, the British Isles, Ireland, and America and Canada.

Says the author, “That the animals, objects and personal characteristics mentioned in Genesis 49 and Deuteronomy 33 did become the emblems of the Israel people has been recognized by all Biblical authorities, both Christian and Jewish. As I write this I have before me a Jewish calendar of some ten years ago, in which the emblems of all the tribes are given almost exactly as mentioned in Genesis 49 and Deuteronomy 33” (p.22).



This is not the place to go into the emblems of all the tribes, but we will focus on the tribes of Joseph – Ephraim and Manasseh. Referring back to Genesis 49, W. H. Bennett says, “Joseph is here likened to a Bough or Branch which, in view of other statements in the Bible referring to Israel as an Olive Tree (Rom.11:24), has always been understood to be an Olive Branch. In the next verse enemy archers are said to shoot at Joseph, and, as archers shoot arrows, it follows that there is an implied relationship between him and some Arrows” (p.30).

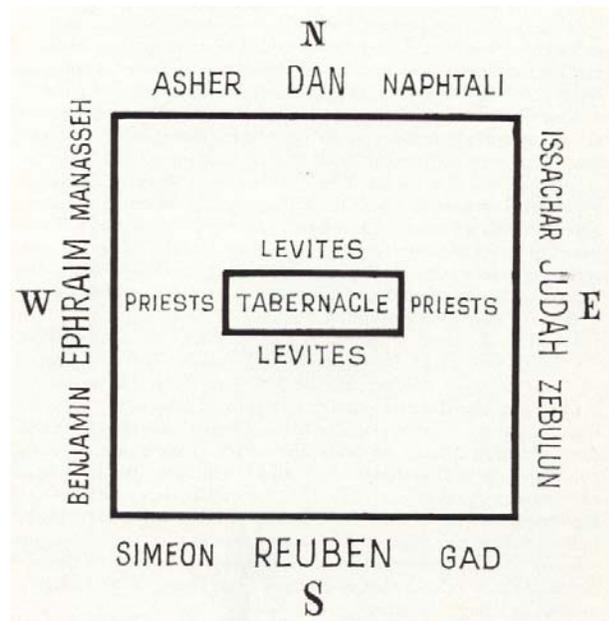
The emblem above is the United States Seal. Notice how it contains the “signs” of the tribe of Joseph! In the claws of the Eagle are the Arrows, depicting military might, and the olive branch, symbolizing fertility and productivity!

Let us stop right here, and analyze this! The key prophecy foretelling JOSEPH's attributes, especially those of the leading tribe of Ephraim, tells us He is like an OLIVE TREE, and is very FRUITFUL, and is militarily powerful, as is shown by His "BOW" and arrows, connected with him. *These characteristics should be seen in the heraldic emblems of EPHRAIM most of all, for they are the FIRST AND FOREMOST identifying signs of JOSEPH.*

This is a vital point. These major attributes should be identified with *Ephraim*, primarily, and with *Manasseh*, secondarily.

Now, in the history and science of heraldic emblems, what nation is associated in the world today with the "Olive Branch" and "Arrows"? Is it Great Britain? Or the United States of America?

It is of course vital to take note of the fact that it is AMERICA – NOT GREAT BRITAIN OR CANADA – which has the important heraldic emblems of the Olive Branch and the Arrows in its national insignia. These were the two MAJOR ATTRIBUTES that Jacob said would characterize JOSEPH – and he himself placed EPHRAIM before Manasseh!



### *Emblems of America*

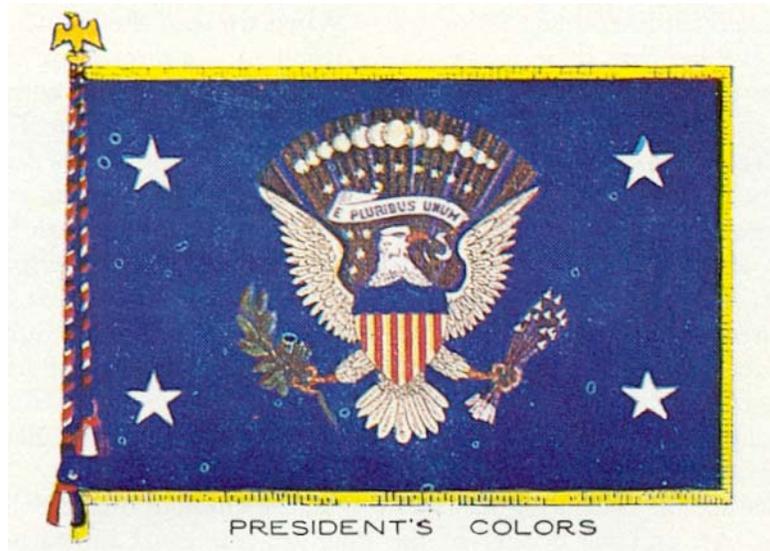
In the United States, of course, the Eagle is a predominant symbol. The Eagle is connected with the tribe of Dan. Dan's ancient flag or symbol was that of an Eagle. Many Danites, descended from Dan, came to the shores of America, and were among its earliest inhabitants, together with the Anglo-Saxons. Descendants of Dan are mainly found in Ireland and Denmark – "Dan's mark" – and in the United States.

Dan was one of the four most powerful tribes in ancient Israel (together with Joseph, Judah, and Reuben). The camp or brigade of Dan was to the north of the Sanctuary, Judah to the East, Reuben to the south, and Joseph to the West. This seems to have been a prophecy for the location of these tribes in the world today. Joseph is primarily in the West (Great Britain, North America); Judah is primarily in the Holy Land, the Middle East; Dan is in the North (Denmark, Northern Europe, and Ireland); and Reuben is modern France, in the Southern part of Europe.

Another fact which ties in with the ancient prophecies is the notable item that the President's Flag contains four Stars in each of the four corners. These are reminiscent of the fact that Israel anciently was divided into four camps surrounding the Sanctuary. Three tribes were on each side of the Sanctuary, with the dominant tribe representing the three, in the middle. (See the diagram on the previous page.)

Thus the President's Flag pictures four Stars – the stars of Judah, Reuben, Joseph and Dan (Dan being the fourth). This once again calls attention to the connection between the United States of America and the ancient Camps of Israel, as they traveled through the Sinai desert, arranged in four Camps. The Four Stars represent the Four Star-Camps of Israel!

As Israel traveled in the wilderness on its journey to the Promised Land, the tribes were organized in the format shown on the previous page. The leader on the north side of



the Tabernacle was the tribe of Dan; Judah was the leader in the east; Reuben was the leading tribe to the south of the Tabernacle; and Joseph (led by Ephraim) was the leading tribe in the west. Together with Joseph was Benjamin, the brother of Joseph. These four tribes were the dominant tribes in ancient Israel. Note that Joseph was to the west of the tabernacle, in the center, and Judah was to the east. Even so it is today in the world. Geographically, Joseph is largely in the western regions of the earth; Judah is in the process of being regathered to the Middle East. Joseph inherited the “birth-right” promises, and Judah inherited the “scepter” promise (see I Chron.5:2).

In the world today, Joseph – like in the camps of Israel in the wilderness – is once again located mainly in the WEST, Dan is located primarily in the NORTH of Europe, Judah is located mainly in the Middle EAST, and Reuben is primarily in France, in the SOUTH of modern Europe.

This very same feature is found in the Flag of the Secretary of State, the Secretary of War (now Defense), the Secretary of Commerce, the Attorney General, the Postmaster General, the Secretary of the Navy, the Secretary of Labor, the Chief of Staff, the Generals of the Army, and the Admirals of the Navy.

### ***The Olive Branch***

Concerning the national emblems of Joseph, we should expect to see an Olive Branch, and a bundle of Arrows (mentioned in Genesis 49). These should primarily be found in the emblems of the tribe of Ephraim, the birth-right tribe. So then, what do we find?

Take another look at the U.S. dollar bill. On one side is the official emblem of the United States – the U.S. Seal. It pictures an Eagle with an *Olive Branch* grasped in one claw, and a *Bundle of Arrows* clasped in the other claw!

The sign of the olive branch and arrows belongs to the United States of America – and should be identified with the leading tribe of Joseph – Ephraim!

### ***The Proof of Heraldic Emblems***

The study of the heraldic emblems of the tribes of Israel, and their reflection in the emblems of certain nations of the world today, demonstrate beyond serious question – to anyone who believes in the Word of God and its reliability and truth – that the sons of Joseph, true to the prophecies of their destinies, became great in the world, and have pushed the peoples to the “ends of the earth.” The United States is noted for its manifest attempts to bring about “world peace” – symbolized by the OLIVE BRANCH in its national emblems – and which represents the fruitful Olive branch portrayed in Jacob’s description of this mighty people. They have contributed mightily to world peace, even though at times woefully misguided. Their intent is well known.

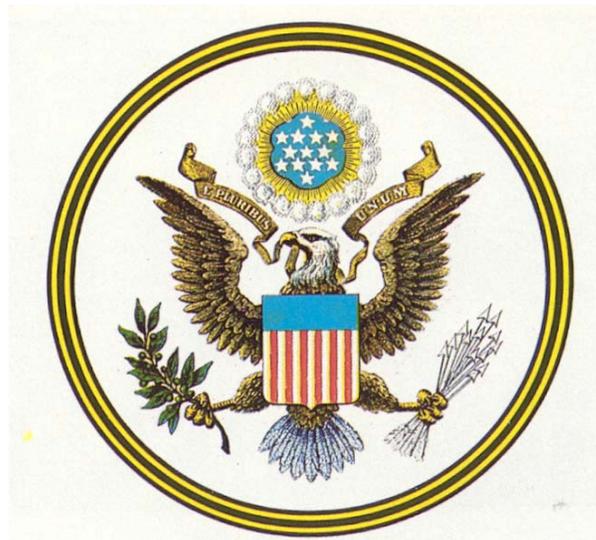
Likewise, the picture of an Eagle holding a bundle of Arrows, reminds us of the description of Jacob who prophesied that Joseph would be a mighty archer, and the Lord God would help defend him and fight for him. Even so, Ephraim has been the world’s number one AIR POWER! Arrows are of course ancient “missiles” that fly through the air, striking their enemies with incredible force. Modern arrows would be guided missiles, laser-guided bombs, dropped from airplanes or launched from ships at sea. The United States has more of these in its arsenal than any other nation. Again – this is more evidence that the United States is the predominant son of Joseph – that is, Ephraim!



Consider these things carefully. Take a careful look at this amazing Biblical evidence. Here is the most remarkable and exciting evidence that reveals the TRUE IDENTITY of both Ephraim and Manasseh, today!

The Olive Branch and Arrows of Joseph-Ephraim and the Eagle of the tribe of Dan and the shield of 13 stars and stripes comprise the emblem of the United States of America. Dan is a very prominent tribe in the make-up of Ephraim. In fact, many other tribes of Israel comprising the “Lost Ten Tribes” have settled in Ephraim. The Irish-Americans are descended from Dan. Truly the United States is a “melting pot” as it welcomes people from around the world to share its abundance.

*Great Seal of the United States*



## *Chapter Eight*

# The Number 13 and the Tribe of Ephraim

The Great Seal of the United States, depicted on the previous page, has many key elements showing its connection with the number “13.” Note in particular:

the Olive Branch with 13 leaves,  
the 13 arrows, 13 stripes on the flag/shield,  
the 13 letters in “E Pluribus Unum,”  
the 13 stars above the Eagle.

Ephraim was the youngest “son” of Jacob and therefore the thirteenth and final tribe. The number “13” is a good number according to the Jewish authorities – it denotes super-abundance, just as “Ephraim” means “doubly fruitful.”

“Thirteen” is also the number of “rebellion.” America, like ancient Ephraim of old, was founded by an act of rebellion. America rebelled against the British throne. Ancient Ephraim, the leader of the northern ten tribes of Israel, rebelled against Rehoboam, son of king Solomon.

Reading the ancient account, we see that the argument was over taxation. King Rehoboam wanted to exert his authority, and levied onerous taxes. This was too much for Jeroboam and Israel, and he cried, “What portion have we in David? Neither have we inheritance in the son of Jesse: to your tents, O Israel: now see to thine own house, David. So Israel departed unto their tents” (I Kings 12:16).

When the king sent a tax collector, “all Israel stoned him with stones, that he died” (v.18). “So Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day,” the chronicler states (v.19). That breach has *never been healed!*

In 1776, the American colonies had no more love of taxes and tribute than their forebears did 3,000 years ago! When Britain attempted to impose “taxation without representation” on the original 13 colonies, they revolted. When Britain attempted to impose a tax on tea, ardent colonial patriots disguised themselves as Indians and threw it overboard from British ships into the waters of the harbor of Boston.

What nation today has this same abhorrence of taxation, and kings, as ancient Ephraim? The United States of America!

About three thousand years ago, the tribe of Ephraim led the northern ten tribes of Israel to “rebel” against the throne of David, when they had the opportunity, and rejected the government of Rehoboam, grandson of David. In 1776, the American colonies, likewise, in similar fashion, followed in that ancient tradition and rebelled against Great Britain and their oppressive government under king George III. In both cases, a major cause of the rebellion was resistance to unfair taxation.

Interestingly, the number “13” itself is also associated with “rebellion.”

Does this number – so prominent in American history – help identify the United States as being descended from ancient Ephraim, the younger son of Joseph?

Let’s examine the evidence!

### ***13, 13, 13 Everywhere***

If you count the number of leaves in the Olive Branch grasped in the talons of the Eagle, on the United States Seal, you will see there are *13 leaves*; if you count the number of olives, you will also see there are *13 olives*; and if you count the number of arrows in the Eagle’s other claw, you will see there are *13 arrows*!

Also, in looking closely at the Seal, you will see that in the cloud above the Eagle’s head, there are *13 stars*; and in the inscription on the Seal, “E Pluribus Unum,” (which means “in many, one”) you will count *13 letters*. In the shield before the Eagle, you will also count *13 stripes*, red and white.

Notice also that above the head of the Eagle, there is a “cloud” with rays of sun. This cloud is reminiscent of the “pillar of cloud” that stayed over the Tabernacle, as the ancient Israelites journeyed through the wilderness for 40 years (Exo.13:21-22).

This cloud as an emblem today is an IMPORTANT MARK OF IDENTITY indicating that the nation which uses it is not only *one of the Israel family of nations*, but notice that this circular cloud encloses *13 stars*! Here is that number “13” again! Why is the number “13” so closely identified with the United States? Is it merely because our nation began with 13 colonies? Or is there a much deeper reason?

Strange as it may seem, the number “13” is also identified in Scripture with the ancient Israelite tribe of EPHRAIM! Why all this emphasis on the number “13”?

### ***Which Tribe Is “13<sup>th</sup>”?***

Much ado has been made of the question, which tribe in ancient Israel really was the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe. Bennett and British Israelites claim that “Manasseh” was the thirteenth

tribe, and so they attempt to identify the United States with the tribe of Manasseh. Bennett claims that since Joseph was the 11<sup>th</sup> tribe, followed by Benjamin, the 12<sup>th</sup> tribe, when Manasseh and Ephraim were born, Ephraim took the place of Joseph, becoming the 11<sup>th</sup>, and this left Manasseh with being the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe.

However, this is nothing but circular reasoning. Rabbis point out that when Jacob thought that Joseph was dead, Benjamin became the eleventh tribe. Then, later, when Jacob found that Joseph was still alive, and had two sons, he placed his name on them. Manasseh therefore became the twelfth tribe, and Ephraim, the youngest son, became the thirteenth. This seems very logical. Since there were 12 tribes, but Joseph's two sons took his place among the sons of Israel, this would move Benjamin up to the 11<sup>th</sup> tribe's spot, and then Manasseh would be moved up to the 12<sup>th</sup>, and thus Ephraim – the youngest of all the “sons of Israel” – would have logically and automatically become the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe!

*“13” represents “fullness.”* What must be seen is that indeed the number 13 – the number of the FULLNESS of Israel – is clearly associated with the United States. That is beyond question! The United States therefore represents the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe.

Looking at it from a logical point of view, the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe would naturally be the YOUNGEST – THE LATEST to appear on the world scene.

*In order of birth, Ephraim was the youngest son.*

And likewise, the United States was the YOUNGEST NATION, of the nations of Israel, having been “born” much later than Great Britain. English, Scottish, Welsh and Irish history traces far back into the mists of time, but the United States became a nation in 1783, at the Treaty of Paris, just a little over 200 years ago!

### ***Joseph's Dream***

In another passage we find another strong hint relating to the identity of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh. We read that Joseph had a dream and said, “The sun, the moon, and the eleven stars bowed down to me” (Gen.37:9). He told the dream to his father and brothers, and Jacob said to him, “What is this dream that you have dreamed? Shall your mother and I and your brothers indeed come to bow down to the earth before you?” (v.10). Joseph's brothers envied him, but Jacob kept these things in his mind (v.11).

Since Ephraim was the last and 13<sup>th</sup> son born, all these things in Joseph's dream should primarily be fulfilled in him! That is, HIS FLAG would contain ALL THIRTEEN STARS representing all thirteen tribes. And HIS EMBLEM should contain ALL thirteen stars, AND the rays of the Sun (Jacob) and the phases of the Moon (his mother), all bowing as it were before him.

And so it is! The United States President's SEAL contains above the Eagle the 13 stars complete, with the Sun's rays shining down, and the Moon in 13 phases. This

clearly pictures the fulfillment of the dream of Joseph, that his whole family would bow down to him.

Says W. H. Bennett, “Whether or not Joseph was aware of the symbolism of his dream is not stated, but it is evident that his father Jacob recognized himself as symbolized by the Sun, Joseph’s mother as symbolized by the Moon, and Joseph’s eleven brothers as symbolized by the eleven Stars. So in this prophetic dream, the Sun, the Moon and eleven Stars appear as the symbol of the whole Jacob-Israel family with the exception of Joseph himself.”

Bennett goes on: “But Joseph was also a son of Jacob and therefore a part of the Israel family. Consequently, if each of Jacob’s sons, and the tribe or tribes to be descended from him, are to be symbolized by a Star, then Joseph too will have to be counted (Note Rev.12:1). Yet from an heraldic standpoint this would not be a true symbol of Israel for Joseph’s descendants were divided into two tribes, bearing the names of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh and, according to the record in Genesis 48, these two sons of Joseph, as heads of tribes, were made EQUAL in status with their uncles. Consequently, to truly represent the Israel people, this symbol would have to contain the Sun, the Moon and *thirteen Stars*” (p.141-142).

What people would have an emblem that fulfills this symbolism, which SUMS UP the blessings of ALL THIRTEEN TRIBES? What tribe or nation would fill up the SUM of the blessings God gave all the tribes? What tribe would it be to which all the others will look, in terms of physical leadership, governance, prosperity, military strength, and blessings? Ephraim! And which nation today has all these elements in “The President’s Seal”? The United States of America!

Bennett continues: “The emphasis placed on the details of this dream is a clear indication that we are intended to notice its symbolism and, consequently, that a symbol or emblem consisting of the Sun, the Moon, and a Star for each of Israel’s Thirteen Tribes, *must be regarded as an emblem of Israel*. Where then do we find a people or a section of a people using this emblem today?

“The evidence presented . . . is irrefutable proof that the Celto-Saxon peoples are the continuation of ancient Israel. Among these peoples, Britain and the United States are undoubtedly the leaders and, consequently, we would expect to find the Israel symbol – the Sun, the Moon and the Thirteen Stars – in the national emblem of one or both of them. But it does not appear in either.

*“Yet this emblem is still with us, for when we turn to the emblems on the Flag of the President of the United States, and also on his Seal, we find that the Sun, the Moon and the Thirteen Stars hold a very prominent place among them”* (p.142-143).

A “very prominent place.” Where is this place? In the symbolism and emblems of the United States of America!

This vital key symbol should be the mark or emblem of the leading tribe of all Israel and Joseph – the tribe of *EPHRAIM*. Ephraim is the thirteenth tribe – and so fulfills this whole prophetic picture! Ephraim is the “baker’s dozen” – the THIRTEENTH – that overflows in abundance! This picture of “13” would not properly typify any other of the tribes, but only the LAST one, which *sums up the total* of them all.

As a matter of fascinating fact, not only were there were 13 original colonies which became the United States, but there were also 13 ships in the original American Navy. And, in World War I, 13 ships were sent to Europe, and took 13 days to cross the Atlantic, landing on Friday the 13th; the American troops on board fought in 13 battles in France.

The number “13” just keeps on cropping up in the history and identity of the United States of America! Why? How does this incredible fact help us to identify which tribe of Israel became the United States of America?

The number “13” stands identified as the number of the United States of America. But let’s take a closer look at that mysterious number “13” and see what relevance it has to the United States and the ancient tribe of Ephraim. There is an old axiom in geometry, “Two things equal to the same thing are equal to each other.” America stands identified by the number “13.” Ancient Ephraim was the “13<sup>th</sup>” tribe of Israel. They are both, unlike any other people on the earth, identified by this interesting number. That fact then identifies them as being equal to each other – or one and the same people! Let’s see the evidence that this is so.

### ***The Number “13”***

E. W. Bullinger, in his fascinating book *Number in Scripture*, explains about the mysterious number “13.” He writes:

“As to the significance of thirteen, all are aware that it has come down to us as a number of ill-omen. Many superstitions cluster around it, and various explanations are current concerning them.

“Unfortunately, those who go backwards to find a reason seldom go back far enough. . . But we must go back to *the first occurrence* of the number *thirteen* in order to discover the key to its significance. It occurs first in Genesis 14:4, where we read, ‘*Twelve* years they served Chedorlaomer, and the *thirteenth* year they REBELLED.’

“Hence every occurrence of the number *thirteen*, and likewise of *every multiple* of it, stamps that with which it stands in connection with *rebellion, apostasy, defection, corruption, disintegration, revolution*, or some kindred idea” (p.205).

The first mention of “13” in the Bible is in connection with the REBELLION of Sodom and Gomorrah against the empire of Chedorlaomer. The second mention of “13”

is in connection with Ishmael, the first son of Abraham. He was *thirteen* years old when he was circumcised, which God instituted the covenant of circumcision (Gen.17:13-25). Ishmael probably thought that as Abraham's only son, he would be the "child of promise," and would one day inherit Abraham's blessings and heritage. But that was not God's plan. God planned for Sarah to have a son, by Abraham, who would be the true inheritor. When Isaac was later born, at God's set time (Gen.21:1-3), he was circumcised on the eighth day. This was one year after Ishmael's circumcision.

As the young child grew, and was weaned, Sarah noticed the boy Ishmael "mocking" Isaac. The Hebrew term for "mocking" here is *tsachaq* and means "to laugh outright," or repeatedly, "to scorn," "to make sport of." This episode ended with Sarah prevailing upon Abraham to have the boy cast out from their presence, and although it grieved Abraham to do it, God told him it was the best course of action, but that the boy would become a nation (Gen.21:12-20). Ishmael's estrangement began in his thirteenth year, as he did not submit to the covenant of circumcision that year, and continued to lead a life of rebellion and rejection.

Bullinger points out a little known amazing fact of Biblical gematria involving the numbers "8" and "13." Gematria is the study of the numerical significance of Hebrew letters, each of which has a numerical value. Says Bullinger, "But it is when we come to GEMATRIA that the most wonderful results are seen." He continues:

"These results may be stated thus, briefly: That the names of the LORD's people are multiples of *eight*, while the names of those who apostatized, or rebelled, or who were in any sense His enemies, are multiples of *thirteen*. . . . The effect of this law can hardly be estimated in establishing the presence of an ever-present working of the Holy Spirit in inditing the very words and even the letters of Scripture. No human foresight or arrangement could have secured such a result beforehand; no human powers could have carried it out in such perfection. No matter where we look, we find the working of the law without cessation, without a break, without a flaw, from beginning to end. Only one conclusion is possible, and that is that the Bible has but one Author, an eternal, omniscient Author, designing, superintending, working, and carrying out His own infinite plans" (p.206).

In comparing the genealogies of Seth and Cain, respectively, we discover that the total numerical value of the names from Adam to Japheth, Noah's oldest son, is 3168, which is  $8 \times 396$  – a multiple of 8. Eight is the number of righteous beginnings, or new beginnings. Taking Noah's family separately, the names Noah, Shem, Ham and Japheth total 936 which is  $8 \times 9 \times 13$  (the number of righteousness times the number of judgment times the number of rebellion). The judgment of the Flood came upon that generation! But notice further! Subtract the name of Ham, the wicked son, and the total of the remaining three, Noah, Shem and Japheth is 888! They were the true "new righteous beginning" after the Flood. Interestingly, the name of JESUS the Messiah, in the Greek language, also has a gematria in Greek of 888!

The line of Cain, the rebellious line, on the other hand, from Adam to Tubal Cain, totals 2223, which is  $13 \times 9 \times 19$ . The number 13 represents rebellion; the number 9 is

the number of judgment; and the number 19 stands for “time,” as it is representative of the 19-year time cycle (the earth, sun and moon come back into the same relative relationship in the sky every 19 years).

The whole history of the period, in Genesis 4:1-25, has a total gematria of 76882 (13 x 5914). Verse 25 by itself however, which records the birth of Seth, the righteous son of Adam, has a value of 6560 (8 x 820); verse 26, also, which records the birth of his son Enos, tells how man began to “call upon the name of the LORD,” and has a value of 3064 (8 x 383). Contrast this with verse 1, where Eve bare Cain. It has a gematrical value of 1612 – or 13 x 124.

Cain was the first *rebel* against God. He rebelled and murdered his brother Abel, and his descendants were all rebels – like father like son. So his generations were branded with the number 13.

The descendants of Seth, however, were preachers of righteousness. Their genealogy reflects the number 8, *a new beginning in righteousness*.

### ***Rebellion and Apostasy***

The number “13” is the number of rebellion and apostasy. Interestingly, in this vein it was Jeroboam, an Ephraimite, who led the Ten Tribes to rebel against the throne of David (I Kings 12:1-19). Ephraim was the leading and most influential tribe among the ten northern tribes.

The number “65” is also associated with Ephraim which led the rebellion against Rehoboam, Solomon’s son. Isaiah says of this rebellion, in prophetic terms, “Within threescore and five years (65 years) shall Ephraim be broken, that it be not a people” (Isa.7:8). “From the last year of Jeroboam II to the carrying away of Israel was exactly 65 years, or 5 x 13, which characterized the disintegration which was going on in the nation” (Bullinger, *Numbers in Scripture*, p.215).

As I have noted elsewhere, in our modern times there are 65 years beginning from the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor in 1941 till the year 2006 – just two years from now! This has been a similar period of disintegration, rebellion, and apostasy from the truth of God, nationally speaking.

But another number is applied prophetically to the wayward Ten Tribes, led by Ephraim. The prophet Ezekiel is told to lie on his right side for 390 days as a *sign* to the ten tribes of Israel who rebelled (Ezek.4:4-5). These were called “the years of their iniquity.” 390 days represents 390 years – the years of Israel’s iniquity. 390 is 13 x 30. This was the whole duration of the rebellion and the separate existence of the Ten Tribes from the day they *rebelled* against Rehoboam to the day they were led away captive!

Says Bullinger, “Now 390 is *thirteen times thirty*, and the duration of Israel’s rebellion is sufficiently and appropriately branded upon it” (p.215).

In our day, today, the 390 years applies directly to the United States. Interestingly, from the founding of the first English colony at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607, there were 390 years till the end of 6,000 years from the Creation of Adam and Eve, or 1997 A.D.! Or, from the first religious colony at Plymouth Rock, Massachusetts, founded on December 21, 1620, there will be 390 years till December 20, year 2010 A.D. (As the Hebrew civil calendar is from fall to fall, this would be the year 2010-2011 A.D. This whole period of time characterizes end-time “Israel,” the Lost Ten Tribes, led by Ephraim, still in a state of spiritual rebellion and apostasy from God! This period of apostasy will be followed by the judgments of the “Day of the Lord,” which culminate this age of wickedness and rebellion against Almighty God!

For our immediate purposes, however, it is enough to recognize the vital meaning and importance of the number “13” as it applies to the Ten Tribes of Israel which went into captivity in 718-721 B.C., and to their modern-day descendants.

### *The Nature of Ephraim*

Ephraim, God says in His Word, has been a very unruly child – very rebellious! God says, “I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hidden from me; for now, O Ephraim, you have played the whore; Israel is defiled. Their deeds do not permit them to return to their God. For the spirit of whoredom is within them, and they do not know the LORD” (Hosea 5:3-4, NRSV). “Ephraim is joined to idols – let him alone. When their drinking is ended, they indulge in sexual orgies; they love lewdness more than their glory” (Hos.4:17-18).

God speaks of the “corruption of Ephraim” (Hos.7:1). He says, “Woe to them, for they have strayed from me! Destruction to them, for they have rebelled against me!” (Hosea 7:13). “Ephraim is oppressed, crushed in judgment, because he was determined to go after vanity. Therefore I am like maggots to Ephraim . . .” (Hos.5:11-12).

Nevertheless, God loves His people. The day is coming when they will be punished – severely – and they will repent! God declares, “Indeed I heard Ephraim pleading: ‘You disciplined me, and I took the discipline; I was like a calf untrained. Bring me back, let me come back, for you are the Lord my God. For after I had turned away I repented; and after I was discovered I struck my thigh; I was ashamed, and I was dismayed because I bore the disgrace of my youth’” (Jeremiah 31:18-19, NRSV).

God says, “Is Ephraim my dear son? Is he the child I delight in? As often as I speak against him, I still remember him. Therefore I am deeply moved for him; I will surely have mercy on him, says the LORD” (Jer.31:20). God says further to Ephraim and wayward Israel, “Set up road markers for yourself, make yourself guideposts; consider well the highway, the road by which you went. Return, O virgin Israel, return to these your cities. How long will you waver, O faithless daughter? For the LORD has created a new thing on the earth: a woman encompasses a man” (Jer.31:21-22).

Although Ephraim has grievously sinned, there will be pardon and mercy for him. When he repents, God will sweep him up in His everlasting, loving arms, and embrace him once again!

Until that time comes, however, Ephraim may be called the “tribe of rebellion.” As such, its identifying number is, once again, the number “13” – the number of rebellion!

*How plain can it be? How plain can it get?*

The United States of America was BORN in *revolution!* It began its existence in *REBELLION against the British Empire in 1776!* It is characterized by the spirit of independence and rebellion – “don’t tell me what to do!” “I’ll do it MY way,” as the old Frank Sinatra song has it!

The number “13” identifies ancient Ephraim, the tribe of rebellion. *The number “13” identifies the United States of America, the nation born in rebellion!* The number “13” is stamped all over our forehead and on our hands – in our flag, our national seal, on our currency, and throughout our very history.

*Two things equal to the same thing are equal to each other. The tribe of Ephraim equals “13” and the United States of America equals “13.” Therefore they are EQUAL TO EACH OTHER! The United States STANDS IDENTIFIED AS MODERN-DAY EPHRAIM!*

What about Manasseh? Manasseh was not known as a leader of rebellion. The older brother of Ephraim was not so “wild,” or “cowboyish,” or rambunctious – but much more sedate, aloof, dignified, aristocratic – like the British!

Manasseh’s number would not be “thirteen,” the number of rebellion and apostasy! That reproach belongs to Ephraim, which was by several measures, the thirteenth tribe, both in time-order, birth-order, finality, and superabundance – and in the number of “rebellion.”

What could be clearer than that?

To continue insisting that America is Manasseh and Great Britain is Ephraim is to get it all backwards – to put black for white – to mix up the identities of the two sons of Joseph. The children were not mixed up at birth. Nor should they be mixed up and mis-identified, today!

Ephraim, as always, has been and is the LEADER of the northern ten tribes of Israel. That world leader is the United States of America.

*Chapter Seven*

# The Unicorn and Manasseh

One of the clearest proofs that Great Britain is not the tribe of Ephraim in modern times, as a whole, is the fact that it bears, stamped on its very head, the sign and emblem of the Israelite tribe of *Manasseh*, not Ephraim. This historical fact has not been given the attention that it deserves.

What is that sign? It is the sign of the “unicorn.”

*Scotland's Royal Coat of Arms*



The Royal Coat of Arms of Scotland, shown above, has two unicorns, on the left and right of the shield with a lion, and a crown above the shield.

The Coat of Arms of the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland, shown below, contains a rampant lion *and a unicorn standing on its hind feet*. The lion, interestingly, is a symbol of the tribe of Judah and David (Gen.49:8-10). Many believe the British throne to be descended from king David of ancient Israel. The unicorn itself is a symbol of the tribe of Joseph (Deut.33:17).



The Royal Coat of Arms of the United Kingdom – the official Coat of Arms of Great Britain and Northern Ireland – shows a crown resting on a shield. The shield is quartered, depicting in the first and third quarters the three lions passant guardian of England; in the second quarter is the rampant lion of Scotland; and in the third quarter the harp for Northern Ireland.

The crest at the top is a lion statant guardant wearing the imperial crown. The right supporter is a likewise crowned lion, symbolizing England; on the left is a unicorn, symbolizing Scotland. The unicorn is chained, because in Medieval times a free unicorn was considered very dangerous – it was believed that only a virgin could tame a unicorn.

The Coat of Arms features the motto of the British monarchs – “Dieu et mon droit” – “God and my [birth] right.”

For use in Scotland, the Queen has a separate Coat of Arms. In this Coat of Arms, quarters one and four of the shield are Scotland; quarter two is England; and quarter four (the harp) is Northern Ireland. The supporters also change sides, and the unicorn is on the right side and is imperially crowned, and the rampant lion is on the lefthand side. At the crown, a Scottish red lion holding a sword and a sceptre sits on a crown. At the bottom is the motto, “Nemo me impune lacessit” – “No one provokes me with impunity.”

The Royal Arms *of* Scotland features on both the right hand and left hand sides a rampant crowned unicorn, with a red lion on the shield. The Royal Arms *for* Scotland differs, and has a rampant lion on the left and a rampant unicorn on the right hand side; its shield is quartered like the Royal Coat of Arms for the United Kingdom. Since the uniting of the crowns of Scotland and England in 1603, the Arms of the King of Scots have been incorporated into the versions of the Royal Coat of Arms of th United Kingdom.

As we will see, the unicorn is a symbol of the ancient tribe of Manasseh, the oldest son of Joseph in Egypt. On the other hand, an ancient sign of Ephraim was the bull. The bull and unicorn were signs of the descendants of Joseph.

### *The Prophecy of Deuteronomy 33*



In previous chapters we have discussed the characteristics of Joseph, mentioned by Jacob, in his blessings of Joseph and his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.

But another vital grouping of prophetic identifying marks is given by Moses, in his blessings on the tribes of Israel, as they came to the Holy Land, after departing from Egypt.

Moses prophesied of Joseph in Deuteronomy 33: “His glory is like a firstborn *bull*, and his horns like the horns of a *wild ox*; together with them he shall push the peoples to the ends of the earth; they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh” (Deut.33:17, NKJV). The King James Version has this verse, “His glory is like the firstling of his *bullock*, and his horns are like the horns of *unicorns*” (first part). The Hebrew word *reem* can be translated either “wild ox” or “unicorn,” from the word *raam*, “to be lifted up” (i.e., the horns).

The glory of Joseph is likened to that of a “bull.” The Hebrew word is *showr* and means “bullock, bull, cow, ox.”

Can the United States be compared to a “bull”? Absolutely! The United States is the greatest cattle raising country in the world. It is only fitting that the symbol of ancient Ephraim, the bull, would apply to the U.S. More than a fourth of the land area of the U.S. is used for grazing and pasture. Dairy and beef cattle are the most important livestock raised on American farms. Farms in the Midwest and enormous ranches in the West raise most of the beef cattle. In sheer numbers, the United States’s cattle industry overwhelms that of all other nations. In 1985 all cattle in the U.S. totaled 109,582,000. U.S. beef production in the year 2000 was 26,888,000,000 pounds. No other country even comes close! Cattle and ranching play a very important role in American history, especially the conquest of the “Wild West.” The American cowboy and longhorn cattle are the stuff of legend.

In its relations with other nations, the United States can also be aptly compared to a “bull,” which likes to shove its weight around. It is not ferocious like a “lion,” or quick as a lion, but when it gets its act together, it can marshal immense strength – just like a “bull.”

In this passage, Moses also points out that Ephraim would out-number Manasseh on a scale of ten to one. He spoke of “the ten thousands of Ephraim, and . . . the thousands of Manasseh” (verse 17). It is perfectly obvious that the United States, with a population of some 281,000,000, outnumbers the population of the United Kingdom of some 60 million. Canada’s population of about 25 million is roughly one tenth of that of the United States.

Of course, we all know that it is the United States of America which is the world’s only true Superpower, today. It is the United States which essentially saved the Western world from German conquest in World War I, and especially in World War II. The role of Great Britain, of course, was vital in both conflicts, and their courage and boldness sustained the wars until the United States intervened, and swayed the balance of power to the allies.

Again, it was the United States which led the fight against Communist aggression in the Korean War, and Vietnam, and it was the United States which sent over 468,000 troops to the Middle East to fight Saddam Hussein in the Gulf War in 1991. More

recently, it was again primarily the United States which sent its troops and its Air Force to pummel the Taliban and Al Qaeda forces in Afghanistan. It was the “Arrows” of Ephraim which struck at the heart of the terrorist empire and devastated their forces, in massive missile and bombing sorties, destroying the terrorist infrastructure. It was primarily the United States which sent about 200,000 troops to depose Saddam Hussein in the Iraq War of 2003.

And side-by-side with Ephraim-America, has been the support of his older brother, Manasseh-Great Britain. The British have been America’s leading allies and supporters in most of these conflicts, as would be expected since they are true brothers. Yet the dominant power has been that of Ephraim – the “ten thousands of Ephraim” (Deut.33:17).

How accurately world events have fulfilled these prophecies of Moses, inspired by God, 3,500 years ago! To mix up the promises to Ephraim and Manasseh does justice to neither of the two sons of Joseph!

But now let’s examine this prophecy more carefully – in particular, the reference to the “unicorn.” The tribe of Joseph, which became the two tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, is compared in this prophecy to a great bull, and a unicorn – both noted for their brute strength. The notable, conspicuous feature of the bull or wild ox is its horn, and so it is with the unicorn, a horse-like creature with a prominent horn in the middle of its forehead.

How is this symbolism important to our discussion of the relative identities of Ephraim and Manasseh?

Both the United States and Great Britain are connected with the “bull” and its strength. The British people are known by the term “John Bull,” a symbol of England. On the other hand, the United States is famous the world over for its association with cattle – huge cattle ranches – in the western part of the country – and all the legendary stories that accompany them. Cowboys, cattle trails, the huge cattle drives in the nineteenth century, Texas Longhorn cattle – even today the United States out-produces every other country in the production of beef!

But the “unicorn” itself has a special reference to *Manasseh!*

### ***The Unicorn***

The “unicorn” is a mysterious creature which has fascinated mankind and captured its imagination. What was the “unicorn”? It is somewhat of a mystery, even today.

On the one hand, says *Peloubet’s Bible Dictionary*, “Unicorn, the rendering of the Authorized Version of the Hebrew *reem*, a word which occurs seven times in the Old Testament, as the name of some large wild animal. The *reem* of the Hebrew Bible,

however, has nothing to do with the one-horned animal of the Greek and Roman writers, as is evident from Deut.33:17, where, in the blessing of Joseph, it is said, ‘His glory is like the firstling of his bullock, and his horns are like the horns of a unicorn;’ not as the text of the Authorized Version renders it, ‘the horns of *unicorns*.’ The two horns of the *reem* are ‘the ten thousands of Ephraim and the thousands of Manasseh’” (p.714).

Says Peloubet, “Considering that the *reem* is spoken of as a two-horned animal of great strength and ferocity, that it was evidently well known and often seen by the Jews, that it is mentioned as an animal fit for sacrificial purposes, and that it is frequently associated with bulls and oxen, we think there can be no doubt that some species of wild ox is intended. . . It is probable that it was the gigantic *Bos primigenius*, or aurochs, now extinct, but of which Caesar says, ‘These uri are scarcely less than elephants in size, but in their nature, color and form are bulls. Great is their strength and great their speed; they spare neither man nor beast when once they have caught sight of them’” (*ibid.*).

Gesenius, however, says this animal is “a wild animal, fierce and untamed, resembling an ox, as a wild ass resembles an ass . . . possessed of horns with which it prostrates everything . . .” (p.751). He identifies it with the *buffalo*. On the other hand, he points out that the Arabic word which answers to this denotes the *oryx*, a large and fierce species of *antelope*. Interestingly, Arabs call wild animals of the *deer* kind *wild bulls*.

The *Encyclopedia Britannica*, eleventh edition, describes the “unicorn” as “a fabulous beast, usually having the body and head of a horse, the hind legs of an antelope, the tail of a lion (sometimes horse’s tail), sometimes the beard of a goat, and as its chief feature a long, sharp, twisted horn, similar to a narwhal’s tusk, set in the middle of its forehead.” It points out that ancient historians took the unicorn seriously and described it in their histories. “The earliest description is that of Ctesius, who states that there were in India white wild asses celebrated for their fleetness of foot, having *on the forehead a horn a cubit and a half in length*, colored white, red and black.” It continues, “Aristotle mentions two one-horned animals, the oryx, a kind of antelope, and ‘the so-called Indian ass.’ In Roman times, Pliny mentions the oryx, the Indian ass, and an Indian ox as one-horned; Aelian, quoting Ctesius, adds that India produces also a one-horned horse. . . . Strabo says that in India there were *one horned horses with stag-like heads*” (*Encyclopedia Britannica*, “unicorn,” 11<sup>th</sup> edition, vol.27, p.581).

How does the “unicorn” become involved in the question of the identity of Ephraim and Manasseh?

### ***Yair Davidy’s View***

In his book entitled *Joseph: The Israelite Identity of America*, Yair Davidy claims that most of the evidence suggests that the United States represents, for the most part, Manasseh, and Ephraim is represented by Britain and her daughters (Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa).

He quotes Genesis 48:19, where Jacob says of Joseph's firstborn, Manasseh, "He also shall be great: but truly his younger brother shall be GREATER than he, and his seed shall become a multitude of nations." Davidy points out that the term "multitude of nations" is literally, "fullness of the peoples."

However, the British Commonwealth itself does not consist of a "multitude" of English-derived nations and never did. It comprises only 5 nations which were settled by English-speaking people. On the other hand, the term "multitude of peoples" can easily be seen to apply to the vast United States of America, numbering 50 different states, comprised literally of a "multitude of peoples" – some 280,000,000 of them.

Nevertheless, Yair Davidy says this passage means Ephraim would "*rule OVER nations* or determine the very existence of other nations" (*Joseph: The Israelite Identity of America*, p.193, emphasis mine). Frankly, that is *not at all* what the passage plainly says! Although I would have no qualms about saying that Ephraim would rule over a multitude of nations or peoples, during their supremacy (which the United States has done and now does by its world-wide influence), even so, this passage says nothing whatsoever about that fact.

Notice, now. The strict interpretation of the passage does not speak of RULING OVER anyone, but rather says that Ephraim would CONSIST OF "a multitude of peoples"! Jacob told Joseph, literally, speaking of Ephraim, "his seed shall *BECOME* a fullness of peoples." That is exactly what he said – not that Ephraim would *rule over* them, but he would *BECOME* them – meaning a large population of people. There is a far difference between *becoming* a fullness of people, and a great nation, and the concept of ruling over many people or having them under your thumb.

But then we come to the question of the "unicorn."

### ***The STANDARD of Manasseh***

In his books on the Lost Ten Tribes, and Ephraim and Manasseh in particular, Yair Davidy points out that *the ancient sign or symbol of the tribe of Manasseh was the "unicorn."*

Let's take a look at the "unicorn" as it refers to modern nations and their national symbols and identities. As we have already taken notice, prominently on the Royal Coat of Arms of the United Kingdom, or Great Britain, there is a rampant lion, and a unicorn standing on its hind feet.

Yair Davidy, in his book *The Tribes: The Israelite Origins of Western Peoples*, explains:

"A lion represents the kingdom of David and Judah. Moses (Deut.33:17) *compared Joseph to a bull and to a unicorn*. In the blessing of Balaam the strength of all Israel is compared

to that of a *unicorn* (Num.23:22). A UNICORN (Raem) was represented on the STANDARD OF MANASSEH *son of Joseph, according to the MIDRASH*" (Yair Davidy, *The Tribes*, p.220, second edition, Russell-Davis Publishers, Israel, 1999).

Read that candid admission once again! Davidy confesses that the "unicorn" was the emblem or sign of THE TRIBE OF *MANASSEH!* Therefore, we should expect the "unicorn" to be prominent among and identified with the tribe of Manasseh! This fact should be obvious to anybody with an open mind. F

So where do we find the "unicorn" prominently displayed, today? Where do we find the "unicorn" symbol among the nations of the world?

It is incorporated into the Royal Coat of Arms of England, Scotland and Northern Ireland – the UNITED KINGDOM! The unicorn is featured prominently on the ROYAL SEAL of *GREAT BRITAIN!*

*The very Seal of the Royal Coat of Arms of Great Britain BEARS THE IDENTIFYING SIGN of the Israelite tribe of MANASSEH!*

In other words, the symbol of ancient Manasseh, as Rabbis point out, was the unicorn. A "unicorn" was "a fabulous animal generally depicted with the body and head of a horse, the hind legs of a stag, the tail of a lion, and a single horn in the middle of the forehead" (*Webster's Dictionary*). If the unicorn was the sign of the tribe of Manasseh, then this sign or identifying symbol should follow the people of the tribe of Manasseh, and should be an excellent means to *identify* who are the people of Manasseh!

What people on the earth – what nation or nations – have the "unicorn" as their national symbol?

### ***"Unicorns Everywhere"***

I asked Nick Wood, our representative in England, to check this out for me further. He wrote to me and says, "In a nutshell, the Unicorn is on the British Royal Coat of Arms. This is the Sovereign's own symbol and is to be found in many different buildings the length and breadth of Great Britain, such as Government and Public buildings, local council offices, Anglican churches, the Royal Courts of Justice, to name a few."

Consider that! The "unicorn" is found virtually everywhere, throughout the length and breadth of Great Britain – in public buildings, libraries, offices, the courts, in the Anglican churches (Church of England), government buildings, parliament, throughout the British Isles.

But on the other hand, you don't find the sign of the unicorn anywhere in the United States, as an official symbol of anything. It is not on public buildings, not in churches, courts, or government offices. It is simply missing.

This great contrast should tell us something. It should *prove beyond doubt* to us that Manasseh, with its sign of the unicorn, is found today in GREAT BRITAIN, where the unicorn is found in prolific abundance!

The ancient emblem of the unicorn is *only* found on the Royal Coat of Arms of Great Britain, Scotland and Canada! The Royal Coat of Arms of Scotland has TWO unicorns! On the other hand, the Unicorn is *not* a part of any American national symbol or standard, and is *not* connected with the United States.

If America were indeed "Manasseh," how did we lose our own national historic standard, the symbol of the "unicorn"? And why and how did it gravitate to our "brother" Ephraim instead? Why would "Ephraim" have the standard which identifies *Manasseh*?

One mistake leads to another and another and other – all because the original premise is wrong. But one simple truth, when accepted, lays to rest all the errors and fits perfectly like a carefully tailored suit. In this case, making an initial wrong identity of Manasseh only leads to compounded error and confusion. A nation leaving its identifying symbol and emblem with another nation is like a man going naked, giving his clothes to another man!

Yair Davidy writes in an article entitled "The Unicorn," in his magazine *Brit-Am Truth*, issue no.7, on page 19, published in 2004, the following: "The unicorn was originally the symbol of Scotland. The Coat of arms of Scotland bears two unicorns. When Scotland was unified with England the unicorn (together with the lion) became a symbol of Britain. The word for Unicorn in Hebrew is 'raem.' 'Unicorn' really is a legitimate translation of 'raem.' *Only Britain has the unicorn as an official symbol. This alone is worth considering.* The unicorn became the emblem of Scotland: the Scottish coat of arms has two unicorns. When Scotland united with England the lion and the unicorn were together on the British coat of arms. The Midrash says that 'raem' (unicorn) was the symbol of **MANASSEH**. [This is *his own emphasis!*] In our passage [Deut.33:17] Israel is likened to a unicorn. *Only in Britain does the unicorn appear as a national symbol.* On the other hand the unicorn came to Britain from Scotland which is still represented by two unicorns."

### ***The Unicorn Sign of Great Britain***

Isn't that a remarkable admission! He states plainly that the unicorn is a symbol of Manasseh. In fact, he highlights the word "Manasseh" in *bold capital letters*. He admits that **ONLY BRITAIN** has the unicorn as a "national symbol" and an "official symbol." He even says, "*This alone is worth considering.*"

Yes, it most certainly IS worth considering!

How simple! *Q.E.D. (quo erat demonstrandum)* – that which was to be demonstrated has now been done. I suggest that this proves the identity of Manasseh, just as the number “13” proves the identity of Ephraim! *Q.E.D.* End of argument. The solution is plain. The case is closed. The identity is proven.

### ***Ephraim and Manasseh Mixed***

However, these facts do not mean that I believe that all Ephraimites are found in the United States of America, and all Manassites in the United Kingdom and Canada. Not at all.

Yair Davidy writes, “More than 80% of the founding settlers of the USA came from Scotland *and related areas* in the North and West of Britain” (*ibid.*). Since the emblem of these areas was the unicorn, Mr. Davidy thinks this means that the “unicorn” people are the ones who settled in the United States.

If indeed many U.S. settlers came from the north and west of Britain, would that mean that they constitute Manasseh? Not at all! How can this be explained?

Let’s turn this proposition around

Perhaps the precise opposite is true. That is, those people who *left* those areas do so because they did not FIT IN with the Manassites who dominated that region. They did not fit in under the sway of Manassites, and because they were of *Ephraim*, they picked up and departed from areas controlled by Manasseh, and immigrated to the American colonies! In other words, they left because they were NOT of Manasseh. But for a while, the two peoples dwelt together in the British Isles, out of necessity. Once the opportunity availed itself, however, they took advantage of it and struck out on their own for distant lands and shores.

You see? The fact that those who came to America left the region dominated by Manasseh doesn’t prove they were Manassites, but quite the opposite! The Ephraimites among them didn’t enjoy living under *Manasseh’s* local, entrenched government in Scotland and western Britain. So, for this reason they left – migrated – to the Western Hemisphere to set up their *own government!*

If those people who left, to come to the United States, were Manassites, as Yair believes, then it would stand to reason that they would have TAKEN THEIR HISTORIC EMBLEM AND SYMBOL OF THE UNICORN *WITH THEM!*

But they did not do this. There are no unicorn symbols in America. Yet they are spread out all over the British Isles and the United Kingdom. Doesn’t this fact tell us anything? It should be ringing like the Liberty Bell, ringing out the news, that America is

not Manasseh, but the United Kingdom *is* the people of Manasseh, because it has the symbol of Manasseh – the unicorn – *virtually EVERYWHERE!*

The symbol of the unicorn stayed where the people of the unicorn stayed. *Ipsa facto*. By this fact itself Manasseh is identified and found to be located primarily in the United Kingdom and Great Britain – and not in the United States of America.

The evidence of which nations possess the UNICORN in their standard or Royal Coat of Arms is very important – and it is very indicative of who is really who! The emblem of the unicorn itself *identifies* Scotland, England and Canada as being none other than the descendants of the ancient tribe of MANASSEH! Therefore, since *Great Britain, Scotland and Canada are the only nations in the world that have the UNICORN as their national symbol*, that fact *identifies them* as being, in the aggregate, the modern-day tribe of *Manasseh*.

### ***The SIGN of the Unicorn***

Yair Davidy points out that the Hebrew of Deut.33:17 states, “The *karnei* [horns of] the unicorn [*reem*] *karnov* [are his horns].” This expression can be understood to say that the unicorn (*reem*) has more than one horn, or that it has one horn. It is ambiguous. He continues, “Rabbinical commentators (and the King James Translation after them) chose to interpret it as consistent with the *Raem* having only one horn. In this their opinion was consistent with that of the major Rabbinical commentators” (*Brit-Am Truth*, “The Unicorn,” issue no.7, page 15).

Yair Davidy also wrote in “Brit-Am Now”-#392, sent out to his mailing list April 26, 2004, “The unicorn became the emblem of Scotland: the Scottish coat of arms has two unicorns. When Scotland united with England the lion and the unicorn were together on the British coat of arms. The Midrash says that the ‘raem’ (unicorn) was the symbol of Manasseh. . . . *Only in Britain does the unicorn appear as a national symbol.*”

The *Canadian* Coat of Arms ALSO bears the same unicorn emblem! It, too, has a rampant lion on the right-hand side of the coat of arms, and a standing unicorn on the left. Therefore, it, too, stands identified by its emblem as a modern descendant of MANASSEH!

Remember, ancient Manasseh was divided into two parts – one settled east of the Jordan River, and one settled west of the Jordan River, bounded on the west by the Mediterranean Sea. In a similar manner, modern Manasseh is also divided into two parts – separated by a body of water – the Atlantic Ocean. The eastern part is the United Kingdom (Great Britain) and the western division is Canada.

Since Canada has the unicorn as a symbol in its Royal Coat of Arms, and since the unicorn is a symbol of ancient Manasseh, this clearly identifies Canada as being also primarily descended from ancient Manasseh.

### Canadian Royal Coat of Arms



The symbol of the “unicorn” is one of the great incisive proofs that Canada and Great Britain are descended from Manasseh. Since the United States does not possess this identifying symbol, that would constitute *prima facie* evidence that the United States is definitely *not* primarily descended from Manasseh, but must instead be descended from his younger brother – Ephraim!

#### *Proof Positive*

What does all this tell us? What does this evidence prove?

Here is *proof positive* to anyone with a truly open mind that GREAT BRITAIN and CANADA are primarily descended from ancient MANASSEH – *not Ephraim!*

*If Great Britain were truly Ephraim, then why does their Royal Standard bear the clear representation of the Unicorn – the symbol or sign of the tribe of Manasseh? The Unicorn of Great Britain identifies the British as primarily of the tribe of Manasseh.*

And if the unicorn is the symbol of Manasseh and the United States is “Manasseh” – *why doesn't the United States have this symbol in their national emblems and symbols?*

Why, indeed! It would appear to be nothing more than a “curious conceit” to claim and believe that Great Britain is the tribe of Ephraim when its very symbolism identifies it and stamps it on its very forehead – the forehead of the Unicorn – as being the tribe of Manasseh instead.

## *Chapter Eight*

# What's in a Name?

What is the origin of the name “America”? Who were the true original “Americans”? Does this name help us to identify the modern land of Ephraim, the people who were to inherit the promises of the “firstborn” of Israel?

Let's take a look at this mysterious name, and its possible Hebrew history, connections and etymology. Just who are these “Americans”, anyway, and where did they get this name?

It is commonly thought, and taught, that “America” gets its name from Amerigo Vespucci, an Italian-born explorer who claimed that he explored the coasts of present-day Brazil, Uruguay, and Argentina between 1497 and 1503. In 1507 a German mapmaker suggested this area be called America after Amerigo Vespucci. The name was adopted by map makers throughout Europe, and was gradually applied to all of South America and later to both continents. However, the word “America” is often used to mean the United States of America. Today, many scholars doubt Vespucci's role in the exploration of America. Believe it or not, there is an alternative explanation for the name “America,” and it makes much more sense!

Why would the name of an obscure explorer come to apply to the people of the United States? Why would the people of the United States, above all peoples on earth, be referred to as “Americans” today?

### *Ephraim Given Firstborn Blessings*

Joseph's youngest son was Ephraim. Ephraim in Hebrew means “double fruit,” from the term “Ephrath,” meaning “fruitfulness.” Ephraim, the younger son of Joseph, was blessed above his brother Manasseh, and was to become “greater than he,” although both were to be incredibly blessed of God (Gen.48:15-20). Ephraim was to inherit the blessings of the “firstborn,” as Jacob's right hand was placed upon him (verses 18-19). Nevertheless, both were to become tremendously blessed, and to “grow into a multitude in the earth” (verse 16).

The United States of America fulfills this promise in modern times. In the end of this age, the United States has become the world's most blessed nation, agriculturally, physically, economically, and the strongest militarily. No other nation can compare. Ephraim was to become a “multitude of nations” or “states” or “peoples” (Gen.48:19). We are a union of fifty states, comprising many peoples, but most of them Anglo-Saxons.

The term “Anglo” itself may derive from “Angel,” referring to the “Angel” who blessed, guided and protected our ancestor, Jacob himself. Note that one of the two tribes which came to Britain was the “ANGLES” and the other was the “SAXONS.” As Jacob said as he blessed the sons of Joseph, “The Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, Bless the lads; *let my name be named upon them, and the name of my fathers, Abraham and Isaac*” (Gen.48:16).

God compares the sons of Joseph to bulls. In Deuteronomy, Moses said of Joseph’s descendants, “His glory is like a *firstborn bull*, and his horns like the horns of a *wild ox*; together with them he shall push the peoples to the ends of the earth; they are the *ten thousands of Ephraim and the thousands of Manasseh*” (Deut.33:17). England is known as “John Bull.” Manasseh was literally the firstborn of Joseph, and a “Bull” like people. The English are also noted for their stubbornness, and starched stiff collar and aristocracy.

The “wild ox” of this Scripture seems to more define Americans – famous for their “Wild West,” and looked upon by Europeans as being somewhat loud, self-confident, cocky, quick of action – even overly much so – a bit too precipitous and adventuring – like “cowboys” on the world stage. Jeremiah describes Ephraim thus: “I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself: You have chastised me, *like an untrained bull*; restore me, and I will return” (Jeremiah 31:18).

In Hebrew, an untrained bull calf is an “Aegel.” The Jewish commentator Rashi explains that “Aegel” was also a nick-name for Ephraim. Yair Davidy points out that “Aegel” was also a nickname for the Angles.

America-Ephraim seems a little brash, pushy, to Europeans, lacking in finesse, and refinement. Nevertheless, it is that “can do” spirit of optimism and accomplishment that peoples the world over admire most about Americans – as well as their inborn generosity and native spirit of giving and helpfulness.

This verse in Deuteronomy was played out in the Gulf War, and the Korean War, World War I and World War II. In World War I it was the “Yanks” who rode to the rescue, when the Germans were threatening to overwhelm the British and French armies in France. But in World War II, it was clearly the Americans whose contribution enabled the Allies to defeat both Germany and Japan and keep Hitler from overrunning the world. In the Gulf War of 1991 the Americans put over 468,000 troops in the field, compared to about 50,000 from Great Britain, to push Saddam Hussein and his forces out of Kuwait. Together, during the 20<sup>th</sup> century, they “pushed” the peoples to the “ends of the earth”, fighting in Malaysia, Burma, China, New Guinea, Guadalcanal, the Pacific Islands, North Africa, Sicily, Italy, and Europe!

The term “Saxon” is also interesting. Who were the “Saxons”? Many have pointed out that the name very likely derives from Isaac, whose name in Hebrew is “*Itsak*,” shortened to “Tsak” or “Sak,” and “sons” referring to his offspring – thus “Saxons” becomes “Sak’s sons” – the sons of Isaac. Remember, Jacob prophesied that

they would bear the name of himself, as well as Isaac, and Abraham (Gen.48:16).

### *Mystery of the “Omer”*

Yair Davidy in his book *Joseph: The Israelite Identity of America* suggests that the name America comes from “Machir,” a son of Manasseh, the firstborn son of Joseph. Although I do not agree on this derivation, and consider it mere speculation, nevertheless it is very possible that many Manassites also settled in the land of the United States, especially in the South. We will discuss that strong probability and its real significance in a later chapter, “Honest Objections Answered.”

The term “America,” however, does have another very interesting Hebrew relationship. In Hebrew, the word “Am” or “om” literally means “people.” The term “ami” means “my people.” Americans have often been called “amis” by Europeans, a term of affection.

The term “Amer” also may directly relate to the Hebrew word “omer,” which literally means “firstfruits.” Ephraim was to be doubly fruitful, and to inherit the blessings of the *firstborn*, that is, the *firstfruits* from the womb. Thus the name “Amer” could help identify Americans as “the people of the firstborn or firstfruits,” the most blessed of peoples – the people of the “omer.”

What is an “omer”? Says *The Jewish Book of Why*, “The first crop (barley) was cut on Passover, and a small amount (an omer) was brought to the Temple as a sacrifice on the second day of the holiday. For the next forty-nine days, each day was marked off (counted), and this period became known as *Sefira* (“the counting”). . . . The fiftieth day was Shavuot, on which the next crop (wheat) was harvested and brought to the Temple as a sacrifice” (p.208). This was a very important ritual and Temple service which was held every year before the barley crop could be harvested. The firstfruits had to be offered to God, first, before anyone could partake of the harvest (Lev.23:10-15). It was to be a “statute forever” (v.14).

The Hebrew word *omer* literally means “a heap, i.e., a sheaf; also an *omer* as a dry measure.”

The “omer” was about 5.1 pints of barley flour. It symbolized the firstfruits of the barley harvest, the first harvest of grain in the spring or new year.

Says Alfred Edersheim in *The Temple: Its Ministry and Services*, “on the evening of the 15<sup>th</sup> of Nisan (even though it was a Sabbath), just as the sun went down, three men, each with a sickle and basket, formally set to work. But in order clearly to bring out all that was distinctive in the ceremony, they first asked the bystanders three times each of these questions: ‘Has the sun gone down?’ ‘With this sickle?’ ‘Into this basket?’ ‘On this Sabbath (or the first Passover-day)?’ – and, lastly, ‘Shall I reap?’ Having each time been answered in the affirmative, they cut down barley to the amount of one ephah, or ten omers, or three seahs, which is equal to about three pecks and three pints of our English

measure. The ears were brought into the Court of the Temple, and thrashed out with canes and stalks, so as not to injure the corn; then ‘parched’ on a pan perforated with holes . . . Though one ephah, or ten omers, of barley was cut down, only one omer of flour, or about 5.1 pints of our measure, was offered in the Temple on the second Paschal, or 16<sup>th</sup> day of Nisan” (p.204-205).

How would this name for a special offering of firstfruits of the grain crop refer to Ephraim? The simple answer is that Ephraim was given the blessings of the firstborn or “firstfruits.” He represented the firstfruits. In fact, in Jeremiah, God says, “For I am ever a Father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn” (Jer.31:9, Tanakh).

Thus the syllables “omer-i” or “Ameri” could signify in Hebrew “my omer” or “my firstfruits” or firstborn!

### *A Lesson in Hebrew Grammar*

What about the suffix, “ca”, in “Ameri-ca”? Hebrew, like all languages, has a first, second, and third person – “I,” “you,” “they.” The first person (I, we) is the person doing the talking. The second person (you, singular, and you, plural), is the person being talked to. The third person (he, she, it, or they) is the one being talked about.

The second person possessive, singular suffix in the Hebrew language is “ca” or “cha.” For example, the Hebrew word for “horse” is *sus*.

If we put all the Hebrew suffixes to this word for “horse”, we have:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
1.	SUSI – my horse	SUSENU – our horse
2.	SUS’CHA – your horse (m.) SUSECH – your horse (f.)	SUS’CHEM – your horse (m.) SUS’CHEN – your horse (f.)
3.	SUSO – his horse SUSAH – her horse	SUSAM – their horse (m.) SUSAN – their horse (f.)

Notice that the suffix “ca” or “cha” is the second person possessive for “your,” in the masculine form. When we see the suffix “ca” in a Hebrew word, therefore, it means “your.” This suffix can also be “echa,” as in the Hebrew word *oy’vechah* which means “your enemies.”

Therefore, the “ca” or “ica” in “America,” as a Hebrew suffix, could be the second person masculine singular “your.”

Since we have noted that the Anglo-Saxon settlers of North America were of Hebraic origin, being the tribe of Joseph, the leader of the “lost ten tribes” of Israel, it would seem that their name – “America” – would also have a Hebrew connection or

origin.

Thus “Amer” or “Omer” refers to “firstfruits,” and “Amer-ica” can mean, literally, “your omer” or “your firstfruits [the Omer]” – that is, *God’s Omer or Firstfruits!*

### *The House of “Omri”*

However, the investigation goes even beyond these points of grammar and etymology. It is a historical fact that a powerful ancient dynasty in the northern kingdom of ancient Israel was that of the “House of Omri.” Omri was the first king of a dynasty that lasted nearly sixty years and consisted of four successive rulers. Omri was a valiant military general who was engaged in a siege against the Philistine city of Gibbethon (I Kings 16:16) when we first meet him. He soon becomes king after another military commander assassinates the king. Omri erected a fortress-city at Samaria and made it the capital of the northern kingdom. Its strategic position illustrated the military character of Omri. It was situated on a conical hill overlooking a broad valley, in the inheritance of Ephraim. Its appearance is described in Isaiah 28:1 as being at the “head of the valleys of fatness.”

*The Hastings Bible Dictionary* has this verse, “*Ephraim’s proud crown on the summit of a fertile valley*” (“Omri,” p.620, vol.3). Omri called the city “Shomron,” which means “place of watch” (I Kings 16:24). It was sometimes called the “mountain of Samaria” (Amos 4:1, 6:1).

Omri was a powerful king, who built his capital in Ephraim’s portion. This would indicate that he was a member of the tribe of Ephraim. His dynasty included Ahab, one of the most wicked kings in the northern kingdom. Omri allied himself with the surrounding pagan nations which practiced the Baal religion, such as Lebanon. His son and successor, Ahab, married a priestess of Baal, Jezebel, a princess of Tyre. Omri subjugated the nation of Moab and put an end to their independence.

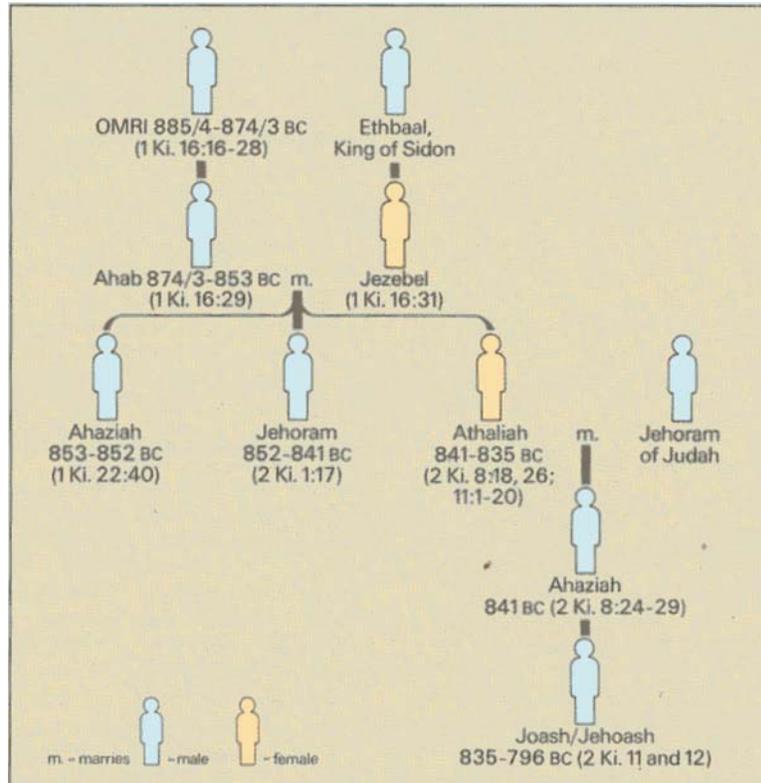
Omri made a deep impression in Western Asia by his military prowess. “This impression was no fleeting one, but extended over a very long period. We have very clear indication of this in the fact that Palestine was called *Bit Humri*, or ‘land of the house of Omri,’ from the time of Shalmanezzer II (860) to that of Sargon (722-705). The usurper Jehu is called on Shalmanezzer’s black obelisk *Ja’ua abal Humri*, ‘Jehu son of Omri’” (*ibid.*).

The fact that the kingdom of Israel, in the north, was called the “house of Omri,” or “land of Omri,” in the Assyrian inscriptions, long after Omri himself died, is very significant. It reveals that this name endured as the proper designation of the northern kingdom of Israel by its neighbors.

Says the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, “the fact that the Northern Kingdom long continued to be called by the Assyrians after his name is a significant indication of his great reputation” (11th edition, vol. XV, article “Jews,” p.377).

Omri ushered in a new era of Israelite power. He was an astute politician, cementing ties with Phoenicia to offset Syria. His son Ahab furthered this consolidation by marrying the daughter of Ethbaal, the king of Tyre and the Sidonians. She is the famous Jezebel of antiquity, and a high priestess of Baal.

The prophet Micah refers to the “statutes of Omri” in a negative way as part of the reason for the apostasy of the northern kingdom of Israel (Micah 6:15-16).



The fact is that Omri gave his name to the northern kingdom of Israel. The kingdom was known as the “House of Omri.” It was also called “Bit Humri,” meaning “House of Omri” (*The Bible as History*, Werner Keller, p.217). On the famous Black Obelisk of Shalmaneser III, a century later, the northern kingdom is called “Bit Humri.” Another variation of “Omri,” or “Humbri,” is “Khumri.”

On the famous Behistun Rock inscriptions, engraved on a high rock beside the main road leading to Babylon from Media, is a vital link proving the relationship between the House of Israel (Bit Ghomri) and their modern day descendants. Darius I of Persia had these inscriptions engraved in three languages, Persian, Babylonian and Susian (Elamite). The nineteenth province of Persia, listed in this engraving is, in Persian, Scythia (Saka, phonetically), in Susian the same, and in Babylonian, the Cimmerians (phonetically, *Gimiri*). Thus the land of the Cimmerians was the same as the land of the Sacae or Saka. This Scythian territory was vast, stretching from the Danube in Europe to China.

Says Rawlinson in *History of Herodotus*, “the Babylonian title of *Gimiri*, as applied to the *Sacae*, is not a vernacular but foreign title, and . . . may simply mean ‘*the Tribes*’” (bk. IV, appendix, note 1). Thus the Behistun Rock inscriptions identify the *Sacae* and *Gimiri* as one people, and the term “*Gimiri*” means “THE TRIBES.” What tribes? The tribes of Israel! The Cymry, Khumri, and Cimmerians were all the same people. The Cimmerians dwelt in the extreme western part of Europe and the British Isles, according to historians. The Welsh still call themselves Kymry or Cymry, and the national party of Wales is the “Plaid Cymru.”

After the northern kingdom of Israel was taken into captivity by the Assyrians in 718-721 B.C., they kept this name, and were known as the “Cimmerians,” a name derived from “Omri.” The *Sacae*, or Saxons, are included in this group of unique “tribes” which appears on the scene in the eighth century B.C., and later migrate to western Europe and the British Isles. They were known as Cimmerians, Cymri, and Celts.

Thus the mighty king Omri gave his name to the kingdom of Israel, composed of the northern ten tribes. These people continued to be called by his name throughout their migrations into Europe. They were known as the Cymri (Omri), and Cimmerians, Sakka, and Celts. His name may also be the origin of the name “America” and “American”!

#### **“Omri” and “Ameri”**

Notice again the similarity between the name of this king, “Omri,” and the name “Ameri,” the first two syllables of “America.” Why, they are virtually identical!

And what is even more interesting, is that the name “Omri” is also closely related to the “Omer,” which we have already discussed! They are both from the same root, *amar*, meaning to “heap up.” “Omer” means a heap, i.e., a sheaf, and “Omri” means “heaping.” In Hebrew, “Omer” is עֹמֶר, whereas “Omri” is עֹמְרִי.

Thus the name “America,” once again reveals this Hebrew connection. “Ameri” is merely another form of “Omri.” By putting this name with the Hebrew suffix “ca” for the second person singular, we discover that *America* in Hebrew simply means “Your Omri,” that is, “Your (kingdom or people of) Omri,” or, “Your Heap,” “Your Heaping Up,” a clear reference to God’s people, Israel – the land of “Omri.”

Is this mere coincidence? The names of peoples have a way of persisting down through history. Thus our peoples retained this ancient name, “Omri,” even down through generations of dispersion and exile from the Holy Land – ever since their original dispersion in captivity in 718-721 B.C.

But there is even more evidence. In Jeremiah, God says of Ephraim, the leading tribe of Israel that was dispersed, “For thus said the LORD: Cry out in joy for Jacob, shout at the crossroads of the nations! Sing aloud in praise, and say: Save, O LORD, Your people, the remnant of Israel. I will bring them in from the *northland*, gather them

*from the ENDS of the earth* – the blind and the lame among them, those with child and those in labor – in a vast throng they shall return here. They shall come with weeping, and with compassion will I guide them. I will lead them to streams of water, by a level road where they will not stumble. For I am a Father to Israel, *and Ephraim is My first-born*” (Jeremiah 31:7-9, Tanakh).

Notice! Ephraim is God’s “firstborn.” In Hebrew, the word for “firstborn” is *bekowr*, בכור and the word for “firstfruits” is also בכור (*bikkur*) – only the vowel pointing is different. The “Omer” is the *firstfruits* of the barley harvest in springtime. Ephraim is the *firstborn* of Israel. The firstborn is equivalent to the firstfruits. Thus the “Omer” has a direct application to the people of Ephraim – and it makes sense therefore that THEY would bear the name, today, of the “Omer,” the “House of Omri,” that is, “My Omer,” belonging to God, because they are His “firstborn” or “firstfruits.”

And so who bears this name, today, of all the nations of the world?

The United States of *AMERICA!* Who more rightly bears this name of God’s Firstfruits or Firstborn than the United States of “America” – “Your Omer” – God’s Firstfruits or Firstborn!

Thus an ancient prophecy was fulfilled.

“Now Joseph had a dream, and he told it to his brothers; and they hated him even more. So he said to them, ‘Please hear this dream which I have dreamed. There we were, binding sheaves in the field. Then behold, *my sheaf arose and also stood upright; and indeed your sheaves stood all around and bowed down to my sheaf.*’ And his brothers said to him, ‘Shall you indeed reign over us?’ So they hated him even more for his dreams and for his words” (Gen.37:5-8).

Joseph’s “sheaf” of grain was to be dominant. And truly it has! The leading nations of the world, in modern times, have been the sons of Joseph – Ephraim and Manasseh. But who can deny that of these brothers, Ephraim – the United States of America – has become the greatest – the true inheritor of the “birthright” blessing which Jacob gave shortly before his death in Egypt?

“America” is a wonderful name. And it depicts being the “firstfruits” of God – the most blessed of all the nations – which it certainly has become.

It’s time we understood our true heritage, and blessed the LORD God Almighty who gave us these awesome blessings, and role in world history!

## Chapter Nine

# Ephraim – God’s “Helmet!”

There can be no question as to which is the greatest nation on the face of the earth, today – and for most of the Twentieth Century. That great honor belongs to the United States of America. Britain had her heyday of glory and grandeur, and it was once proudly boasted that the “sun never set on the British Empire.” However, that proud boast has joined the proud boasts of ancient Nineveh and Tyre. The British Empire indeed was once great and mighty. But as the proverb says, “What have you done for me, lately?”

It would seem to a prudent mind that Biblical prophecy is primarily intended for the *last days* and the *end of the age* and the *time just prior to the coming of the Messiah!*

In his remarkable book, *End of Empire*, Brian Lapping wrote:

“Until 1947 – within the lifetime of half the world’s population – the Government of London ruled more land and people than any other government in history. In the thirty-three years between India’s independence in 1947 and Southern Rhodesia’s in 1980 the British Empire ended. . . . After 1980 the dozen territories that remained British – Hong Kong, Gibraltar and a scatter of tiny islands – were no longer an empire, merely the leftovers. Relative to its size, no great ship ever sank so quickly” (p.xiv).

Lapping points out that it was the Second World War and its enormous cost that compelled Britain to mortgage a large part of its worldwide imperial assets, in order to fight single-handedly from 1939 to 1941, carrying on the brunt of the war against Hitler during that time. Those were “the principal reasons why the British Empire ended so much more quickly than anyone expected” (p.8). The push for democracy and independence around the world, following World War II, was also largely responsible. In the Middle East, the British did not give up the trappings of imperial policy easily, or cheerfully. Says Lapping:

“The British in the Middle East, it was said, never saw the handwriting on the wall until they hit their heads against it” (p.10).

After the fall of Singapore to the Japanese in World War II in 1942, New Zealand and Australia no longer looked to the British for military aid or presence; they began to look to the United States as their principal ally. During the postwar years, the United

States in its desire to contain Communism, “wanted a junior partner to share the role of world policeman” (p.11). Britain, of course, was the logical choice. Today, however, the role of “world policeman” is considered too big a role for the United States and its allies to fulfill. More and more, modern nations including the United States appear to be willing to look to the United Nations as a final arbiter in the affairs of nations.

Since the end of the British Empire, the mantle of world leadership has swung to America. Whereas Great Britain was the dominant power in most of the nineteenth century, after Napoleon’s downfall, the United States has far surpassed every nation in power and prestige, authority and economic prosperity, from the middle of the twentieth century and beginning of the twenty-first century.

### *America in the Present*

Today, the gross national product of the United States is over \$9 trillion a year. In 1974 the U.S. gross domestic product was about \$1 trillion – just one ninth of its current size.

Today, with the fall and collapse of the Soviet Union, the United States is the world’s sole remaining true “superpower.” But signs of America’s growing strength began to be seen during World War I. In the First World War, the world was saved from disaster by American intervention. Writes Alistair Cooke in his monumental book *America*:

“It is true that the Allies could not have defeated the Central Powers without the intervention of the United States in the last eighteen months of a war which was to record an atrocious pile of casualties: more than half of Russia’s mobilized 12 million were killed or wounded; 5 1/2 million of France’s 8 million; more than a third of the 9 million recruited by the British Empire and Commonwealth; 1 1/2 million of Italy’s 5 1/2 million. When a whole generation of Europeans was maimed and faint with exhaustion, the United States had sent into the battle-fields two million brash and lusty young men. American industry, already geared to a scale of productivity that Europeans could hardly grasp, poured arms and materiel across the Atlantic” (p.303).

Says Alistair Cooke, “The rude energy of the Americans, both in the flesh and in the factory, was decisive against an enemy whose people were pinched by starvation, whose cavalry horses had no reserves of feed, whose military transport in the last few months rode on rubberless wheels.”

Prior to the beginning of World War II, the United States produced about one third of the world’s manufactured goods. That was more than double the production of Germany, and ten times the production of Japan, or roughly five times the combined production of Germany and Japan put together. When the Axis powers were defeated in 1945, the manufacturing production of the United States stood at over HALF of the world’s total manufacturing output! This proportion of dominance has never before in history been obtained by a single nation or empire – not even the Roman Empire, or the British Empire, at their peaks.

In the book *200 Years*, produced by the editors of *U.S. News and World Report*, celebrating America's proud bicentennial history from 1776 to 1976, we read that in the fateful year of D-Day, and the invasion of Normandy and "Fortress Europa," that U.S. manufacturing production in 1944 was staggering to the human imagination:

"In preparation for an all-out assault on Hitler's Europe, American industry poured forth an astonishing quantity of planes, tanks, ships, guns and ammunition – more than double the Axis powers' production in 1944. Companies that in peacetime had produced Kodaks and Quaker Oats operated plants turning out bombs and shells. More than half the workers in war plants were women, many of whom had never held jobs before. . . .

"Working night and day and using prefabricated sections, a shipyard turned out cargo ships in 17 days. On the assembly lines, women waged war on Hitler and Tojo with acetylene torches. Boeing's Seattle plant rolled out its last B-17 in April, 1945. . . . Wartime America produced nearly 300,000 aircraft, 87,000 tanks, 320,000 artillery pieces, 12,000 war and cargo ships, 65,000 landing craft, plus 42 billion bullets" (p.186-187).

Because of the arming of the allied forces by America, the "Arsenal of Democracy," when the invasion of Normandy, D-Day, June 6, 1944, finally arrived, the German troops were astonished to see the fruits of years of Allied planning. Say the authors of *200 Years* :

"The gray, hazy dawn revealed calm seas in the Channel; the meteorologists had been right. In their coastal emplacements German troops stared in stunned silence at the sight revealed to them – a panorama of ships spreading solidly, without a break, across the horizon. The armada totaled nearly 5,000 vessels, 900 of them warships, carrying 174,000 troops and over 20,000 vehicles" (p.288).

Never in the history of all mankind had such an armada been assembled. By comparison, the fateful battle of Midway, in the Pacific, involved a relatively modest 26 U.S. ships, and 125 Japanese vessels. The ships of the assembled armada on D-Day, June 6, 1944, by contrast seemed to fill the ocean, stretching all across the horizon – the vast majority of them built and produced in America! By the end of what Field Marshall Irwin Rommel had prophetically called "the longest day," as darkness fell and reinforcements continued to pour in, the Allies had successfully breached Adolf Hitler's "Atlantic Wall."

Truly, as Jacob had foretold as he neared death, the descendants of Joseph would be "a fruitful bough, a fruitful bough by a well; his branches run over the wall. *The archers have bitterly grieved him, shot at him and hated him. But his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob*" (Gen.49:22-24).

These facts should demonstrate the strong possibility – even certainty – that according to Biblical prophecy, it is the United States that presently fulfills the role of end-time Ephraim – policeman of the world!

### *What Difference Does It Make?*

But so what? What difference does it make?

Of all those who recognize that the lost ten tribes of Israel have been found in the modern world, and are primarily the peoples of the Anglo-Saxon Celtic race, found in western Europe, Great Britain, Ireland, the United States, Canada, and related peoples, why does almost everyone believe that the British Commonwealth is descended primarily from the tribe of Ephraim, and America is descended from Manasseh?

The answer is simple, revolving around two complementary facts. First, the original discovery of our modern Israelite identity came in the end of the nineteenth century and was popularized by the British-Israel movement in the early twentieth century. At that time, the British Empire was the greatest empire on earth and Great Britain's empire was more powerful than the United States. The Empire was still at its zenith, and America had not yet "grown up," and was just beginning to flex its muscles. Therefore, it was natural to assume that the Empire represented Ephraim, and America the brother who would "also be great."

The second factor is that once an idea becomes imbedded, it is very difficult to root out, even when new evidence is presented, or the relative powers of the two brothers undergoes subtle but profound changes! Although Britain was greatest at the end of the nineteenth century, and first part of the last century, this state of affairs quickly began to change after World War I, and was indisputable during World War II and afterwards.

Therefore, the truth about the identity of Ephraim was obscured, hidden from view, until after the mid-twentieth century – in fact, until our day, today – these END TIMES! Ephraim can now clearly be identified, if we are willing to look at all the new evidence, without preconditions, bias, or prejudice.

Some may think it really doesn't matter. As far as "pride" is concerned, it does not. It is merely a matter of correct knowledge and understanding. But true knowledge is very important, to understanding our destinies. Jesus Christ said, "You shall know the truth, and the *truth* will make you free" (John 8:32). God's Word also warns, "My people are DESTROYED for lack of *knowledge*. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being priest for Me" (Hosea 4:6, NKJV).

God also warns that there would be vast deception and spiritual blindness during the last days. The last church age, before the Messiah comes, is characterized by "blindness" (Rev.3:17-18), among other things. God also declares, many people are ignorant and will perish for one reason alone – they are "always learning and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth" (II Tim.3:7). And others will perish because "they did not receive the love of the truth that they might be saved" (II Thess.2:10).

### *The Prophecies in Review*

Let's take another careful look at the Biblical passages which relate to this question. Notice once again: Jacob foretold as he neared death, the descendants of Joseph would be "a fruitful bough, a fruitful bough by a well; his branches run over the wall. The *archers have bitterly grieved him, shot at him and hated him*. But his bow abode in strength, and *the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob*" (Gen.49:22-24).

Since Ephraim is the one who received the blessings of the "firstborn," these promises would be doubly applicable to *him*, not Manasseh. The fruitful olive branch is one of the primary national symbols and emblems of the *United States!* Secondly, the *United States* has as one of its symbols in its national flag and seal *a bundle of arrows*. Thirdly, it is the United States which is the pre-eminent superpower among the world's nations, whose military prowess and might have been "made strong by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob." Who among all the nations can compare with the United States in military might?

To be more precise – how does Great Britain compare? Today Great Britain is a mere shadow of its former glory. The glory of yesteryear has sunk into the ocean, along with the sunset. Although Great Britain today is a powerful and great country – nevertheless, no one who is fair minded and objective would claim that Britain exceeds the United States in power, prestige, economy, and influence. It simply does not begin to compare with the greatness, strength and power of America.

### *Moses' Prophecy*

In the book of Deuteronomy, we find the words of Moses regarding Joseph in the last days. He declared, "His glory is like a firstborn bull, and his horns like the horns of a wild ox [or, unicorn]; together with them he shall push the peoples to the ends of the earth; they are the *ten thousands of Ephraim*, and the *thousands of Manasseh*" (Deut.33:17).

What does the prophecy say? That Ephraim would rule over tens of thousands, and Manasseh over thousands? NO, that's *not* what it says! The plain sense of the Scripture is that Ephraim would far outnumber Manasseh, in population and military might.

Obviously, anybody can see that this Scripture is speaking of relative population, or relative size of the armies – troops – of Ephraim and Manasseh. Ephraim's military power would be much greater than that of Manasseh. Her population, also, would be much greater. That is the natural inference and plain teaching of this passage.

There can be no doubt that it has been the United States of America which has led the way in fighting oppression throughout modern times, providing millions of men and munitions to save the world's democracies from totalitarian dictatorships, beginning with

World War I, and especially World War II, Korea, Vietnam, the Gulf War, the fight against terrorism in Afghanistan, and the War against Iraq in 2003.

### *The Promises Fulfilled*

Joseph, while in Egypt, had two sons – Ephraim and Manasseh. Shortly before his death, Jacob – whose name was changed to “Israel” – blessed the two boys, and placed his own name upon them, and so they became two of the tribes of Israel. In effect, the tribe of Joseph became the two tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh – and so the 12 tribes of Israel became the 13 tribes of Israel. But since the tribe of Levi had no physical inheritance (their inheritance was the priesthood and service of God), there were still 12 tribes which were given physical inheritance in the earth.

Jacob blessed the two boys, placing his right hand on Ephraim, the younger, and his left hand on Manasseh, the older (see Gen.48:12-14). When he blessed them, he said his name would be named on them – that is, they would be like his own sons, two tribes of “Israel” (verse 16), and said that they would become “a multitude in the midst of the earth” (v.16). They would also bear the name of his father Isaac (same verse).

This prophecy was fulfilled in the Anglo-Saxons, a major branch of the Celtic tribes which migrated to Western Europe from the region of the Caucasus, where the northern kingdom of ancient Israel had been taken captive by the Assyrian Empire in 721-718 B.C. The “Saxons” bear the name of “Isaac,” Jacob’s father – Itsak, in Hebrew, became “Tsak” – the “Saxons” are the “sons of Tsak” – or, “Tsak’s sons,” as it were!

Notice! The prophecy goes on, pronouncing the attributes and destinies of these two lads. Jacob declared of Manasseh, the older boy, “He also shall become a people, and he also shall be great; but truly *his younger brother shall be greater than he*, and his descendants shall *BECOME A MULTITUDE OF NATIONS*” (verse 19).

In actual fact, the nations descended from the *British* and who remained in the British *Commonwealth NEVER constituted a MULTITUDE of nations*. At the very most, they comprised only the nations of Great Britain, Canada, South Africa, Australia, and New Zealand – although other Gentile nations also became part of the Commonwealth. Nevertheless, the British people themselves never became a “multitude of states” or “peoples.”

This verse is better understood if we think of the Hebrew expression, here translated as “multitude of nations”, as the Hebrew Tanakh has it – “plentiful enough for nations.” The word translated here as “multitude” is *melo* and means “fullness.” The word for “nations” – *goyim* – also means “people.” Thus Ephraim would become a “multitude” or “fullness of PEOPLE”! The verse could be translated as “his descendants shall become a fullness of people.” *Let’s not read INTO this what isn’t there or isn’t necessarily implied!*

However, the United *States* of America IS a “multitude or fullness of states,” or “peoples,” as it consists of *fifty* individual “states,” each with its own constitution, and contains a “multitude” of peoples of many nationalities living within its borders.

Remember, the word translated “nations” in this passage can JUST AS READILY be translated “states,” “groups,” or “peoples.” It does *not* necessarily mean sovereign nations! It can just as readily refer to *sovereign states* – such as Alabama, Georgia, Texas, Wyoming, Pennsylvania, Washington, Oregon, Idaho, etc., etc.!

Notice also! In this prophecy, Jacob said the descendants of *both* brothers would become “great” – but that Ephraim would EXCEL and eventually surpass his older brother! This was a DIVINE decision from the beginning, and the reason why Jacob deliberately placed his right hand on the head of the younger boy, instead of the older son. Since this was contrary to “nature,” as it were, and the younger was blessed above the elder, Ephraim was to become the inheritor of the BIRTH-RIGHT! He was to have a “double portion.” Remember, the name “Ephraim” itself means “double fruit”!

The majority of the British-Israel people and those who believe the lost ten tribes of ancient Israel have actually been found, today, still believe that it is Great Britain who is descended from ancient Ephraim, and is the inheritor of the “birthright” promises, and America represents Manasseh. I guess as the saying goes, “It is hard to teach an old dog new tricks!”

There is another old saying: “The majority is usually wrong.” The majority of the “British-Israel” people on this point are certainly wrong. They have not kept up with the facts, and have become blinded by “tradition.” Solomon wrote that we should not believe one side of a case, just because it is presented first, but wait until all the evidence is presented, before passing judgment. He said, “The first one to plead his cause seems right, until his neighbor comes and examines him” (Prov.18:17). Let the examination begin!

### ***Promises of National Greatness***

In the 49<sup>th</sup> chapter of Genesis, Jacob gathered together his sons, and told them what was prophesied to befall them “in the *last days*” (Gen.49:1). Therefore, this was a prophecy for the *END OF DAYS* – the “*end times*.”

Declared Jacob, “Joseph is a *fruitful bough, a fruitful bough by a well; his branches run over the wall*” (Gen.49:22). Fruitful means plenteous in numbers, bearing much fruit. Dwelling by a “well” means his land would have plenty of water, which is nourishing to productivity and wealth. What nation on earth, of all the Israelite nations, is the most “fruitful”? I don’t think I need to elaborate on that answer.

Jacob continues: “The archers have bitterly grieved him [other nations attack him], shot at him and hated him [who is the greatest but most hated nation on earth, today?]. But his *bow remained in strength*, and the arms of his hands were made strong

by the hands of the Mighty God of Jacob (from there is the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel), by the God of your father who will help you . . .” (Gen.49:22-26). What nation’s arms have been made powerful and strong, enabling it to conquer its enemies, in this END TIME age, which the prophecy refers to? *The United States of America!*

Notice carefully – the children of Joseph’s KEY attributes are listed here – and these KEY attributes would, of course, be MOST dominant in the tribe of Ephraim, which was prophesied to be greatest. They are 1) a vine of fruitfulness, having many branches; and 2) having a strong bow, that is, being a powerful archer, and subduing his enemies.

These characteristics, mentioned by their forefather Jacob, should be the identifying attributes of the children of Joseph. However, since Ephraim is the leading tribe of Joseph, the “birthright” tribe, *these “signs” or attributes should be primarily identified with HIM* – more so than with his brother Manasseh!

### ***Military Might of Ephraim***

Moses prophesied of both Ephraim and Manasseh, “In majesty he is like a firstborn bull; his horns are the horns of a wild ox. With them he will gore the nations, even those at the ends of the earth. Such are the ten thousands of Ephraim; such are the thousands of Manasseh” (Deut.33:17, NIV). Notice that in some way Ephraim outnumbered Manasseh 10 to 1. Certainly, Great Britain and Canada do not in any way outnumber the United States – whether in population, or in economic strength, or in military size and power!

The population of the United States is 280,000,000. The population of Great Britain is 60,000,000, and Canada, 30,000,000, or a combined 90,000,000. Therefore, the population of the United States is more than THREE TIMES that of Great Britain and Canada together! Certainly, the USA has fulfilled its destiny – the destiny of Ephraim – of being “*doubly fruitful*”! In fact, one might conclude at this time that it is triply fruitful!

The fact that Britain once ruled over India, and vast numbers in the world, in no way fits this prophecy regarding numbers. However, this numerical ratio of 10:1 could refer to *military numbers* – that is, the number of the troops who “gore the nations.”

According to the *World Almanac and Book of Facts 2002*, the United States had 16,353,659 men under arms during World War II – much more than Great Britain and its daughter nations. While the Korean War raged, the U.S. had a military of 5,764,143, far more than any ally. During the Vietnam War, again, the U.S. forces numbered 8,752,000 and the U.S. carried the brunt of the war. In 1991, during the Gulf War, the United States fielded 467,939 men under arms, and only lost 148 men in combat.

It is very significant, therefore, that in World War II, the Korean War, Vietnam, Gulf War I, and the 2003 war in Iraq, it was the preponderant numbers and power of the

American military forces that fought against the enemy nations. In the Gulf War, the USA had about 500,000 troops in the conflict against Saddam Hussein; Great Britain had about 50,000 – a ratio of *ten to one*.

The prophecy clearly speaks of the ten thousands of *Ephraim* compared to the thousands of Manasseh. In attempting to understand this ratio, it fits like a glove when we consider the relative *military* strength of the United Kingdom versus the United States. Population-wise, America is obviously “doubly fruitful,” but does not out-number Great Britain by 10 to 1. (However, it is a fact that the United States does out-number Canada (western Manasseh) by a factor close to ten to one, with a population of 280 million compared to 30 million!

Obviously, it goes without saying that the reverse is not true. That is to say, Great Britain, Canada, and Australia *combined* do not even come close to outnumbering the United States in population, or in soldiers, or in economic power and strength!

### ***Ephraim – God’s “Helmet”***

God’s Word says very strongly that Ephraim was to become a mighty military power. In the book of Psalms, God prophesied, “Gilead is Mine, Manasseh is Mine; *Ephraim also is the HELMET for My head*” (Psalm 108:8). “Ephraim is my helmet,” says the New International Version. “Ephraim is the *strength* of my head,” says the King James Version. The Hebrew word is *maoz* and literally means, “a fortified place, force, fortress, rock, strength, strong, defense, stronghold.”

In Psalm 60:7, God says, “Ephraim also is the strength of my head” (KJV). The New King James has it, “Ephraim also is the *helmet* [lit., “protection’] for My head.”

Notice that here again it is EPHRAIM whom God associates with military power, strength, compares to a fortress, as being powerful in defense and as being a mighty stronghold – a SUPERPOWER! He even refers to Ephraim as being His own *helmet*, as a nation He uses to protect His “head” – His own government.

As Judah is the tribe He uses for government (“the sceptre shall not depart from Judah” – Gen.49:10; I Chron.5:2), so it is that Ephraim is to be the protector of Judah. Today, Judah is primarily located in *Israel!* And which among the nations is the most loyal, faithful SUPPORTER of the state of Israel?

Another allusion to the connection between Judah and Ephraim – the state of Israel and America – is found in the book of Zechariah. God says, “For I have bent Judah, My bow, fitted the bow with Ephraim, and raised up your sons, O Zion, against your sons, O Greece, and made you like the sword of a mighty man” (Zech.9:13). The Lord compares Judah to His bow, and Ephraim to His *arrows* (again, only the United States has a bundle of ARROWS in its national emblem!).

Now, if we look at the United States, and compare it with the United Kingdom, to see which would be more likely to be God's "helmet," a nation He uses to protect and safeguard – which would our choice be? Would we choose Great Britain? Or the much more powerful United States?

Understand! God declared that it would be *Ephraim* which would be the greatest military power – not Manasseh. A comparison of forces contributed to the defense of freedom and liberty in World War II, Korea, Vietnam, the Gulf War, and the Iraq War, demonstrates the incredible power of the United States and provides ample evidence that the USA must be none other than modern Ephraim.

The Word of God says of this people: "*Ephraim* is my firstborn" (Jer.31:9). The firstborn was given a *double portion*.

God declared: "Ephraim is the *STRENGTH* of mine head" (Psa.60:7). The NKJV has it, "Ephraim also is the *HELMET* [protection, margin] for My head." A helmet was worn in battle, for protection of the head. Thus Ephraim was to be a mighty, powerful warrior people who would preserve the principles of liberty and freedom, and protect these principles, and peoples everywhere, from oppression and tyranny.

As we have already noted, the emblems of the USA are the fruitful olive branch (with 13 leaves and 13 olives) and a bundle of *thirteen arrows* in the grasp of an eagle. These are featured on our national seal. These emblems are connected with Ephraim, the "firstborn" of God, whose name means "doubly fruitful," and who was prophesied to be a warrior people, symbolized by the "arrows."

Remember, Almighty God said that Joseph would be "a fruitful vine, a fruitful vine near a spring, whose branches climb over a wall. With bitterness archers attacked him; they shot at him with hostility. *But his bow remained steady, his strong arms stayed limber, because of the hand of the Mighty One of Jacob*, because of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel" (Gen.49:22-24, NIV). Let's take another look at the "sign of the bow and arrows," that identifies Joseph, especially Ephraim.

### ***The Sign of the Arrows***

Arrows themselves are in Scripture *directly connected with Ephraim*, as opposed to Manasseh.

Says Almighty God, in the prophecies of Zechariah, "For I have bent Judah My bow, *fitted the bow with Ephraim*" (Zech.9:13). He says He has made Judah and Ephraim "like the sword of a mighty man" (same verse). Adam Clarke's Commentary says of this verse, "Judah is the *bow*, and Ephraim is the *arrows*" vo.2, page 785).

The *Amplified Bible* has, "For I have bent Judah for me as My bow, filled the bow with Ephraim as My arrow."

Says the *Living Bible*, “Judah, you are my bow! *Ephraim, you are my arrow!* Both of you will be my sword, like the sword of a mighty soldier brandished against the *sons of Greece.*”

How clear that the ARROW is connected squarely with the tribe of Ephraim! The Septuagint says, “For I have bent thee, O Judah, for myself as a bow, I have filled *Ephraim* [footnote, *filled “it with Ephraim”*].”

What nation has the arrows motif in its national seal? As we have seen, it is none other than the United States! The sign or emblem of the 13 arrows in our national seal pinpoints the United States as being identified as the tribe of Ephraim!

What nation has so many powerful “arrows” in its military arsenal? During the Iraq War, we were continually bombarded with news about America’s mighty arsenal of Tomahawk cruise missiles, J-dams, MOAB bunker busters, F-16s, F-15s, Apache helicopters, Cobras, Warthogs, our fleet of powerful aircraft carriers, B-52s, stealth bombers and fighters, etc.

God says of our people, in the last days, “And I will strengthen the house of Judah, and save the house of Joseph, and settle them; because I have loved them: and they shall be as if I had not cast them off: for I am the Lord their God, and I will hear them. And they shall be as the *warriors of Ephraim*, and their heart shall rejoice as with wine: and their children also shall see it and be glad; and their heart shall rejoice in the Lord. I will make a sign to them, and gather them in; for I will redeem them, and they shall be multiplied according to their number before” (Zech.10:6-8, LXX).

### ***End-Time Greatness of Israel***

The prophet Micah foretold that in the latter days the tribes of Israel, the sons of Jacob, would be dominant in world affairs, among the Gentile nations. We read, “Then the remnant of Jacob shall be in the midst of many peoples, like dew from the LORD, like showers on the grass, that tarry for no man, nor wait for the sons of men. And the remnant of Jacob shall be *among the Gentiles*, in the midst of many peoples, *like a lion among the beasts of the forest, like a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he passes through, both treads down and tears to pieces, and none can deliver.* Your hand shall be lifted against your adversaries, and all your enemies shall be cut off” (Micah 5:7-9, NKJV).

Consider the war against Iraq – the most recent manifestation of this Biblical prophecy. The United States, primarily, with the help of Great Britain, marched through Iraq like a powerful buzz-saw, treading down and destroying all who stood in their way or who dared to oppose them. The whole world watched in shock and awe. Within weeks the Iraqi army was crushed, fleeing for its life, and Saddam was in hiding. The victory was swift and relentless.

Jeremiah the prophet also foretold the end-time greatness and military strength of “Israel.” He declared of the “portion of Jacob”: *“You are My battle-ax and weapons of war: for with you I will break the nation in pieces; with you I will destroy kingdoms; with you I will break in pieces the horse and its rider; with you I will break in pieces the chariot and its rider; with you I will break in pieces man and woman; with you I will break in pieces old and young; with you I will break in pieces the young man and the maiden; with you I will break in pieces the shepherd and his flock; with you I will break in pieces the farmer and his yoke of oxen; and with you I will break in pieces GOVERNORS AND RULERS. And I will repay BABYLON [read, “IRAQ”] and all the inhabitants of Chaldea FOR ALL THE EVIL THEY HAVE DONE in Zion in your sight,’ says the LORD”* (Jer.51:20-24).

This amazing prophecy has been fulfilled in the incredible WAR against Iraq, the modern descendant of ancient “Babylon”! And the leader of end-time “Israel” in this conflict was modern Ephraim – the United States of America.

God declares of Israel, in the latter days, “His king shall be higher than Agag, and his kingdom shall be exalted. God brings him out of Egypt; he has *strength like a wild ox; he shall consume the nations, his enemies; he shall break their bones and PIERCE them with his ARROWS*. He bows down, he lies down as a LION; and as a lion, who shall rouse him?” (Numbers 24:7-9).

How descriptive of the United States of America! Israel was to have “strength like a wild ox” (Num.23:22). Balaam said of Israel, “Look, a people rises like a lioness, and lifts itself up like a lion; it shall not lie down until it devours the prey, and drinks the blood of the slain” (Num.23:24). More than any other tribe in Israel, this prophecy should refer to the “birth-right” tribe – Ephraim! This once again points to the United States as clearly being descended from Ephraim, the second son of Joseph.

Why don’t more people recognize this fact? Most have never really stopped to think about it, or to weigh the evidence. It should be perfectly obvious, however, when we search out and sift through the evidence carefully. Why don’t more people realize our national identity? Why are the vast majority of people completely blinded as to who we really are, and our true national ancestry and identity? They’ve never taken the time to really examine this issue. They are simply blinded by tradition, or perhaps pride. Truly, Satan the devil has “deceived ALL nations” (Rev.12:9)!

### ***Israel’s Lost Identity***

God foretold that in the end times, the descendants of Israel would no longer think of themselves as being of Israel. Because of their sins, they would go into captivity, which occurred in 718-721 B.C. They would lose their national identity, and think of themselves as being “Gentile,” just one of the nations. God says they would even turn to false systems of religious worship, including pagan practices.

Almighty God said through Hosea, “Call his name Lo-Ammi, for you are not My people, and I will not be your God” (Hos.1:9). But He went on, “Yet the number of the children of Israel *shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured or numbered.* And it shall come to pass, in the place where it was said to them, ‘You are not My people,’ there it will be said to them, ‘You are sons of the living God.’ Then the children of Israel and the children of Judah [the Jews] shall be gathered together” (Hos.1:10-11).

What nations, today, fulfill these prophecies? The descendants of the Celts and Anglo-Saxons! And the leading, most powerful Celtic, Anglo-Saxon nation, today, descended from ancient Jacob, is the United States of America!

### *A Messianic Son of Joseph*

The prophecies of Obadiah also pinpoint who the descendants of modern Israel are. Obadiah states, “The house of Jacob shall be a fire, and the house of Joseph a flame; but the house of Esau shall be stubble; they shall kindle them and devour them” (Obadiah 18).

Jewish commentators declare that modern day “Esau” is Italy, Rome, and Germany. Many descendants of Esau also still live in the Middle East, in Iraq, Jordan, and Turkey. How significant, therefore, it is that the United States and Britain were the primary countries that conquered Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Turkey in World War I, and then conquered Germany, Italy and Japan in World War II, and Iraq in the recent Gulf War! No other nations were capable of accomplishing such a feat of arms.

The Talmud says *only the tribe of Joseph* is able to defeat Esau on the battlefield (Baba Batra 123b). This therefore once again helps us to identify who is modern “Israel”, and more particularly, who is modern day “Joseph”!

The tribe of Joseph is very important. God says through the prophet Malachi, “Behold, I send My messenger, and he will prepare the way before Me. And the LORD, whom you seek, will suddenly come to His temple, even the Messenger of the covenant, in whom you delight” (Mal.3:1-2).

Rabbi Saadia Gaon (circa 900 AD) and Rabbi ben Ezra (circa 1080-1164 AD) said that this “messenger” sent to prepare the way of the Messiah is the “messiah” (“anointed one”) *son of Joseph*. That is, a son of Joseph will go before the true Messiah, preparing the way, and leading the way in rebuilding the Temple of God. In Genesis, referring to the tribe of Joseph, we read, “from thence is the shepherd, the stone of Israel” (Gen.49:24).

Who is this “shepherd”? Who is this “stone,” from the tribe of Joseph? This could be referring to an end-time shepherd of God’s people who announces the coming of the “stone” of Israel – the coming of the Messiah, son of David! Or, as a type, it could also refer to a strong leader of Ephraim, in the last days, who precedes the coming of the Messiah, son of David!

According to a Biblical commentary known as the Malbim (1809-1879), the “Messiah son of Joseph” was to head up the Lost Ten Tribes in the period known as the “latter days,” leading to their eventual reconciliation and reunification with Judah. This would mean that this “shepherd” or national leader would lead his people in the days just prior to the coming of the Messiah, son of David! This could have both a spiritual and a political application.

The Malbim (Meir Leib ben Yechiel Michael Weiser), commented on Ezekiel 37, saying:

“Our sacred sages had a tradition that in the beginning (of the End Times) would arise a Messiah [“anointed one” or deliverer] *from the house of Joseph* who will reign over the Ten Tribes. He will wage wars and all of Israel will be gathered together under his banner. [This will continue] until later on, a descendant of David will appear and he will reign over them. . . .

“A transformation will take place. The Ten Tribes and the stick of Joseph will draw themselves closer unto the stick of Judah, and this too will be through the agency of a Prophet and by miracles.”

Could this be a prophecy of President George Bush, a son of Joseph, leader of the tribe of Ephraim? Will he become involved in reconciling Ephraim and Judah – the United States and modern “Israel”? Is this why he and Ariel Sharon have a very good working relationship, compared to other political leaders?

The unity between the United States and “Israel,” the tribe of Judah in the Middle East, has never been so strong as it is between George Bush and Ariel Sharon. Although they have some differences, because of the Palestinian problem, and the hatred of the Arabs for Israel, will they yet come together to accomplish “a miracle” in the Middle East – and bring temporary “peace”? Will they also fulfill the prophecy of Haggai, who says that in the latter days the “House of God,” His Temple, will be rebuilt in Jerusalem?

Haggai declares, “Now therefore thus says the LORD of hosts: Consider how you have fared. You have sown much, and harvested little; you eat, but you never have enough; you drink, but you never have your fill; you clothe yourselves, but no one is warm; and you that earn wages earn wages to put them into a bag with holes. Thus says the LORD of hosts: Consider how you have fared. Go up to the hills and bring wood and BUILD THE HOUSE, so that I may take pleasure in it and be honored, says the LORD” (Haggai 1:5-8, NRSV). Will God’s House be rebuilt soon? Will these men have a part in it? We’ll have to wait and see.

### ***Reconciliation and Reunion***

During this epochal time, God said He would send His prophet Elijah – or one in the spirit and power of Elijah, to also help “prepare the way” as His messenger. Malachi

declares, “Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the LORD. And he will TURN the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, lest I come and strike the earth with a curse” (Mal.4:5-6). This verse has many applications. It refers to people during the end times returning to the true worship of God – the faith of their fathers. It refers to healing the breach in families between parents and children. And it refers to the Lost Ten Tribes of Israel rediscovering their true national IDENTITY – identifying who their fathers really were! – and accepting this truth with their whole heart!

This great enlightenment – this great revealing – will lead to a wonderful spirit of REVIVAL in the land – as our nations return to God, accompanied by a powerful arousal of the spirit of repentance, reconciliation, and reunification – Joseph with Judah, together, and all Israel with God, their heavenly Father. This “spirit of family reunion” will be finalized and fulfilled when the Messiah Himself returns, as was foretold by the prophet Ezekiel.

### *The Two Sticks*

God declares, “As for you, son of man, take a stick for yourself and write on it: ‘For Judah and for the children of Israel, his companions.’ Then take another stick and write on it, ‘For Joseph, the stick of *Ephraim*, and for all the house of Israel, his companions.’ Then join them one to another for yourself into one stick, and they will *become one* in your hand” (Ezek.37:16-17).

God continues: “Surely I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel his companions; and I will join them with it, with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they will be ONE in My hand” (Ezek.37:19).

Yair Davidy claims that the term “Ephraim” includes ALL the nations of the ten tribes which were carried into captivity, and later re-settled in western Europe. Although he thinks that England is primarily Ephraim, he claims that the term also applies to all the tribes which separated from the house of Judah.

This statement is true, on occasion. Since Ephraim was the *head* tribe, and *strongest* tribe, the other tribes tended to follow their lead. They were the leadership tribe. In the book of Ezekiel, God speaks of the regathering of the tribes of Israel, and tells the prophet, “As for you, son of man, take a stick for yourself and write on it: ‘For Judah and for the children of Israel, his companions.’ Then take another stick and write on it, ‘For Joseph, the *stick of Ephraim, and for all the house of Israel, his companions*’” (Ezek.37:16). The stick is called the stick of “Ephraim,” although it also included other tribes who were his companions or allies.

God says, “Surely I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel, his companions; and I will join them with it, with the stick of Judah, and *make them one stick*, and they will be one in My hand” (verse 19).

However, generally speaking, when the Scriptures speak of Ephraim, they are speaking of that particular tribe – not the other tribes of Israel – unless they are dwelling in or with Ephraim!

In the prophecies of the book of Hosea, when ALL the tribes of Israel are mentioned, they are plainly referred to as “Israel.” For example, in Hosea 5:3 they are clearly distinguished from each other. God declares, “I know *Ephraim*, and *Israel* is not hid from Me. For now, O *Ephraim*, you commit harlotry; *Israel* is defiled.” God warns, “Therefore *Israel AND Ephraim* stumble in their iniquity” (Hos.5:5). Clearly Ephraim here is distinguished from the other tribes of Israel, although both are being judged.

Thus during this end-time generation, the “stick of Ephraim” – represented by the United States, Great Britain, and their related countries – will become bound together with the “stick of Judah” – modern day “Israel” in the Middle East – and they will become ONE in God’s hands. The process has begun, and will grow in scope and magnitude until it is completed in the soon-coming days of the Messiah, Son of David – Yeshua Ha Moshiach!

The attack by Muslim terrorists on New York City and the Twin Towers, and the Pentagon, on 9-11, 2001, did more to cement the relations between the United States and the country of Israel, than any other act during modern times. We feel more “at ONE” with Israel than at any time in our history!

And the fact that American soldiers are now facing “suicide bombers” in Iraq, just as the Jews have been facing in Israel – once again strengthens our sense of oneness and mutuality and identity with each other! At this very moment, Palestinian, Syrian, Saudi and Jordanian terrorists are striking AMERICANS in uniform who did nothing to hurt them, but rescued and delivered the people of Iraq from the cruel tyranny of the regime of Saddam Hussein!

Persecution and virulent hatred from hostile quarters of the world is creating a strong bond between the sons of Joseph and the sons of Judah, in the world today. There is nothing like the camaraderie and friendships forged in the furnace of suffering together in warfare, terrorist attacks, and battle.

What does the future hold for our peoples? Where are we headed? What are the Biblical prophecies relating to Ephraim, and his fellows?

Let’s continue this gripping, exciting saga, and see what more the prophets declare.

## Chapter Ten

# Tribe of Dan – the Serpent’s Trail

One of the most interesting proofs of the locations of the “Lost Ten Tribes” of Israel, in modern times, involves the tribe of Dan. Dan, according to the Scriptures, had a tendency to leave “marks” wherever he went. His descendents had a strange proclivity of naming places – rivers, cities, and regions – after the name of their ancestor – “Dan.”

The name Dan means “judge.” He was the son of Rachel’s handmaid Bilhah (Gen.35:25). Jacob, when he was growing old, prophesied of Dan, “Dan will provide justice for his people as one of the tribes of Israel. Dan will be a *serpent by the roadside*, a viper along the path, that bites the horse’s heels, so that it’s rider tumbles backward. I look for your deliverance, O Lord” (Gen.49:16-18). The King James Version has this last verse, “I have waited for thy salvation, O Lord.”

A serpent, when it slithers and crawls, leaves a trail or track in the sand. Even so the tribe of Dan would leave signs or “waymarks” showing where it had journeyed. They tended to leave their “name” behind as an identifying sign! We read in Joshua: “But the Danites had difficulty taking possession of their territory, so they went up and attacked Leshem, took it, put it to the sword and occupied it. They settled in Leshem and NAMED IT *DAN after their forefather*” (Josh.19:47).

The Danites were the first tribe of Israel to plunge into idolatry. As they were seeking to occupy their land, they found it was too little for their population, and sent warriors forth to explore the surrounding territory. They found a Levitical priest of the Lord in the house of a man named Milcah, and enquired whether God would bless their endeavor. He replied in the affirmative, and they journeyed forth and found a city Laish dwelling securely and prosperously. They went back and urged their tribe to attack it, and 600 Danites sallied forth. But on their way, they set up camp in a place they named *Mahaneh Dan* (Jud.18:12), and then came to Milcah’s house again.

Notice what happened: “The six hundred Danites, armed for battle, stood at the entrance to the gate. The five men who had spied out the land went inside and took the carved image, the ephod, the other *household gods* and the cast *idol* while the priest and the six hundred armed men stood at the entrance to the gate. When the men went into Milcah’s house and took the carved image, the ephod, the other household gods, and the cast idol, the priest said to them, ‘What are you doing?’ They answered him, ‘Be quiet!

Don't say a word! Come with us and be OUR FATHER AND PRIEST. Isn't it better that you serve a tribe and clan in Israel as priest rather than just one man's household? Then the priest was glad" (Judges 18:16-20).

The tribe of Dan came to the city called Laish, "to a people quiet and unsuspecting, put them to the sword, and burned down their city. There was no deliverer, because it was far from Sidon and they had no dealings with Aram. It was in the valley that belongs to Beh-rehob. They rebuilt the city, and lived in it. *They named the city DAN, after their ancestor Dan*, who was born to Israel; but the name of the city was formerly Laish" (Judges 18:27-29, NRSV).

### *Characteristics of Dan*

Dan was born to Bilhah about 1737 B.C. (Gen.30:1-9). The Danites multiplied greatly during the sojourn of the Israelites in Egypt (Exodus 1:7-9, 12). When Moses led the children of Israel out of Egypt, about 1491 B.C., the tribe of Dan which accompanied him numbered some 62,700 men old enough to make war, 20 years old and upward (Numbers 1:38-39). Dan outnumbered Manasseh, the son of Joseph by almost 2 to 1, and outnumbered the children of Ephraim about 3 to 2. His descendants were very prolific.

When Moses gave his final blessings to the children of Israel, he said of Dan, "And of Dan he said, Dan is a lion's whelp: he shall leap from Bashan" (Deut.33:22). Notice! Dan would be a vigorous, warlike, tribe of warriors. He would not sit solitary, and be content but would "leap" forth, and journey forth, by leaps.

In the book of Judges, we learn another trait of this tribe. In the song of Deborah and Barak, during the time of the Judges, the song asks, "Why did Dan remain in ships?" (Judges 5:17). Or, "Dan abode in ships." The tribe of Dan was a mighty SEA-FARING tribe, which loved to sail the seas.

Some of these Danites became identified with the "Sea Peoples" of the eastern Mediterranean and plied the seas in search of trade and settlements.

When Moses led the children of Israel out of Egypt, with the kingdom of Egypt left in shambles, not all the people of Israel followed Moses into the land of Canaan. Some of the tribe of Dan sailed away into the Mediterranean.

Around the same time – about 1500 B.C. – a last flowering of megalithic culture occurred in the Mediterranean region. On the island of *Sardinia* in the Mediterranean Sea, a tower-building people sometimes called the *Shardana* emerged, and soon dominated Sardinia and then invaded Corsica and the Balearics, and ruled them for about a thousand years. Their name suggests that they were ancient Danites! They gave their name to the island, SarDINia, and their very name SharDANa, indicates who they really were. The term *sar* or *shar* in Hebrew means "chief," "prince," "ruler," from which such words as "Tsar," "Caesar," "Kaiser," etc., derive. The *Shar-Dana*, then, were very likely among the chiefs or princes of DAN!

The Shardana were a tribe of warrior-farmers – just like the tribe of Dan. Remember, Dan was prophesied to be a “lion’s whelp” – a warlike tribe. Say Alastair Service and Jean Bradbery in *Megaliths and their Mysteries* of the Shardana:

“They were farmers and warriors, and in each of their dominions they developed quite new sorts of monuments particular to each island. The designs and structural techniques appear to be rooted in the earlier European megalithic tradition. But their Giants’ Tomb, Taula, Navetas, Nuraghi and other forms are an impressive original finale to the long story of megalithic architecture. That story finally ends with the Roman conquest of Menorca in 23 B.C.” (p.19).

The “Tower people,” or Shardana, conquered Corsica around 1400 B.C., the same time Israel entered the Promised Land under Joshua. Their occupation lasted until 800 B.C., or possibly as late as 500 B.C. (about the same time Assyria took Israel into captivity, 718-721 B.C., or near the time of the Babylonian captivity of Judah in 587 B.C.).

### *Dan – A Serpent’s Trail*

In the division of Palestine among the twelve tribes of Israel, after the Exodus from Egypt, Dan received his portion in the very north. As Dan was unable to secure and conquer much of its inheritance, they felt constrained to migrate and conquer elsewhere, which is one reason they captured Laish and renamed it “Dan.” Their inheritance was near the cities of Tyre and Sidon, famous homeports of the Phoenicians. Dan, who “abode in ships,” made common concourse with the Phoenicians, intermarried with them, and established colonies throughout the Mediterranean region.

In the downfall of the northern kingdom of Israel in 718-721 B.C., the inland portion of the tribe of Dan was carried into captivity with the other tribes composing the northern Kingdom, led by Ephraim. This portion of Dan was taken into captivity beyond the Euphrates River, into Assyria, and when the Assyrian Empire fell in the seventh century B.C., they migrated through the Caucasian Pass, just north of the Caucasus. This was known as the land of the “Sarmatians,” and the pass was called the “Sarmatian Gate.” The name Sarmatia was obviously derived from the name Samaria, which was the capital of the northern kingdom of Israel. These people called themselves the Scoloti, but the Greeks called them Scythians. These people continued migrating to the northwestern part of Europe and eventually many of them settled in the British Isles, and are the “Scots” of today.

The chief tribe of the northern kingdom of Israel was Ephraim. Even after Ephraim was carried away into captivity, God’s heart still yearned for him. God said through the prophet Jeremiah:

“Is not Ephraim my dear son, the child in whom I delight? Though I often speak against him, I still remember him. Therefore my heart

yearns for him, declares the LORD. SET UP ROAD SIGNS, PUT UP GUIDEPOSTS. Take note of the highway, the road that you take. RETURN, O Virgin Israel, return to your towns. How long will you WANDER, O unfaithful daughter?" (Jer.31:20-22, NIV).

As the Israelites migrated through Europe, they fulfilled this prophecy, and left "ROAD SIGNS" and "GUIDEPOSTS" along the way, so that we can trace their route. The chief tribe to do this was Dan, because of their proclivity to leave the name of their ancestor "Dan" everywhere they went.

In Hebrew there are no vowels, so the name Dan is written DN, or its Hebrew equivalent. Thus words like Dan, Din, Don, Dun, Den, or Dn, correspond to the name of Dan.

Just west of the Black Sea, ancient geographers designated a region by the name of Moesia, which means the land of the people of "Moses." These people revered a person whom they called Zal-moxis. "Zal" signifies "chief," so this person, "chief Moxis" or "leader Moxis" was actually "chief MOSES," the man of God who led Israel to the promised land, and whom these people remembered as their original leader. The tribe of Dan also passed through this region, and the surrounding territory, leaving its name in Mace-DON-ia, and the Dar-DAN-elles, and to the north by the river DAN-ube. In the territory of Sarmatia (or Samaria, meaning the Israelites), were located the rivers DN-ieper, DN-iester, and the DON.

J. H. Allen in *Judah's Sceptre and Joseph's Birthright* quotes Professor Totten who declares:

"There is no grander theme upon the scrolls of history than the story of this struggle of the Anglo-Saxons westward. The very streams of Europe mark their resting places, and in the root of nearly all their ancient names (Dan, or Don) recall the sacred stream Jor-dan river of rest – from whose hands, so far away, as exiles, they set out. It was either the little colony of Dan, obeying its tribal proclivity for naming everything it captured (Jud.18:1-29) after their father, or else the mere survival of a word and custom; but, none the less, it serves to TRACE these wanderers LIKE A TRAIL. Hence the Dan-ube, the Dan-ieper, the Dan-iester, the Dan-au, the Daci and Davi, the Dan, the Don, the U-Don, the Eri-don, and the THOUSAND OTHER dans and dons of ancient and early geography, down to the Danes in Dan-emerke, or 'Dan's last resting place'" (J. H. Allen, *Judah's Sceptre and Joseph's Birthright*, p.263-264, Destiny Publishers).

Denmark, the name of the modern country in Europe north of Germany, means, literally, "Dan's mark." It's people are called "Danes." In fact, because at one time Denmark ruled all the surrounding region, the whole region took its name from them – the ScanDINavian peninsula! Clearly, here are remnants of the people of DAN, who migrated westward overland from the Caucasus to their present location in northern Europe!

However, other Danites, who dwelt or abode in ships, and who associated themselves with the sea peoples of Tyre and Sidon, fled westward through the Mediterranean when northern Israel fell. Early Danites fled Egypt at the time of the Exodus, and migrated through SarDINia, and left their trail along the sea-coasts of the Mediterranean. Thus Dan, who was a “lion’s whelp” who would “leap from Bashan,” leaped all the way to Ireland, where historians explain that the early settlers were known as the “Tuatha de Danaan” – literally, the “tribe of Dan.” The Greeks called them the Danoi, the Romans called them Danaus.

In Ireland, today, we find their customary evidence – their place names – in abundance. Such names as Dans-Lough, Dan-Sower, Dan-Monism, Dun-dalke, Dun-drum, Don-egal Bay, Don-egal City, Dun-glow and Lon-don-derry, as well as Din-gle, Dun-garven and Duns-more, which means “MORE DANS.” Of course, the most famous Irish ballad of all time is the song, “Danny Boy.” The country of Ireland is replete with names which derive from the ancient patriarch of the tribe of Dan. The ancient Danites settled in Ireland, and many of them dwell in that land, today.

There is also a river Don in Scotland, and another in England. These countries, also, show the evidence of the presence or passing of the tribe of Dan, who migrated with the other tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel, especially the tribe of Joseph (Ephraim and Manasseh). Here we find such names – markers, or “guide posts” as God called them in Jeremiah – as *Dun-dee*, *Dun-kirk*, *Dunbar*, *Dunraven*, *E-din-burgh*, and *Lon-don*.

### ***Danites from Egypt!***

The Greek historian Herodotus reveals that some of the ancient Greeks actually came from Egypt, and that the ancestor of the Dorian princes in southern Greece was a certain “Danae, the daughter of Acrisus” (*Herodotus*, VI, 1, iii). The term “Dorian” apparently comes from the name of a city of Manasseh, in northern Israel, called “Dor,” near the Mediterranean coast. The Dorians were apparently Danites, of the tribe of Dan, perhaps mixed with some of the descendants of Manasseh.

The Irish word “tuath” means literally “a tribe” or “people.” These people were the tribe of DAN of Biblical fame! They came from the Greek “Danaans,” and were the same people as the tribe of Dan.

Says Diodorus of Sicily:

“They say also that those who set forth with Danaus, likewise from Egypt, settled what is practically the oldest city of Greece, Argos, and that the nations of the Colchi in Pontus and that of the Jews, which lies between Arabia and Syria, were founded as colonies by certain emigrants from their country . . .” (*Diodorus*, Bk. I, xxviii, 1-5).

### ***Stalking the Tribe of Dan***

Can we trace the journeys of the ancient Danites to their modern-day locations?

Did they go to GREECE, and eventually to Ireland, and the United States of America?

Writes W. H. Bennett, “According to the legends of ancient Greece, the people who founded that nation came from Egypt. Though the significance of this has been overlooked by historians, it should be noted that the time of the arrival of these people in Greece is also the time of the bondage of the Israel people in Egypt. Further, the ancient writers claim that these founders of the Greek nation were, in fact, Israelite refugees from the Egyptian bondage.

“Thus Hecataeus of Abdena, a writer of the 4<sup>th</sup> century B.C., tells us that the Egyptians decided to expel all the aliens living in Egypt and that some of these, under the leadership of Danaus and Cadmus, went to Greece, some to other places but the majority migrated to Syria (Canaan) under the leadership of Moses” (*Symbols of Our Celto-Saxon Heritage*, p.184).

Many of the ancient Greeks were Israelites. This fact is made quite clear from the history of the Jews written by Flavius Josephus, a Jewish priest, general, and historian of the first century. In his monumental *Antiquities of the Jews*, Josephus records a letter written by the Lacedemonian Greeks to the Jews in which they express their kinship to the Jews. Their seal, that of the *tribe of Dan*, was affixed to the epistle – an eagle with a dragon (serpent) in its claws! Josephus quotes the letter as follows:

“AREUS, KING OF THE LACEDEMONIANS, TO ONIAS,  
SENDETH GREETINGS

“We have met with a certain writing, whereby we have discovered that both the Jews and the Lacedemonians are of ONE STOCK, and are derived from the KINDRED OF ABRAHAM. It is but just, therefore, that you, WHO ARE OUR BRETHREN, should send to us about any of your concerns as you please. We will also do the same thing, and esteem your concerns as our own, and will look upon our concerns as in common with yours. . . . This letter is four-square; and the *SEAL IS AN EAGLE, WITH A DRAGON IN HIS CLAWS*” (*Antiquities of the Jews*, XII, 4, 10).

Says W. H. Bennett, “From an heraldic viewpoint, this letter of the Lacedemonian King is very interesting for, in addition to stating that the Lacedemonians (Greeks) were brethren of the Jews and descended from Abraham, it had a seal on which appeared an emblem whose main figure was an Eagle, the emblem of the three-tribed Brigade of Dan. This is also interesting because of the fact that the Israelitish Brigade of Dan was composed of *three* tribes and that ancient Greece was settled by *three* related tribes. Further, the name Dan was an important one in ancient Greece. The leader of one of the first groups to settle there was DANus and the northern part of Greece is still called MaceDONia. Further, ancient Ireland was partly settled by a people called DANans who came from Greece; and it is interesting, too, that Scotland was anciently called CaleDONia. That there was a connection between CaleDONia and Greece is evidenced by the fact that the people of one of the three tribes of ancient Greece were called Dorics; that the Doric dialect was harsh and that the people of some parts of Scotland still speak a dialect referred to as “Broad Doric” (*Symbols of Our Celto-Saxon Heritage*, p.184-185).

### *The Lacedemonian Greeks*

The tribal emblem of the Danites was an eagle with a serpent in its claws. Notice that in the letter written by the Lacedemonian Greeks to the Jews in which they express their kinship to the Jews, the seal which was affixed to the epistle was an eagle with a dragon (serpent) in its claws – the very symbol of the tribe of Dan!

The reply of the Jewish high priest to the letter from the Lacedemonian Greeks, declared:

“Jonathan the high priest of the Jewish nation . . . to the *ephor*i and senate and the people of the Lacedemonians, send greeting:

“When in former times an epistle was brought to Onias, who was then our high priest . . . concerning the KINDRED THAT WAS BETWEEN US AND YOU, a copy of which is here subjoined, we both joyfully received the epistle . . . because we were well satisfied about it from the SACRED WRITINGS, yet did not we think fit, first to begin the claim of this RELATION TO YOU, the glory which is now given us by you. It is a long time since this relation of ours to you hath been renewed, and when we, upon holy and festival days offer sacrifices to God, we pray to Him for your preservation and victory . . . . You will, therefore, do well yourselves to write to us, and send us an account of what you stand in need of from us, since we are in all things disposed to act according to your desires” (*Antiquities of the Jews*, XIII, 5, 8).

The Lacedemonians received the Jewish ambassadors carrying the letter kindly and made a decree of friendship and mutual assistance with the Jews, and then sent the letter to their Lacedemonian kinsmen.

In *Ancient Mythology*, Bryant relates that Stephanus Byzantium shows that Alexander Polyhistor and Claudius Jolaus also speak of a direct relationship or kinship between the Spartan Greeks and the people of Judaea (vol.5, p.51-52, 60).

During the time of Christ, the Jews knew that some of the Israelites who had long since been carried into captivity, had settled among the Greeks in the Ionian peninsula. The Jews were mystified by a statement of Christ that they would look for Him, but be unable to find Him (John 7:34). “The Jews said to one another, ‘Where does this man intend to go that we cannot find him? Will he go where our people live SCATTERED AMONG THE GREEKS and teach the Greeks?’” (John 7:35).

### *Ancient Irish History*

Clearly, some of the scattered, dispersed Israelites who had left Palestine centuries before had been “scattered among the Greeks.”

From Greece, then, the tribe of Dan – the Tuatha de Danaan – traveled by ship

through the Mediterranean Sea, and thence up the coast of Europe to Ireland and Scandinavia.

Early Irish history reveals that the first permanent settlers in Ireland were called “Nemedians,” after their leader, and were “of the patriarch, Jacob” and were “said to have come from the shores of the Euxine [Black] Sea” (Moore, *The History of Ireland*, Vo.1, p.63). Some of these descendants of Jacob, or grandchildren, migrated to Ireland about the time of a grievous famine that struck the Middle East in Joseph’s time, around 1707 B.C. That famine lasted seven years and struck the whole Middle East, and was “very grievous” (Gen.41:31, 54-57).

This was about the time the Nemedians entered Ireland, according to Irish history. The Nemedians dwelt in Ireland from 1709-1492 B.C., during the time most of the descendants of Israel were in Egypt. Shortly before the time of the Exodus, in 1491 B.C., the Nemedians were conquered by African sea-rovers called Fomorians, and a colony of them fled to Greece, where other Israelites and Danites had settled, after leaving Egypt. They later returned to Ireland, now known as the Firbolgs. They were the first people to establish royal authority over Ireland, dividing the land into five provinces, and ruled till about 1400 B.C.

At this time, after ruling about 30-40 years, a new tribe conquered the Firbolgs – called the “Tuatha de Danaan.” This tribe also dwelt in Greece, and then migrated to Denmark and Norway, and then to Ireland (Moore, p.60). The Tuatha de Danaan became the sole masters of the country. In time, they were dispossessed of the country by another group of Israelites – the Milesian Scots!

Says Moore in *The History of Ireland*:

“In process of time, the Tuatha-de-Danaan were themselves dispossessed of their sway; a successive invasion from the coast of SPAIN having put an end to the Danaanian dynasty, and transferred the sceptre into the hands of that Milesian or SCOTIC race, which through so long a series of succeeding ages, supplied Ireland with her kings. This celebrated colony, though coming directly from Spain, was originally, we are told, of Scythic race” (p.60).

This race arrived in Ireland about 1016 B.C. and ruled Ireland for many hundreds of years. They also settled the northern part of Britain, calling it Scotland.

These Milesian Scots came from Scythia and said they were originally from Egypt, and connected themselves with the children of Israel. Says Moore:

“Tracing this chosen race in their migrations to different countries, and connecting them, by marriage or friendship, during their long sojourn in Egypt, with most of the heroes of Scripture history, our Bards conduct them at length, by a route not very intelligible, to Spain” (*ibid.*).

The Tuatha de Danaan were of the tribe of Dan, of Israelite fame. The new tribe,

the Milesian Scots, were of the royal tribe of Judah – through his son Zarah. These Scots spoke of a “long sojourn” in Egypt, no doubt a reference to the centuries Israel spent in Egypt, from the time of Joseph till Moses, over two hundred years. Says Moore:

“A scheme of descent which traces the ancestors of the Irish through a direct series of generations not merely to the first founders of Phoenician arts and enterprise, but even to chieftains connected by friendship with the prophet Moses himself” (p.71).

Moore concludes that the Milesian Scots were of the same race as the three colonies in Ireland before them – that is, the Nemedians, the Firbolgs, and the Tuatha de Danaan.

“The Bardic historians themselves, who represent the Scoti to have been of Scythic descent and to have from thence derived their distinctive appellation . . . and to confirm still further the origin of the Scots from that quarter. It is added by the Bards that they were OF THE SAME RACE WITH THE THREE COLONIES that had preceded them; namely, the Nemedians, the Tuatha-de-Danaan, and the Firbolgs or Belgae” (p.74).

Additional information concerning the tribe of Dan is found in the ancient *Annals of Clonmacnoise*. We read of the Tuatha de Danaan:

“Upon them [the Firbolgs] came in the people called Twathy De Danaan out of Greece too. Being a Branch of the same stock that Firbolgs were of and were kinsmen. During the time of Firbolg, which was 37 years, there reigned in Assyria 3 monarchs. . . . Twathy De Danaan after they had spent much time abroad in learning necromancy, magic, and other diabolical arts wherein they were exceedingly well skilled, and in those days accounted the chiefest in the world in that profession, landed in the west part of Connaught. Forbolgs hearing of their coming made towards them, and meeting them in a great plain called Moytoyrey in Connaught, fought with them, where Firbolg was overthrown and one hundred thousand of them slaine with their said King Eochy McEirche, which was the greatest slaughter that was heard of in Ireland in one meeting” (*Annals of Clonmacnoise From the Creation to A.D. 1408*, 1627 edition, quoted by Raymond McNair, in an unpublished manuscript on “The Lost Ten Tribes of Israel,” p.149).

Meanwhile, the tribe of Joseph also migrated to the British Isles, and became dominant there. They became known as the “British.”

### **“A Covenant People”**

In Isaiah 49, a prophecy for the End time, God says, “Listen to me, you ISLANDS; hear this, you distant NATIONS” (Isa.49:1). This is a message to the scattered nations of the northern kingdom of Israel. God says to them, “In the time of MY FAVOR I will answer you, and in the day of salvation I will help you; I will keep you and will make you *to be a COVENANT for the people*, to restore the land and to reassign its desolate inheritances . . .” (v.8).

The Hebrew word for “covenant” is *Beriyth*. In Judges 8:33 and 9:4 it is used as a proper name – “Baal-Berith.” This means “Baal of the covenant.” The Hebrew for “man” is *Iysh*. If we take the Hebrew word which means “covenant,” and anglicize it, we come up with “Brit” – the British people, of course, are often called “Brits.” The term “BRIT-ISH” is literally, in Hebrew, “Covenant Man,” or “Man of the Covenant.” The people of God’s covenant, then, that are “in the islands,” who compose distant nations, far from the land of Israel in the Middle East, are the *British* peoples!

The people of Wales call themselves, in ancient Welsh, “Bryth y Brithan,” which means “Briths of Briton.” This means “The Covenanters” of “the land of the Covenant.” The earliest settlers in Wales and Southern England were the *Simonii* – the descendants of the tribe of Simeon!

The saga of the tribe of Dan, “a serpent by the way,” who left a tantalizing, fascinating “trail” of waymarks along his path of journey, is one of the proofs of the modern location and identity of the so-called “Lost Ten Tribes of Israel.” Dan, a remarkable people, a powerful people of farmer-warriors, and sailors, left their indelible imprint on ancient history, wherever they went.



***Dan’s Tribal Emblem***

The tribal emblem of the Danites was an eagle with a serpent in its claws. Jacob foretold, “Dan shall be a serpent by the way, that bites the horse’s heels so that its rider shall fall backward” (Gen.49:17). Notice that in this statement of identity, Dan is

connected with the motif of a serpent, and a horse.

Says W. H. Bennett in *Symbols of Our Celto-Saxon Heritage*, “The first object to which Dan is likened is definitely stated to be a Serpent. The second is implied, being mentioned in relation to the first. It is a Horse, or a Horse and Rider, the Horse usually being white . . . the *Serpent* and the White Horse remained the emblems of the Tribe of Dan” (pages 26-27). Later he adds, “When the newly-formed United States of America was choosing a national emblem, the *Serpent* was a serious contender for the position given to the Eagle. Further, the *Serpent* was the official emblem of several of the military and naval units of the United States Revolutionary Forces. Dan’s secondary emblem, a Horse, usually pictured as white and sometimes with a rider, was a favorite emblem of the Saxons long before their invasion of Britain” (p.47-49).

The emblem of the Eagle is also connected to the tribe of Dan. As the tribes of Israel came out of Egypt, they marched in brigades, three on each side of the Tabernacle. On the north side was the leading Tribe of Dan, with Asher and Naphtali with him. The tribes on the east side were Judah, the Lion tribe, with Issachar and Zebulon. On the west side was Joseph (Ephraim and Manasseh), the Bull tribe, with Benjamin. To the south was Reuben, whose symbol was a Man, with Gad and Simeon.

### The Serpent – a Symbol of the Tribe of Dan



Notice these creatures reflect three of the faces of the cherubim mentioned in Ezekiel, chapter 1! (Ezek.1:10). The fourth face, that of an Eagle, was connected to the tribes on the north of the Tabernacle, led by Dan.

Says Bennett, “The outstanding example of the use of the *Eagle*, the emblem of Israel’s fourth Brigade, as an emblem of the Celto-Saxon people today, is of course as the central and dominant figure in the national Arms of the United States” (p.75).

The serpent was the original emblem of the tribe of Dan. It is very prominent in the early history of the United States, showing a large influence of Dan in the nation. Thus the tribe of Dan also became associated with the United States. Thousands of Irish immigrated to the United States because of the Potato Famine in Ireland in 1845-1846.

Dan was also to be like a “lion,” a warlike tribe.

Although the serpent was the primary symbol of Dan, the white horse was its secondary symbol. Its primary symbol has largely been superseded by his secondary emblem, the horse, usually pictured as being white.

In Denmark, a white horse appears on the shield in the Royal Arms. The horse was a creature of war, and as such was fitting for this warlike tribe.

*These symbols of the tribe of Dan are also prominent as being among the significant emblems of the United States of America.* The bald eagle is the national symbol of the nation. The serpent motto or motif was prominent in early American history. The Irish have played a very important role in American history.

Yair Davidy writes in *The Tribes: The Israelite Origins of Western Peoples*, “There are about 60 million people in the world today of Irish descent though only around three million live in Ireland itself. *Most people of Irish origin live in the U.S.A.* as well as being numerous in Australia and the United Kingdom. In the past, whole tribes from Ireland invaded and settled on the west coasts of Wales, England, and Scotland in the period when the Anglo-Saxons and kin were invading from the east. . . . The Irish of today as recognized in Ireland and America have characteristics applicable both to DAN and to Simeon. In the U.S.A. the Irish dominate much of the Police Force; they are officious and inclined to violence . . . they tend to be religious, even superstitious, though this quality is mitigated by outbursts of profligacy; they can be poetical and mystical . . . they can also be hardy, tough, very brave and good fighters who enjoy fighting” (p.432).

The Kennedy family, and John F. Kennedy, former American president, are from Irish stock. Former president William Jefferson Clinton also appears to be linked to the Irish in his blood line, as he is genetically connected to the royal line of England which came through Scotland and Ireland.

Many of the tribes of Israel, including a large segment of Dan, settled in the United States, and their emblems are significant in the character and formation of our country.

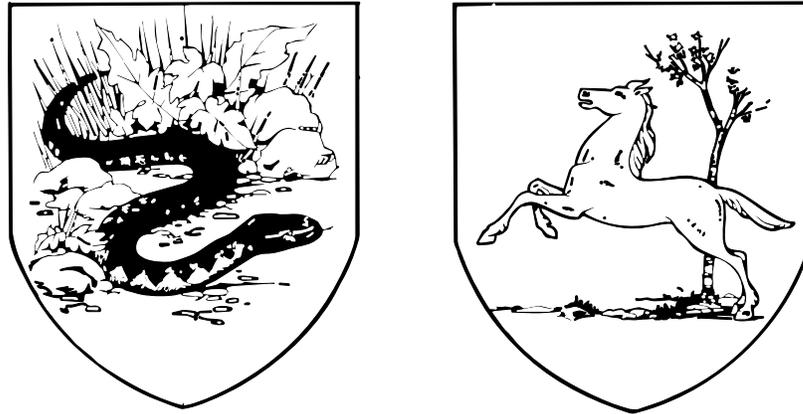
Dan, being a particular warlike tribe, and very aggressive, seems to fit in well with Ephraim, which is to be a dominant military power. The two tribes work hand-in-glove. The Danite presence in America, historically, and their influence, may be part of the reason God says Ephraim has “joined himself to idols.” The Danites were a tribe

prone to idolatry – very “superstitious.” With them, they brought the Roman Catholic religion, with its many icons, crucifixes, and celebration of such festivals as Christmas.

### *The White Horse*

One of the most intriguing symbols of the tribe of Dan is the white horse. It also figures prominently in Biblical prophecy for the end times. The horse, in the Bible, is a symbol of war. Since Dan was a war-like tribe, the symbol is appropriate.

The Adam Clarke Commentary discusses Alexander the Great, a historical



conqueror who was evidently of the tribe of Dan, being from Macedonia, a region settled by ancient Danites. Says Adam Clarke of Alexander the Great in his war against the Persian Empire:

“The conflicts between the Greeks and the Persians were excessively severe. Alexander first vanquished the generals of Darius, at the river *Granicus*, in Phrygia; he next attacked and totally routed Darius, at the straits of *Issus*, in Cilicia; and afterwards at the plains of *Arbela*, in Assyria. One can hardly read these words, says Bp. *Newton*, ‘the ram – which I had seen standing by the river, ran unto him in the fury of his power,’ without having the image of Darius’s army standing and guarding the *river Granicus*; and of Alexander on the *other side*, with his forces plunging in swimming across the stream, and rushing on the enemy, with all the fire and fury that can be conceived” (vol.2, page 597).

The commentary was on the eighth chapter of Daniel. The he goat represented Alexander the Great, attacking the Persians, represented by the two-horned ram. But prophecy is often DUAL! The prophecy of Daniel 8 has a stunning implication and direct reference to the END TIME!

### *END-TIME Israel!*

Let us now make a few comparisons, between the Greece of Alexander, and the United States of today.

The United States of America is the leading superpower in the world today. It is

located far WEST of the Middle East, even as ancient Greece was “west” of Persia. Our government and traditions come largely from ancient Greece, from whence we obtained “democracy” and all its institutions. Our government is patterned on that of ancient Greece and Rome. The tribe of Dan is very influential in our nation and government.

But, as we have demonstrated in other chapters of this book, our nation is predominantly of the tribe of Ephraim, son of Joseph, the holder of the BIRTHRIGHT promises! Our nation was prophesied to be great, to have “horns like the horns of a wild ox,” and to “push the peoples to the *ends of the earth*” (Deut.33:13-17). As the birthright tribe of Israel, God expects us to RULE in the world with justice and righteousness, bringing His LAWS to all mankind.

Indeed, America has been the “saviour” of the world during the twentieth century, as the bastion of democracy and the arsenal of freedom. American forces came to the rescue of Europe during World War I, World War II, and led the fight against Communist aggression in Korea, Vietnam, and led the charge against Saddam Hussein in the Gulf War of 1991.

But now let’s take a look at what is happening, today, on the world scene. Notice how this ancient prophecy is being vividly, starkly fulfilled right in front of us, in our exciting lifetime!

### *The End of Days*

George W. Bush, President of the United States, with Tony Blair, Prime Minister of the United Kingdom, in early 2003 launched an incredible war against Saddam Hussein, the brutal dictator of Iraq, who had been aiding and abetting terrorism around the world. The U.S. tried to obtain U.N. approval of its war against Iraq, and lost several months as it delayed attacking until March, 2003. When the attack came, the armed forces assaulted Saddam with unparalleled fury and fire, similar to the way Alexander the Great attacked ancient Persia! Even as Alexander’s forces rushed upon the Persians with FURY, so American and British forces rushed with FURY upon the forces of Saddam Hussein. “SHOCK AND AWE,” were the terms the military used to describe the campaign.

Notice the prophecy, again. The “male goat came from the WEST, *across the surface of the WHOLE EARTH, WITHOUT TOUCHING THE GROUND*; and the goat had a NOTABLE HORN between his eyes. Then he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing beside the river, and *ran at him with FURIOUS POWER*. And I saw him confronting the ram; he was moved with RAGE against him, attacked the ram, and broke his two horns. There was no power in the ram to withstand him, but he cast him down to the ground and trampled him; and there was no one that could deliver the ram out of his hand” (Dan.8:5-7).

Our military came from the WEST. Our forces traveled by sea and by air. They hardly “touched the ground” as they proceeded eastward to seize the offensive. In fourteen days, the United States forces had Baghdad surrounded on all sides!

As of the year 2004, the United States and Great Britain and their allies are occupying Iraq, hoping to pacify the country, put an end to terrorism, and even bring democracy to the region.

Ancient Alexander the Great had a personal grievance against Darius, the king of the Persians. Darius had endeavored to bribe his captains and had labored to induce some of his friends to assassinate Alexander. Says Adam Clarke, “Alexander, finding this, would listen to no proposals of peace; and was *determined never to rest* till he had destroyed Darius and his whole empire” (Clarke’s Commentary, vol.2, page 597).

Similarly, there is a personal element in the wrath of George Bush against Saddam Hussein. After the Gulf War, when his father, President George Bush, Sr., visited Kuwait, during the Clinton presidency, a plot was discovered, hatched by Saddam, to assassinate the elder George Bush, and was barely nipped in the bud. In retaliation, Clinton merely lobbed a few cruise missiles at a few targets in Iraq, and did virtually nothing.

It was, according to reports, an early desire of the Bush administration to deal with Iraq and to eliminate Saddam Hussein, and to exact retribution for the attempt to assassinate his father.

The Iraqis are in part descended from the ancient Assyrians. In Scripture, God also calls the king of the Persian Empire the “king of Assyria” (Ezra 6:22). Thus Alexander the Great attacked the king of “Assyria,” even as George Bush has attacked an end-time dictator of “Assyria.”

### ***The “White Horse” in Prophecy***

The symbol of the white horse, the *secondary symbol of Dan*, is also a symbol of a war-waging world power from the West!

In the book of Job we read that the horse itself is a symbol of war. God said to Job, “Have you given the horse strength? Have you clothed his neck with thunder? Can you frighten him like a locust? His majestic snorting strikes terror. He paws in the valley, and rejoices in his strength; he gallops into the clash of arms. He mocks at fear, and is not frightened; nor does he turn back from the sword. The quiver rattles against him, the glittering spear and javelin. He devours the distance with fierceness and rage; nor does he come to a halt because the trumpet has sounded. At the blast of the trumpet he says, ‘Aha!’ He smells the battle from afar, the thunder of captains and shouting” (Job 39:19-25).

The white horse is mentioned in the prophecies of Zechariah, chapter six. The prophet described four chariots led by horses – red, black, white, and spotted (Zech.6:2-3. These represented world powers at the four directions of the wind or the compass (verse 5). The black horse was connected with the north (v.6), the spotted with the south (v.6).

The Jewish Tanakh states that these horses and chariots “are the four winds of heaven . . . The one with the black horses is going out to the region of the north; the WHITE ones have gone out to what is to the WEST of them; the spotted ones have gone out to the region of the south; and the dappled [bay or red] ones have gone out . . .” (v.6). The footnote states, “Emendation yields ‘the bay [red] ones will go out to the region of the EAST.’” Notice that the white horses are connected to the western region of the earth.

Revelation 6 tells us of a similar prophecy for the END OF DAYS! The apostle John is told of the opening of the first four of seven seals of prophecy, covering the last days. The first seal is of a “white horse.” John relates, “He who sat on it had a bow; and a crown was given to him, and he went out conquering and to conquer” (Rev.6:2). The second seal was of a red horse; the third seal was of a black horse, and the fourth seal was of a pale horse. They also become involved in WARS in the end times (Rev.6:3-8).

Using the revelation of Zechariah 6, we connect the white horse with the WEST, the red horse with the EAST (red Russia, red China, etc.), the black horse with Europe, and the pale horse with the south – Africa and the Muslim countries.

The ride of the white horse from the west, the white horse being connected with the brigade of Dan, tells us that at the beginning of the END OF DAYS, the western world powers – the United States and Great Britain – would go to war, “conquering and to conquer” with a “bow” and arrows – a type of modern-day missiles, smart bombs, cruise missiles, etc. We have just witnessed that very ride of the WHITE HORSE OF REVELATION, as the United States and Great Britain have attacked Iraq with exactly those kinds of weapons!

Notice, however, that this horse *begins* “conquering,” but *does not finish the job* – he stops when there is still much left “to conquer.” The final job is left unfinished. And so it is in Iraq. Presently, the United States and Great Britain are bogged down fighting insurgents and terrorists in Iraq, and the whole situation threatens to escalate into Civil War. The flames of hatred against the West are being fueled also by pictures of criminal activities and atrocities being performed by American prison guards and interrogators against naked, brutalized Iraqi prisoners. It is very doubtful the United States and its allies will “finish the job” in Iraq before “declaring victory” and pulling out, leaving behind a shambles and a region seething with massive hatred for the West.

Nevertheless, the “white horse” of Revelation has begun its conquering ride through the last days! The white horse rode to victory in World War I, World War II, Gulf War I and, in 2003, the Iraq War. In Gulf War I the job was left unfinished. After the Iraq War, Saddam has been captured, but vicious and horrible attacks continue on allied troops and civilians by fierce terrorists. The future does not look promising.

Even so, we have indeed witnessed the ride of the first horseman of the Apocalypse – the “white horse” mentioned in the book of Revelation. This is *only the thundering opening salvo of the Four Horsemen of the Apocalypse!* From this time on, the world can expect a growing crescendo and cacophony of war, terrorism, and violence.

## Chapter Eleven

# Zarah and Pharez – the Red Hand

In Ezekiel 21, God declares, “And thou *profane wicked prince* of Israel, whose day is come, when *iniquity shall have an end*, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Remove the diadem, and take off the crown: this shall not be the same: exalt him that is low, abase him that is high. I will *overturn, overturn, overturn*, it: and it shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him” (verses 25-27).

Who is this “wicked prince” of verse 25? How does British royalty tie in with the “End of Days”? Could this prophecy pertain, in part, to the throne of Great Britain?

Does this cryptic prophecy apply to our day, today?

Bible scholars have pointed out that this passage historically referred to ancient king Zedekiah, who was overthrown by Nebuchadnezzar in 586-87 B.C., his children were slain before his very eyes, and he was transported to Babylon as a prisoner.

Zedekiah, the king of Judah, during its third conquest by Babylon, was indeed taken to Babylon, as a prisoner, and never restored as a king. From that time, there has been no legitimate king of Judah, of the house of David, reigning over the Jews – therefore, the throne was literally overthrown, in Judah, three times – in 604, 597, and 586 B.C. – just as the prophecy stated (verse 27).

### *The Original Fulfillment*

Ezekiel lived around 600 B.C., a contemporary of Jeremiah. He was prophesying of the downfall of the kingdom of Judah of that time. In his 21st chapter, God caused him to prophesy against Jerusalem, and the land of Israel (v.2). He prophesied the sword – or foreign invasion – would come against Judah (v.9-12). He said, “Let the sword be doubled *the third time*, the sword of the slain” (v.14).

This prophecy was literally fulfilled, when Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, came against Judah in 607-604 B.C., then again in 597-96 B.C., and a third and final time

in 587-586 B.C.

There has been no Davidic king sitting on that throne ever since – “it shall be no more, until he come whose right it is” – that is, the Messiah Himself! Thus the prophecy was literally fulfilled. From the time of Zedekiah, no king has sat on David’s throne *in Jerusalem*. For all practical purposes, it appeared to cease to exist!

But *did it really* cease to exist?

### ***David’s Throne***

In Ezekiel 21:27, God says of the throne of David, “I will overturn, overturn, overturn, it, and it shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him.”

Some British-Israel teachers and others claim that this passage refers to the fact that after God sent the nation of Judah into captivity, and punished the wicked prince Zedekiah, king of Judah, that he used Jeremiah the prophet to take the daughters of king Zedekiah to Ireland, where one of them married into another royal line of Judah, Prince Heremon, and thus David’s line was continued in Ireland. That was “one” overturn. The second occurred when the line was transferred, or overturned, and moved to Scotland. The “third” overturn was when it was moved from Scotland to present-day England. It will not be overturned again, says this same speculation, until the Messiah returns, whose “right” it is – that is, the Messiah will sit on the throne of His father David (Luke 1:32-33).

These three historical “overturns” may constitute another fulfillment of the ancient prophecy. Why do I say this? A mysterious prophecy regarding the throne of David may unlock the answer.

### ***A Remarkable Prophecy***

We read in the Psalms of David:

“I have made a COVENANT with my chosen, I have sworn unto David, my servant, *Thy SEED will I establish FOREVER, and BUILD UP THY THRONE TO ALL GENERATIONS*” (Psalm 89: 3-4).

Notice further, God says:

“I have found David my servant; with my holy oil I have anointed him: With whom my hand shall be established: mine arm also shall strengthen him. . . . My mercy will I keep for him for evermore, and MY COVENANT shall stand fast with him. His SEED also will I make to endure for ever, and HIS THRONE AS THE DAYS OF HEAVEN. If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments; if they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments;

then I will visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. Nevertheless my lovingkindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail. MY COVENANT WILL I NOT BREAK, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips. Once I have sworn by my holiness that I will not lie unto David. *His seed shall endure for ever, AND HIS THRONE AS THE SUN BEFORE ME. IT SHALL BE ESTABLISHED FOREVER AS THE MOON, AND AS A FAITHFUL WITNESS IN HEAVEN. Selah*" (Psalm 89: 20-37).

This is an awesome prophecy – and promise! God said to David that his children would never cease to exist – his descendants or generational offspring would continue throughout the ages, without ever being “cut off.” Furthermore, God promised Him – without any condition or reservations – that his THRONE would also endure forever!

This means clearly that the “throne of David” did not cease to exist with the overthrow of king Zedekiah! It had to continue somewhere on this earth! But where is it today?

Many believe that the throne of David was transferred to the British isles. There is astonishing evidence that David’s throne was established in Ireland by king David himself.

### *The Mysterious Ollamh Fodhla*

The most famous king of early Ireland was Ollamh Fodhla, whose name means “chief poet.” But “olam” also has a meaning in Hebrew – it means “forever.” Was this a king with a heritage which was to last “forever”?

Ollamh Fodhla was not only recognized as a *great poet* – but also as a wise sage and a great legislator. He established the “Feast of Tara,” a festival which lasted seven days, in the fall. He was a true father to his people and an able statesman. He also established a school of learning at Tara (the Irish form of “Torah”). He organized the nation for efficiency, and his governmental precepts have endured throughout the ages. His governmental body consisted of the king (administration), priests (judicial branch), and representatives from the common people (Congress, or legislative branch). Thus the three branches of modern democratic government go back to him, as the originator!

According to one venerated ancient Irish chronology, *The Annals of the Kingdom of Ireland*, the arrival of the Milesian Scots to Ireland occurred in the time period shortly after the Exodus of the children of Israel from Egypt, and the conquest of Canaan, about 1440 B.C.

According to Irish annals, Ollamh Fodhla was also a *great warrior-king*. He besieged the city of Tara, killed the king, and took the throne by force. Also, according to the annals, his sons “succeeded him one after another as kings of this land without any other coming between them, which good never happened to no other before him.” This mighty king, then, was indeed a blessed figure. But who was he?

According to *The Annals of the Kingdom of Ireland*, Ollamh Fodhla's reign lasted *forty years*, the same as king David's. Not only that, *they reigned at the very same time in history!* That is, David's reign, according to Ussher's chronology of the Bible, occurred from 1056-1016 B.C. Ollamh Fodhla's reign was from 1052-1012 B.C. – an almost perfect parallel! Both kings were noted as warriors, as poets, as wise legislators, and governors.

Was this mere coincidence? The likelihood of two kings, very similar in nature and ability and fame, living at the same time and both reigning for forty years, is extremely remote. Could Ollamh Fodhla be another name for king David? Is it possible that David visited Ireland during the latter portion of his life?

Some may object that Ireland is too far away from the Middle East, for David ever to have traveled there. However, David was close friends with king Hiram, of Tyre. The Phoenicians' fleets were famous for their excursions beyond the pillars of Hercules, at the entrance of the Mediterranean. It has been documented that the Phoenician-Hebrews of the time of king Solomon, David's son, possessed ocean-going fleets that traveled *around the world*, and even left evidence in New Mexico of their sojourn. They brought back tin, and other products, from as far away as Ireland and the British Isles, and even North America! I discuss this amazing fact in the September-October 2003 issue of *Prophecy Flash*, in an article titled "Did King Solomon's Fleets Visit America?" Further documentation of these facts can be found in such books as *Before Columbus*, by Prof. Cyrus Gordon; *America B.C.*, by Prof. Barry Fell; *Discovery of Ancient America*, by David Allen Deal; *The History and Future of Israelite America*, by Walter Baucum; and *The Lost Ten Tribes of Israel – Found!* by Steve Collins.

Therefore, strange as it may appear, there is really no reason to think that David, in his own excursions, could not have visited the island of Ireland where other branches of the Israelite peoples had already settled in the days following the Exodus from Egypt.

Interestingly, three miles north of Tara, is an Irish town named "Dowd's Town" – that is, literally, *David's Town!* Did king David visit Ireland? Dr. Herman L. Hoeh, historian, wrote in his *Compendium of World History*, volume 1:

"According to the Domestic Annals a consequent invasion of the Irish coast was planned to relieve the pressure from the drought. It occurred in 1016, near the end of the reign of king David of Israel. The invasion was successful. The Tuatha-de-Danaan [that is, Tribe of Dan – an Israelite tribe which abode in ships and settled Ireland in early times – see Judges 5:17] were forced to accept the new line of Royalty. . . .

#### ***"Did David Visit Ireland?"***

"Even to this day another of the names of the old site of Tara has been preserved: Dowd's Town – which means literally David's Town, or Settlement of David. The name is found attached to an area three miles north of Tara Hill and half that distance from the old Tara Castle. . . . Is it possible that

David king of Israel visited Ireland and Tara toward the end of his life, after the last rebellion in Palestine had been stamped out?

“Perhaps the enigmatic 29th chapter of Isaiah will take on new meaning in answer to this question:

‘Ah, Ariel, Ariel, the city where David encamped!  
Add ye year to year, Let the feasts come round!  
Then will I distress Ariel, And there shall be mourning  
and moaning’ (Jewish translation).

“That this prophecy refers to the House of Israel is made plain from the context. The climax of the prophecy is the time of divine intervention in all human affairs. But why should the ‘city where David encamped’ symbolize the center of government of the house of Israel today? It is not a fitting expression for Jerusalem and Mt. Zion, for David did more than encamp there. He dwelt and ruled there! Notice further the name Ariel. Here is a city with the name Ariel. It symbolizes the same people as does Mt. Zion in prophecy, but it is not Mt. Zion. It is only a place where David encamped. . . . Was there at Tara a famous king with the name of Ariel whose blood line runs today in the British Royal Family? Indeed there was. Of the four sons of Gede the Heremon, only the line of Irial (Irish for Ariel) continued to rule from Tara. His name was as rare in Irish history as the name David was in Jewish history!

“These scant evidences of history are more than mere coincidence. No other place on earth bears the names of Eber, of Dan, of David, of Ariel.

“At the time of the founding of Tara in 1016 an event occurred involving a beautiful woman who was ‘sorrowful to a harlot.’ The passage, quoted in the poem of Cuan O’Lochain . . . has never been fully understood. . . . But if David did visit Ireland, and if at the founding of Tara he gave his daughter Tamar in marriage to Irial, the son of Gede, then all becomes clear. Tamar had been violated by her half-brother. She left the scene of the unfortunate event in a torn garb and remained desolate – unmarried – in her brother Absalom’s house. See II Samuel 13. It was not until sometime after the death of Absalom that Tara was founded and that David was free of internal dissension to depart for Ireland, very probably to give his disconsolate daughter in marriage to the prince of the line of Zarah” (*Compendium*, pages 424-426).

### ***Pharez and Zarah***

It is very possible that ancient king David did visit the land of Ireland, and founded a town called Dowd’s Town or “David’s town,” and a college called “Tara” or “Torah,” during his lifetime. When he did so, he married his daughter Tamar into the line of Irish-Jewish nobility which had already migrated to that land.

David himself was descended from the Pharez line of Jewish kings. Who was Pharez? The origin of the Jewish kings is highly significant. In the days of Judah, the ancestor of the Jews, he took a wife named Tamar for his firstborn son Er. But Er was

wicked before the Lord and the Lord put him to death (Gen.38:1-7). Judah then gave Tamar to his second son, Onan, who refused to perform the duty of a husband to his wife, and spilled his seed on the ground. So God put him to death, also (verses 8-10). Judah apparently was afraid to give his third son, Shelah, to Tamar to wed her, so she dressed up and pretended to be a prostitute, and seduced Judah himself to go in to her (Gen.38:12-20). He gave her his signet ring and staff until he was able to bring her a lamb in payment for her services.

But when he returned, the “prostitute” had disappeared. Three months later, it was noticed that Tamar was pregnant, and Judah was indignant, and brought her to trial before the elders of that time. At the trial, she informed him that the man who owned a particular signet ring and staff was the father of her child – and he saw that it was his own! Judah was amazed, dumbfounded – and felt very guilty, since he had not given her his youngest son to marry and raise children by her. We read in Genesis 38: “Then Judah acknowledged them and said, ‘She is more in the right than I, since I did not give her to my son Shelah’” (verse 26).

This intriguing story is in the Bible for a reason. When Tamar was ready to give birth, she had TWINS. “While she was in labor, one put out a hand; and the midwife took and bound on his hand a crimson thread saying, ‘This one came out first.’ But just then he drew back his hand, and out came his brother; and she said, ‘What a *breach* you have made for yourself!’ Therefore he was named Perez [“breach”]. Afterward his brother came out with the crimson thread on his hand; and he was named Zarah” (verses 28-30).

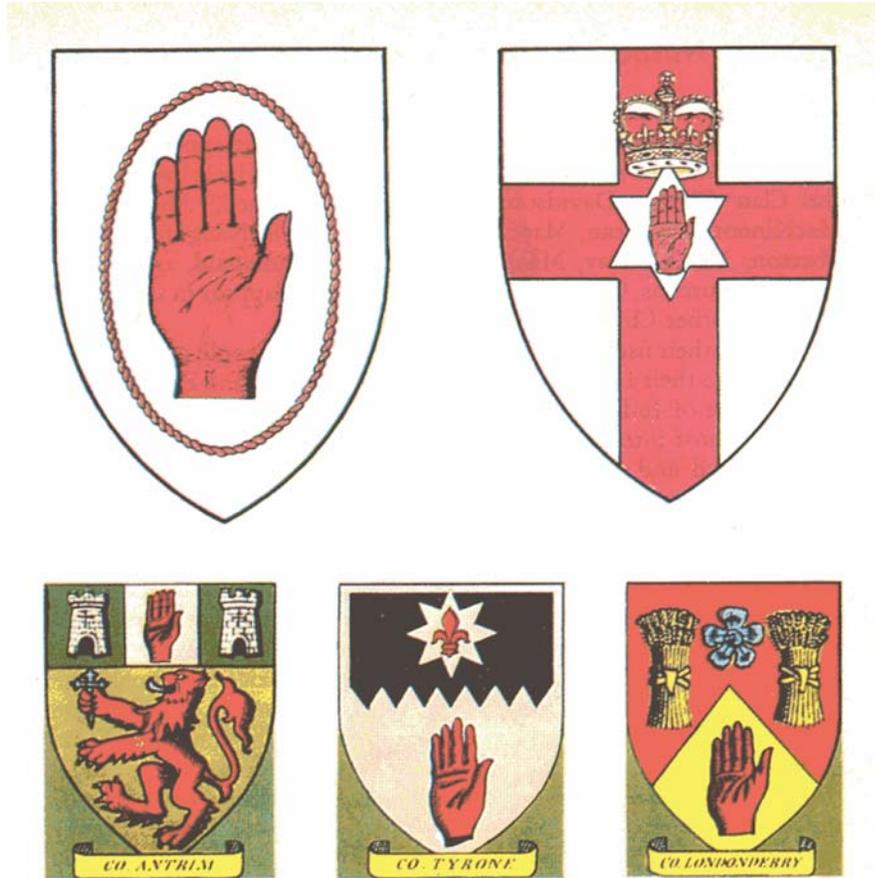
King David was of the Pharez line of Jewish kings. The descendants of Zarah, however, sired a line of powerful kings in exile, among the Jews who migrated to the region of northwestern Europe along with the other tribes of Israel.

### ***The Red Hand and Scarlet Cord***

History tells us that these Jews became identified as the Milesians, and their insignia was the “Red Hand” on their flag and coats of arms – a symbol which went back to Zarah himself, “who had the scarlet thread upon his hand” when he came out of the womb (Gen.38:30). For more information on this fascinating story, read *Judah’s Scepter and Joseph’s Birthright*, by J. H. Allen (Destiny Publishers).

Even today there is a ‘RED HAND’ in the flag of Ulster – Northern Ireland! Three of Ulster’s six counties have the Red Hand as part of their official emblems. The ancient and traditional emblem of Ulster was – and still is – a Red Hand encircled by a Scarlet Cord!

This is certainly a most remarkable fact and clear evidence that there is a connection between the people of Ireland and the ancient tribe of Judah. This “red hand” is found nowhere else but in Scotland and Ireland!



Notice that in the record of the birth of the twins, Zarah's hand was tied with a crimson cord, but Pharez came out first. This led to some disputation as to who was indeed the firstborn. Pharez was declared to be the firstborn, and the record of his descendants continues down through king David and his successors in the Middle East. However, the line of Zarah is not recorded in the Scriptures after the third generation! What happened? As these ancient genealogies were preserved with great care, it would indicate that his descendants were no longer in Israel but migrated elsewhere.

As descendants of Judah, their tribal emblem would still have been the rampant lion. As they were not considered the firstborn, it follows that resentment may have existed toward the line of Pharez. At any rate, instead of a tawny couchant lion, like Pharez, their symbol became a rampant RED lion. A second emblem which arose due to Zarah's hand being tied with a red thread when it poked out from the womb is a *scarlet cord*. A Red Hand surrounded by a Scarlet Cord is *unique* – it draws attention to the circumstances of the birth of Zarah, son of Judah!

Where is this emblem found, among the nations today? Scotland and Ireland!

Ancient records relate that Zarah's great grandson Calcol led a migration of fellow tribesmen westward to Spain, and founded a city which still bears the name of

their ancestor – Zaragossa. The river on whose banks they founded Zaragossa was the Ebro – from “Hebrew.” To the land itself they gave the name “Iberia” – the land of the “Hiberi” or “Hebrews.”

Later Calcol and others moved northward to Ireland, calling their new home “Hiberland” or “Hibernia” and the islands to the north the “Hebrides.” They founded the kingdom of Ulster “shortly after the year 1600 B.C., and *from that time until the present*, a matter of nearly 3,600 years, the emblem of Ulster has been a Red Hand circled with a Scarlet Cord” (W. H. Bennett, *Symbols of Our Celto-Saxon Heritage*, p.114).

In Scotland, also, the Red Hand is a racial emblem used by at least fourteen of the ancient clan chiefs. Thus they, too, point to their heritage as being descended at least in part to the line of Zarah, son of Judah. The Scots, however, did not migrate from Ulster. Their own records state that they came from ancient Scythia and settled the western part of Scotland about A.D. 501. An ancient document in the Register House in Edinburgh, called the Declaration of Arbroath, consists of a letter written by the parliament and sent to the pope in A.D. 1320. It states that the Scots came from Scythia, lived a long time in Spain, and came to what is now called Scotland “1200 years after the *outgoing of the people of Israel*” (*ibid.*, page 116).

Only descendants from Israel would date a historic document by an event which occurred to the people of Israel! Therefore, these ancient Scots – men from Scythia – had to be descendants of Israel! If we count backward 1200 years from 500 A.D., we come to 700 B.C. – the very time the northern kingdom of Israel was attacked by the Assyrian Empire, and carried off into captivity. At this time, many must have fled the oncoming Assyrian onslaught, and migrated to Spain and other Israelitish outposts in the Mediterranean world.

### ***David and the Line of Zarah***

If king David himself at one time visited Ireland, and gave his daughter to a descendant of the line of Zarah, to marry, such a marriage would have *healed this breach* which had occurred, and reunite the two lines of Jewish kings!

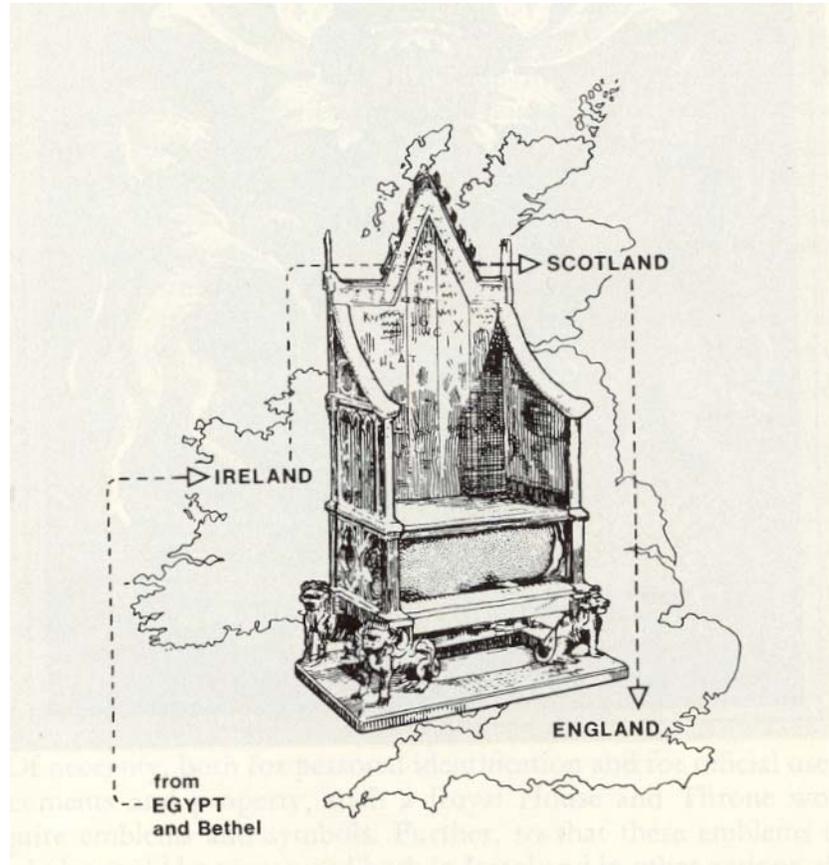
As we have seen, that is exactly what happened!

If this is the case, then when that throne was moved from Ireland to Scotland – “overturned” – that could constitute a second overturning. Then the “third” overturning could indeed have been the moving of that ancient throne from Scotland to Westminster Abbey, in London, England.

The British throne or coronation chair is still there, today.

Some might object to the theory that the British throne is related to David and constitutes David’s throne, since the descendant of David who intermarried with the Zarah line of Judah was a woman – either David’s own daughter, or one of Zedekiah’s

daughters. This, some say, would not constitute a true “throne of David” as the throne had to be passed down through the male descendants. Regardless of this point, however, it remains a fact that the two kingly lines were reunited by marriage, and the daughter of David carried his own blood-line.



Since the kingly line of David was therefore moved from Jerusalem to Ireland, and then was subsequently transferred to Scotland, and finally to England, this could well be another true explanation of the three “overturns” mentioned in Ezekiel – and there will be no more, till the Messiah Himself comes!

However, there is another way to look at the “three overturns” mentioned in Ezekiel, chapter 21. It involves an *end of days*, end-time, latter days fulfillment! It has tremendous significance for our days, in this current world situation, with terrorism exploding and the world’s concern for its own safety and security.

## Chapter Thirteen

# The Watchman for Ephraim

Who is warning the United States, Great Britain, and the English-speaking peoples about these horrific problems facing our world, today?

In 718-721 B.C., God cast the northern ten tribes out of His sight because of their idolatry. He then warned the Jews, of the kingdom of Judah, “I will cast you out of my sight, as I have cast out all your brethren, even the whole seed of Ephraim” (Jer.7:15).

God is no respecter of persons – or of nations.

Because of modern day idolatry, and our repeating the same kinds of sins, God is once again going to punish our nations and bring divine judgment upon us! But He never does this without first giving a warning. Therefore, He has placed “watchmen” in mount Ephraim to shout the warning.

Jeremiah declares, “For there shall be a day when the WATCHMEN will cry on mount Ephraim, *Arise, and let us go up to Zion, to the LORD our God.* For thus says the LORD; Sing with gladness for Jacob, and shout among the chief of the nations: *Proclaim, give praise,* and say, O LORD, save your people, the remnant of Israel” (Jer.31:6-7).

Notice that the watchman giving warning is to cry from *Mount Ephraim* – not Manasseh! From what nation has God’s warning message – His Word – gone out to the nations of the world during the last 100 years? From America – not from Great Britain.

The major source and origin of evangelism and missionaries, today, is from the United States. This is another *proof* that America is emphatically Ephraim – for only America fulfills this prophecy today.

Jeremiah foretold, “For a voice declares from *Dan*, and proclaims *affliction [or, “wickedness,” margin]* from *mount Ephraim*” (Jer.4:15). This means, a warning must go out in the last days, warning our nations of impending tragedy, calamity, and doom. “A voice from Dan.” As we have already seen, most of the tribe of Dan live in the United States, today – even more than live in Ireland!

Jeremiah was so shocked at the vision of the future, that he cried, “My anguish, my anguish! I writhe in pain! Oh, the walls of my heart! My heart is beating wildly! I cannot keep silent; for I hear the sound of the trumpet, the alarm of war. Disaster

overtakes disaster, the whole land is laid waste” (Jer.4:19-20, NRSV).

Why is this fate overtaking us? Jeremiah goes on, explaining that God says, “For my people are foolish, they do not know me; they are stupid children, they have no understanding. They are skilled at doing evil, but do not know how to do good” (v. 22).

Hosea the prophet wrote, “The days of punishment are coming, *the days of reckoning are at hand. Let Israel know this.* Because your sins are so many and your hostility so great, the prophet is considered a fool, the inspired man a maniac. The prophet, along with my God, *is the WATCHMAN OVER EPHRAIM*, yet snares await him on all his paths, and hostility in the house of his God. They have sunk deep into corruption” (Hosea 9:7-9).

Clearly, all these Biblical quotations point the finger to Ephraim as the land where the WATCHMAN, God’s servants, proclaim the warning message from God. That message is being hurled forth from the United States of America. Once again, this helps us to identify who, today, must be modern Ephraim!

### ***The Duty of the Watchman***

God said to Ezekiel, “Son of man, I am sending you to the children of Israel, to a rebellious nation that has rebelled against me; they and their fathers have transgressed against me to this very day. For they are impudent and stubborn children. I am sending you to them, and you shall say to them, ‘Thus says the Lord GOD.’ As for them, whether they hear or whether they refuse – for they are a rebellious house – yet *they will KNOW that a prophet has been among them*” (Ezek.2:3-5, NKJV).

God says: “Son of man, go to the house of Israel and speak with My words to them. For you are not sent to a people of unfamiliar speech and of hard language, but to the house of Israel . . . But the house of Israel will not listen to you, because they will not listen to Me; for all the house of Israel are impudent and hard-hearted. Behold, I have made your face strong against their faces, and your forehead strong against their foreheads. Like adamant stone, harder than flint, I have made your forehead; do not be afraid of them, nor be dismayed at their looks, though they are a rebellious house” (Ezekiel 3:4-9).

God declares: “Son of man, *I have made you a WATCHMAN for the house of Israel; therefore hear a word from My mouth, and give them WARNING from Me*” (Ezek.3:17).

What is this business about being a “WATCHMAN”?

In chapter 33 of Ezekiel, God explains: “Son of man, speak to the children of your people, and say to them: When I bring the sword upon a land, and the people of the land take a man from their territory and make him their watchman, when he sees the sword coming upon the land, if he blows the trumpet and warns the people, then whoever

hears the sound of the trumpet and does not take warning, if the sword comes and takes him away, his blood shall be on his own head. He heard the sound of the trumpet, but did not take warning; his blood shall be upon himself. *But he who takes warning will save his life.*

“But if the watchman sees the sword coming and does not blow the trumpet, and the people are not warned, and the sword comes and takes any person from among them, he is taken away in his iniquity; but his blood I will require at the *watchman’s hand.*

“So YOU, Son of man, *I have made you a WATCHMAN for the house of ISRAEL;* therefore you shall hear a word from My mouth and WARN them for Me. When I say to the wicked, ‘O wicked man, you shall surely die!’ and you do not speak to WARN the wicked from his way, that wicked man shall die in his iniquity; but his blood I will require at your hand. Nevertheless if you WARN the wicked to TURN from his way, and he does not turn from his way, he shall die in his iniquity; but you have delivered your soul [“saved your life”]” (Ezek.33:2-9).

You are hearing and reading that message right now. If you die in the coming holocaust, your blood is upon your own head – YOU are responsible – for you have been *warned!*

God thunders, “Ephraim [America] shall be DESOLATE in the day of rebuke: among the tribes of Israel *have I made known that which shall surely be.* The princes of Judah are like them that remove the bound [i.e., they move the national boundaries – they give up God’s Land to the Palestinians, trading “land for peace” – an act which God does not bless or sanctify!]: therefore I will pour out MY WRATH upon them like water” (Hos.5:9-10).

God says, “As I live,’ says the Lord GOD, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked, but that the wicked TURN from his way and live. *Turn, turn* from your evil ways! For why should you die, O house of Israel?” (Ezek.33:11, NKJV).

Sadly, very few at this present time are willing to listen to God’s warning message of judgment for sins! So God warns: “Make mention to the nations, yes, proclaim against Jerusalem . . . because she has been rebellious against Me, says the LORD. Your ways and your doings have procured these things for you. This is your wickedness, because it is bitter, because it reaches to your heart” (Jeremiah 4:15-18, NKJV).

### ***Political Corruption***

Today, God says of modern America, the leading tribe of the descendants of Joseph, son of Israel: “Ephraim is *joined to idols:* let him alone. Their drink is rebellion, they commit harlotry continually. Her rulers dearly love *dishonor* [Jewish tradition – “shamefully love, ‘Give!’”]” (Hosea 4:17-18). “Harlotry,” in Bible terms, means spiritual prostitution – false religion, counterfeit Christianity! “Dishonor” here means

avarice and greed – bribery and theft.

In other words, two great sins are mentioned here. The nation’s rulers “love dishonor” – that is, many of them are crooks. The politicians are greedy of gain, and they tell the people, “More taxes, more taxes!” They secretly receive ‘bribes’ and dishonest gain. They take “bribes” in the form of “political contributions” and “campaign finances,” so they can get re-elected to office, and sell out their office to the highest bidders. High government officials have close ties to big businesses.

Even while the national budget careens out of control, and the national debt skyrockets and explodes, politicians talk much but do little. They enact bad legislation, favoring companies who contribute heavily to their political campaigns.

Because of our end-time sins and transgressions, God says, “The pride of Israel testifies to his face. Therefore Israel and Ephraim shall *stumble* in their iniquity; Judah also stumbles with them. With their flocks and herds they shall go to seek the LORD; *but they shall not find Him*; he has withdrawn Himself from them” (Hos.5:5-6).

### ***Religious Idolatry***

The other major sin listed here is “harlotry” – being “joined to idols.”

Why won’t people find God when they initially seek for His help? The answer is that they are completely deceived by false religion which masquerades as Christianity. They are so deceived, by false teachers, that they cannot discern or understand the truth of God when they do hear it! This is because they don’t take the time to PROVE the truth of the things they are taught from the pulpit (see I Thess.5:21).

God declares to the people, “How can you say, ‘We are wise, and the law of the LORD is with us,’ when, in fact, the *false pen of the scribes* has made it into a lie?” (Jeremiah 8:8, NRSV).

Will and Ariel Durant, in their monumental work *The Story of Civilization*, discuss the origins of the modern forms of Christianity, saying: “Christianity did not destroy paganism; it *adopted* it” (vol.3, page 595). They state that “the Greek mysteries passed down into the impressive mystery of the Mass. Other pagan cultures contributed to the syncretist result. From Egypt came the ideas of a divine trinity . . . from Egypt the adoration of the Mother and Child, and the mystic theosophy that made Neoplatonism and Gnosticism, and obscured the Christian creed; there, too, Christian monasticism would find its exemplars and its source. From Phrygia came the worship of the Great Mother . . .”

Say Will and Ariel Durant, “*Christianity was the last great creation of the ancient pagan world*” (*ibid.*).

“Christian” churches *should* be pointing people back to the Bible, the Word of

God, and His laws and commandments. They should be teaching the truth about Jesus Christ, the Messiah, and His life and teachings. But the vast majority do not. They proclaim false messages because the people love to hear it. Isaiah the prophet foretold this condition. He declared, “This is a rebellious people, lying children, children who will not hear the LAW of the LORD; who say to the seers, ‘Do not see,’ and to the prophets, ‘Do not prophesy to us right things; speak to us SMOOTH THINGS, *prophesy DECEITS*” – that is, preach falsehoods, lies, and pleasantries (Isa.30:9-10).

Many modern churches been corrupted and hijacked by Satan the devil. Most mainstream churches are preaching a mixture of Biblical truth combined with false, pagan doctrines. They have blended Bible teaching with human philosophy, pagan tradition, and occultism – a syncretic mixture guaranteed to be *toxic* to spiritual health! It is a mixture of a little truth combined with deceit and deception from Satan’s “tree of death.” It may look good on the outside, but the fruit is poisonous – lethal – guaranteed to kill!

The vast majority of churches, today, teach about the “person” of Christ – but not the same doctrine He preached! Most churches therefore worship a “Christ” who is very different from the true Messiah of the New Testament. They ignorantly worship a false Christ, whom the apostle Paul referred to as “another Jesus” (II Cor.11:4) – a long-haired, Greek Adonis or Apollo with long hair and handsome features – rather than the true Christ! Write for our free article entitled “The Historical Jesus.”

Most churches today teach that the laws of God are abolished – the very laws that Jesus said would *never* be abolished. He declared, “Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets” – yet that is what they teach (Matt.5:17). He said, “For truly I tell you, until heaven and earth pass away, not one letter, not one stroke of a letter, will pass from the law till all is accomplished” (v.18).

The majority of Protestant ministers, today, claim that we are saved by “grace” alone, or “faith alone,” and there are no need for “works.” But the apostle James tells us, “faith without works is DEAD” (James 2:26). Most churches today reject the “law” of God, or *obedience* to the Ten Commandments – which Jesus Christ said we must obey if we desire to inherit eternal life! He declared, “If you wish to enter into life, keep the commandments” (Matt.19:17). Write for our articles on “Is Obedience Required for Salvation?”, “Is the Law Nailed to the Cross?”, “The Bible Teaching on Law and Grace.”

As a result of this false teaching our modern nations of Israel are mired fast in the quicksand of *paganism*! What could be worse? Faith has been sabotaged. The situation is so bad that the Messiah Himself prophesied, “And yet, when the Son of man comes, will he find faith on the earth?” (Luke 18:8).

The time has come to repent of these abominable sins, and to return to the TRUE MESSIAH – Yeshua Ha Moshiach – that is, Jesus Christ, Jesus the Nazarene! Unfortunately, most people are so grievously deceived, that they do not know they worship amiss, a pale imitation of the true Christ, and are being taught pagan

superstitions, false doctrines, and therefore gross error.

Jesus Himself declared, “You have let go of the commands of God and are holding on to the traditions of men” (Mark 7:8, NIV). He said to the Pharisees of His own time, who were similar to modern ministers in many ways, “Thus you *nullify the word of God by your tradition* that you have handed down. And you do many things like that” (Mark 7:13). Quoting Isaiah, He thundered, “This people honors me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me. *They worship me in vain*; their teachings are but rules taught by men” (Matt.15:8-9).

Isn't it about time we begin to STUDY the Bible, and learn what God REALLY wants us to do, how we should live, and how we should truly worship Him?

### ***The Sins of Modern Israel***

God says, “I have seen a horrible thing in the house of Israel. There *Ephraim is given to prostitution* and Israel is defiled” (Hosea 6:10).

Prostitution, pornography, sex clubs, lap dancing, adultery, are rampant as never before in modern America. Even children and teenagers get into the act. Condoms are distributed in grade schools and middle schools – not just high schools! School children in Massachusetts are taught all about sexual perversion and deviancy by lesbians and homosexuals in special classes designed to produce acceptance and perhaps even experimentation in “alternative” sexual practices.

The previous President of the United States, William Clinton, was guilty of not only adultery, but massive womanizing and engaging in risky sexual behavior. Not only did he have an ongoing affair with a White House intern, Monica Lewinsky, but Clinton has also been accused by many other women of fondling, forcing and seducing them, and even outright rape. His behavior has set a very low standard to be emulated by the American people, especially the younger generation, who seem to adore this irresponsible playboy and his nonjudgmental attitude when it comes to sexual behavior.

Hosea says: “They have dealt treacherously with the LORD: for they have begotten PAGAN [literally, ‘STRANGE’] children. Now a New Moon [month] shall *devour them and their heritage*” (Hosea 5:7).

“Pagan” children? Who can deny it? Just take a look at the antics of the bizarre young generation around us, today – wild music, spaced out on drugs, high on “Ecstasy,” with tattoos and rings and body piercing in private and not-so-private places. Tattooing was a practice of the ancient Egyptians, Africans, and pagans. God's Word says, “You shall not make any gashes in your flesh for the dead or tattoo any marks upon you: I am the LORD” (Lev.19:28, NRSV).

Modern young people engage in the most sensuous dances, grinding their bodies against each other to the throbbing of suggestive music. At high school dances today

young people dance the “Freak” – a girl bends down, while one boy thrusts his pelvis against her backside, and another boy dances in front of her, thrusting his pelvis toward her face – a more suggestively lewd sexual affront one can hardly imagine!

### *The Gay Agenda*

The following letter is a report from Dr. James Dobson on the moral calamity facing the United States and the modern world:

“I write to you today with a profound sense of concern and apprehension for the welfare of the family, and indeed, for the future of our nation. I do not recall a time since the beginnings of Focus on the Family, 27 years ago, when the institution of marriage faced such peril, or when the forces arrayed against it were more formidable or determined. Barring a miracle, the family as it has been known for more than five millennia will crumble, presaging the fall of Western civilization itself. This is a time for concerted prayer, divine wisdom and greater courage than we have ever been called upon to exercise.

“For more than 40 years, the homosexual activist movement has sought to implement a master plan that has had as its centerpiece the utter destruction of the family. The institution of marriage, along with an often weakened and impotent Church, is all that stands in the way of its achievement of every coveted aspiration. Those goals include universal acceptance of the gay lifestyle, discrediting of Scriptures that condemn homosexuality, muzzling of the clergy and Christian media, granting of special privileges and rights in the law, overturning laws prohibiting pedophilia, indoctrinating children and future generations through public education, and securing all the legal benefits of marriage for any two or more people who claim to have homosexual tendencies. These objectives that seemed unthinkable just a few years ago have largely been achieved or are now within reach. All that remains is for the movement and its friends in the media, the entertainment industry, the professions, the government and the military, to deliver the *coup de grace* to a beleaguered institution that was given to humanity by the Creator in the Garden of Eden. We in North America and Europe are not simply ‘slouching towards Gomorrah,’ as Judge Robert Bork warned in his best-selling book; we are hurtling toward it.”

Dr. Dobson warns emphatically:

“To cite another metaphor, the old earthen dam that has held and protected the reservoir of Judeo-Christian values and beliefs since the days of our Founding Fathers has been leaking for decades. Even the most casual observer has witnessed greater structural damage each passing year. But in recent weeks, the entire superstructure appears to have given way. What thousands of homosexuals in San Francisco have achieved represents the collapse of the rule of law, with no legal or governmental official being willing or able to stop it or provide more than a temporary stay. A revolution of striking proportions now looms before us.”

Dr. James Dobson concludes: “Given the outrageous decision in *Lawrence v. Texas* (the so-called ‘sodomy case’) and the disturbing rationale for it written by one of the most dangerous men in America, Justice Anthony Kennedy, there can be little doubt that the U.S. Supreme Court will soon ‘find’ a provision in the Constitution that guarantees homosexual marriage. If the people accept that decision passively, the issue will never be in question again. The institution of the family will have been destroyed” (*Family News from Dr. James Dobson*, April 2004).

Legally sanctioned gay marriages have already destroyed the institution of marriage in Sweden where half of all children are now born out of wedlock. If the trend continues, almost every child will have several moms and dads, six or eight grandparents, dozens of half-siblings, and will be shuffled back and forth from pillar to post among an ever-changing pattern of living arrangements. Huge numbers will be raised in foster-care homes.

Legalized homosexual marriages will lead inexorably to polygamy of all kinds. There will be no stopping the onslaught of pseudo-marriages where three men and one woman can marry, or five and two, or four and four – or whatever arrangement. Those who oppose this “new freedom” will be sneered at and looked upon as “hate-mongers” and “religious bigots.” Biblical Judeo-Christian values will be flushed down the toilet in a promiscuous, lawless, demonic new social order.

Marriages of homosexuals will spread like a wild-fire plague throughout the world, endorsed by the United Nations. The right to preach the true gospel of Jesus Christ and the Biblical laws of God which condemn these practices will be severely curtailed – or totally abolished.

Marriage between a man and a woman is authorized in the Bible. The Word of God said, when Eve was created, and He brought her to Adam, “Therefore a man leaves his father and mother and clings to his wife, and they become one flesh” (Gen.2:24). No other kind of “marriage” is really a marriage at all.

The family is the ground floor under all society, all of civilization. If it is weakened or tampered with, the whole superstructure of society is threatened. Marriage has been the bedrock of civilization for the past 6,000 years. Homosexual “marriages” threaten to destroy the traditional family, the key to stability in any culture. One might ask, in consternation and alarm, “What do the courts think they are doing?”

### ***Flagrant Homosexuality***

What has gone wrong with men and women, today? Where did they lose their common sense? Many in the younger generation seem to see nothing wrong with adultery, multiple sex partners, group sex, and homosexuality.

Are those who abhor homosexuality merely prejudiced? On the contrary,

evidence shows that the homosexual lifestyle is a way of early death – and often a painful one at that – not to mention its devastating effects on the morals and unity of society.

The typical lifespan of homosexuals is much shorter than that of the heterosexual person. In one study the median age of married men in the U.S. was found to be 75; for unmarried or divorced men the median age of death was 57; for homosexuals, if AIDS was the cause of death, the median age of death was 39; if the death had another cause, the median age was 42; the median age of death for lesbians was 44.

The homosexual lifestyle is *dangerous!* Even when AIDS is not involved, 3% of gays die violently; they are 116 times more apt to be murdered, much more apt to commit suicide. Some 18% of lesbians died of murder, suicide, or accidents – a rate 456 times higher than that of white females. Death and disease accompany the promiscuous and unsanitary sexual activity.

Says Family Research Institute, “Homosexuals rode into the dawn of sexual freedom and returned with multiple plagues that may very well destroy most of them. Those who treat AIDS patients are at great risk, not only from HIV infection . . . but also from TB and new strains of other diseases” (“Medical Consequences of What Homosexuals Do,” Family Research Institute, PO Box 62640, Colorado Springs, CO 80962-2640).

The typical sex practices of homosexuals are a medical horror story – from swapping saliva, feces, and/or semen and blood with dozens of different men each year, to filthy practices including drinking urine, ingesting feces, and rectal trauma, often while “high,” drunk, or in an orgy setting. The gay movement is very open about its desire to legitimize child-adult homosexual sex. They seek to legalize pedophilia worldwide and march in gay pride parades carrying banners urging abolition of barriers to man-boy sex.

The Word of God states unequivocally: “You shall not lie with a male as with a woman; it is an *abomination*” (Leviticus 18:22, NRSV). The law of God is very clear! There are consequences to such immoral, wicked behavior.

The apostle Paul declared, “For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and wickedness of those who by their wickedness *suppress the truth*. For what can be known about God is plain to them, because God has showed it to them. . . . So they are without excuse; for though they knew God, they did not honor him as God or give thanks to him, but they became *futile in their thinking*, and their senseless minds were darkened. Claiming to be wise, they became fools. . . . Therefore God gave them up in the lust of their hearts to impurity, to the degrading of their bodies among themselves, because they exchanged the truth about God for a lie. . . . For this reason God gave them up to *degrading passions*. Their women exchanged natural intercourse for unnatural, and in the same way also the men, giving up natural intercourse with women, were consumed with passion for one another. Men committed *shameless acts* with men and *received in their own persons the due recompense for their error*” (Romans 1:18-27).

It is a major ‘sign of the times’ that official same sex marriages began in Massachusetts May 17, 2004 – exactly 6,000 years since the time Adam and Eve were thrust out of the Garden of Eden for their disobedience to God! Gay or homosexual marriages became a virtual certainty when the U.S. Supreme Court ruled in July 2003 that gay couples could not be punished for having sex, thus repealing sodomy laws. Gay marriage is now established in America. It was exactly six thousand years ago when Adam and Eve were banished from the Garden of Eden for their transgression. What punishment will God send upon this generation?

America has become the New Sodom and Gomorrah.

God says our land will “vomit us out” because of our mounting heinous sin. God declares: “Do not defile yourselves in any of these ways, for by all these practices the nations I am casting out before you have defiled themselves. Thus the land became defiled; and I punished it for its iniquity, and the land *vomited* out its inhabitants. But you shall keep my statutes and my ordinances and commit none of these abominations . . . otherwise the land will *vomit you out for defiling it*, as it vomited out the nation that was before you” (Lev.18:24-28, NRSV).

God thunders to our perverse generation: “The look on their faces bears witness against them; they proclaim their sin like Sodom, they do not hide it” (Isaiah 3:9, NRSV). The NIV has, “they *parade* their sin like Sodom”!

### ***The New “Tolerance”***

Today, of course, we are all being told we must be “tolerant” of other people – in particular, other religions and homosexuals. But what if the other “religion” is based on violence, seeks world domination, and wants to force you to convert? What if a person or group of another race seeks to overthrow your own government, way of life, and also dominate you?

What if the homosexual subculture seeks to overthrow the heterocultural society and remake it in its own image, and seeks to change not only the thinking of society, but social behavior in its entirety? What if they seek *your children* to become a part of their deviant behavior?

It all begins with “tolerance.” When is tolerance no longer tolerance? Why is it deemed by authorities to be wrong to be “intolerant” of certain behaviors, groups, or factions in society?

Those who claim to seek “tolerance” often become the worst bigots and most intolerant of others.

That is why we have LAWS in society – to safeguard the well-being of individuals. The word of God declares, “Where there is no prophecy, people cast off restraint, but happy are those who keep the law” Prov.29:18, NRSV). The New King

James Version has it, “Where there is no revelation [prophetic vision], the people cast of restraint [KJV has “perish”; margin, “is made naked”]; but happy is he who keeps the law.”

Lawlessness in society today is “running wild,” and one can lay much of the blame at the new attitude of “tolerance.” Millions fail to see that old principle, “one bad apple spoils the entire barrel.” As the Scriptures declare, “A little leaven leavens the whole lump” (I Cor.5:6). Tolerance of evil in our midst leads to a whole society becoming contaminated with evil. Tolerance of one form of “sin” or wickedness leads to a whole onslaught of sins, wickedness, and evil. It soon boils over and spreads everywhere like a serious plague upon the land.

God says, “Like a muddied spring or a polluted fountain are the righteous who give way before the wicked” (Proverbs 25:26, NRSV). He thunders, “The unjust are an abomination to the righteous, but the upright are an abomination to the wicked” (Prov.29:27). There can be no compromise in the fight for morality and righteousness.

Make no mistake. We are at “war.” The cultural war and battle for men’s minds is no less important than fighting a war to defend our freedom as a nation. God says, “Righteousness exalts a nation, but sin is a reproach to any people” (Prov.14:34).

The problem with the “new tolerance” is it leads to utter destruction. It is not worth the price. Remember, God is not tolerant of deviant, disobedient, wicked behavior. Those who seek acceptance of their deviant behavior, and to reclassify what is “deviant,” are only seeking to enslave the rest of us to their vision of the future – to force the whole world to embrace their behavior until the whole world becomes “leavened.”

Alexander Pope in *An Essay on Man*, describes the ugly process vividly:

“Vice is a monster of so frightful mien,  
As to be hated needs but to be seen;  
Yet seen too oft, familiar with her face,  
We first endure, then pity, then embrace.”

We must fight against evil, or evil will destroy us. The buzz-word of “tolerance” has been taken out of context and misapplied by judges, leaders, educators, and politicians, leading to a proliferation of wickedness and evil in society. Christians are grieved and saddened at the process, while the wicked rejoice in their newfound “tolerance” and “liberty,” which is destroying the bedrock of society, the family, like termites eating away at the foundations and pillars of a house. Society is hell-bent on pursuing the “new tolerance” to its own soon-coming self-destruction.

It seems nothing will stop the runaway train as it roars into the night.

But individually, we can repent, and seek God, and stand among the righteous. We don't have to go down with the ship. Peter told the assembled people at Pentecost, in the year 30 A.D., "Save yourselves from this corrupt generation" (Acts 2:40).

Ezekiel described God's coming wrath because of growing scale of wickedness all around: "The LORD called to the man clothed in linen, who had the writing case at his side; and said to him, 'Go through the city, through Jerusalem, *and put a mark on the foreheads of those who sigh and groan over all the abominations that are committed in it.*' To the others he said in my hearing, 'Pass through the city after him and kill; your eye shall not spare, and you shall show no pity. Cut down old men, young men and young women, little children and women, but *touch no one who has the mark.* And *begin at my sanctuary*" (see Ezek.9:3-10).

One who sighed and groaned at the evil all around him was Lot, the nephew of Abraham. He lived in the city of Sodom, famed for its homosexuality "tolerance" and "life style." Peter writes, "For if God did not spare the angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to chains of deepest darkness to be kept until the judgment; and if he did not spare the ancient world, even though he saved Noah, a herald of righteousness, when he brought a flood on the world of the ungodly; and if by turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah into ashes he condemned them to extinction and made them an example of what is coming to the ungodly; and if he rescued Lot, a *righteous man greatly distressed* by the licentiousness of the lawless (for that righteous man, living among them day after day, was *tormented in his righteous soul by their lawless deeds which he saw and heard*), then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from trial, and to keep the unrighteous under punishment until the day of judgment – especially those who indulge the flesh in depraved lust, and who despise authority" (II Pet.2:4-10).

Are you sighing, crying, groaning at all the evil around you? Will you be one of those whom God will rescue, and protect, when His righteous judgments fall?

### ***God's Final Warning***

God says: "Though Ephraim built *many altars* for sin offerings [that is, has churches everywhere, is the most "religious" nation on earth], these have become *altars for sinning.*"

God continues: "I wrote for them the many things of MY LAW [the truths preserved in the Bible, the Torah, and God's commandments], but they regarded them as something alien" (Hos.8:10-12, NIV). How many Americans have any respect to the laws and Torah of Almighty God, and His covenant? How many cherish the Ten Commandments?

God warns, "Because your sins are so many and your hostility so great, the prophet is considered a fool, the inspired man a maniac. The prophet, along with my God, *is the watchman over Ephraim*, yet snares await him on all his paths, and hostility in the house of his God" (Hos.9:7-8).

The time of reckoning is here, *now!* The time has come!

***“The End Has Come”***

Ezekiel put the danger as plainly. He foretold, “Moreover, the word of the LORD came to me, saying, Also, son of man, thus says the Lord God to the land of Israel: *An end! The end* has come upon the four corners of the land. *Now is the end* upon you and will judge you according to your ways and will bring upon you retribution for all your abominations. And My eye will not spare you, neither will I have pity; but I will bring recompense for your evil ways upon you, while your abominations are in the midst of you [calling down punishment from a righteous God]; and you shall know (recognize, understand, and realize) that I am the Lord.

“Thus says the Lord God: Behold, *an evil is coming*, [an evil so destructive and injurious, *so sudden and violent, that it stands alone*, not as a succession but as] only one evil.

*“An end has come! The end has come!* [The end – after sleeping so long] awakes against you. *See, it has come!*

“Your turn (your *doom*) has come upon you, O inhabitant of the land; the time has come, the day is near, a day not of joyful shouting, but a day of tumult upon the mountains. Now will I shortly pour out My wrath upon you and finish spending My anger against you, and I will judge you according to your ways and will recompense you with punishment for all your abominations. And My eye will not spare, nor will I have pity. I will punish you according to your ways while your abominations are right in the midst of you. And you shall know, and understand, and realize that it is I the Lord Who smites you.

“Behold, the day! Behold, it has come! Your doom has gone forth, the rod has blossomed, pride has budded. Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness; none of [Israel] shall remain, none of their abundance, none of their wealth; neither shall there be pre-eminence among them or wailing for them. The time has come, the day draws near. Let not the buyer rejoice nor the seller mourn, for wrath is upon all their multitude. . . .

“They have blown the trumpet and have made all ready, but none goes to the battle, for My wrath is upon all their multitude. The sword is without and pestilence and famine are within. He who is in the field shall die by the sword, and he who is in the city shall famine and pestilence devour.

“But of them that escape shall escape, but shall be on the mountains like doves of the valleys, all of them moaning, every one in his iniquity’s [punishment]” (Ezekiel 7:1-16, *Amplified Parallel Bible*).

### ***The Duty of God's Watchmen***

The job of God's Watchmen is to thunder forth this warning! God Himself says to us, "Cry aloud, spare not. Lift up your voice like a trumpet and declare to My people their transgressions and to the house of Jacob their sins!" (Isaiah 58:1).

Despite our national sins, however, God loves our people. God pleads, "How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel? . . . My heart is changed within me; all my compassion is aroused. I will not carry out my fierce anger, nor will I turn and devastate Ephraim. For I am God, and not man – the Holy One among you. I will not come in wrath. They will follow the LORD; he will roar like a lion. When he roars, they will come trembling like birds from Egypt, like doves from Assyria. I will settle them in their homes, says the LORD" (Hos.11:8-11, NIV).

God says, "Indeed I heard Ephraim pleading: 'You disciplined me, and I took discipline; I was like a calf untrained. Bring me back, let me come back, for you are the LORD my God. For after I turned away I repented; and after I was discovered, I struck my thigh; I was ashamed and I was dismayed because I bore the disgrace of my youth.'

"Is Ephraim my dear son? Is he the child I delight in? As often as I speak against him, I still remember him. Therefore I am deeply moved for him; I will surely have mercy on him, says the LORD" (Jer.31:18-20, NRSV).

Will we heed? Will we get the message soon, and return to God?

Yes, we will – our peoples will return to God. But there will indeed be a time of punishment first. Will we repent? Most people will – but it will require suffering and punishment to bring them to that point in their lives.

### ***Who Are God's Watchmen?***

This very ministry, Triumph Prophetic Ministries, originates in modern "Ephraim."

This ministry, virtually alone, truly IDENTIFIES who modern Ephraim is among the world's nations! Our job is to tell our peoples who they are, and where they are going wrong, and what is to happen to them if they do not repent. Certainly, there are other ministries primarily in America warning about the moral collapse of our people; there are other ministers decrying the shocking avalanche of pornography, violence, crime, and immorality in our modern nations. There are others who warn about America's huge debt burden, and military and political blunders and short-sightedness.

But how many of them know *who our people are identified as in Bible prophecy? How many of them understand and thunder the FULL MESSAGE God wants His people to HEAR?*

### *What's In a Name?*

This brings to mind the statement by Dr. Herman Hoeh in 1959, as I sat in World History class, in Ambassador College, when he wrote my name on the blackboard (he didn't do that for anybody else's name). And he said, "That's a good name for a writer."

What does a person's name signify? In the Bible, God names people what they are. Abraham was "father of nations," Sarah was "princess of God," Moses meant "drawn out," and Jesus ("Yeshua") means "salvation." What does my name, given to me by my parents, and inherited in part from them, signify? Or does it mean anything? Could God have caused me to receive that name as a prophesy of how He would one day use me in His work?

Paul wrote in the book of Romans, "For the gifts and the calling of God are irrevocable" (Rom.11:29, NRSV). God determined ages ago how He would determine and use certain people – who He would call, and how He would use them in His work. "He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before Him in love, having predestined us to adoption as sons by Jesus Christ to Himself, according to the good pleasure of His will" (Eph.1:4-5, NKJV). "In Him also we have obtained an inheritance, being *predestined* according to the purpose of Him who works all things according to the counsel of His will, that we who first trusted in Christ should be to the praise of His glory" (Eph.1:11-12).

So it may be of interest to take a look at the name I was given at birth.

### *The Name "Dankenbring"*

I was born with the last name "Dankenbring." "Dan" in Hebrew means "judgment." "Ken" is a word meaning "knowledge." In Hebrew, it comes from *cohen* which means "priest." The priests were the ones who were to teach God's knowledge to the people (Malachi 2:7). Thus my name can be interpreted different ways. It can be as "bringer of knowledge of judgment." or "Bringer of knowledge to [or from] Dan" (the tribe of Dan).

One critic ridicules these things, saying I claim to be "the priest who brings judgment." That is not precisely true. Rather, my name can mean, in Hebrew, "the priest who brings knowledge [or a warning] of judgment," or, "the priest who brings [announces news of] judgment." I am not the "judge" and never claimed to be. God is the Judge – I am merely His *messenger, sent to warn* His people of His impending judgment – the days of reckoning which are fast approaching!

Gerhard Marx and Emil Schnee, two gentlemen of German descent, independently verified the meaning of my last name in the German language. Technically, they said, "*Danken* in German means 'thanks,' but the construction is backwards to normal German. *Danken-bring* means 'thanks for bringing' something." They went on, "This means your name says you are a 'bringer of good news,' because

those who brought *bad* news in ancient times were not appreciated.”

“So your name says you are “a bringer of good news.”

The name “Dankenbring” is a German construct – not really German, but a name my ancestors took while living in Austria, under the reign of Queen Teresa, who forced Jewish citizens to take Germanic names. This suggests that my lineage is Jewish. Very likely I am descended through the tribe of Levi, and am of the descendants of Aaron, since “ken” also comes from the Hebrew “cohen” meaning “priest.”

The name “Dankenbring” then, literally, in German, means “one who brings good news or glad tidings.” My full name means –

“William” – “Resolute, Iron-willed,” “Resolute Protector”;  
 “Frederick” – “Kingdom of Peace”, that is, the “Kingdom of God”  
 “Dankenbring” – “Bringer of glad tidings or good news.”

In other words, I am a “strong willed bringer of good tidings of the Kingdom of Peace” – that is, the coming Kingdom of God! Or, to put it another way, I am “The resolute protector” or “The resolute, iron-willed priest who announces the day of judgment and the coming of the Messiah.” Is such a one foretold in the pages of Bible prophecy?

Isaiah 52:7 appears to be, at least in part, a direct prophecy of this very Work of God! It says, “How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of the messenger who announces peace, who *brings good news*, who announces salvation, who says to Zion, ‘Your God reigns’” (Isa.52:7, NRSV).

Who is the “bringer of good news?” Who is the “messenger who announces peace”? William F. Dankenbring means, literally, “resolute bringer of glad tidings of the peaceful kingdom.” What could be more apro po – more appropriate?

Our religious work is located in the United States – modern-day Ephraim – and this Work is telling God’s people just who they ARE, and is *warning them pointedly* of God’s judgments and wrath, and the need to repent! Once again, in this way this prophecy can also refer in a unique way to this very end-time Work of God!

I do not say these things with any sense of pride. The very thought humbles me and makes me feel totally unworthy of such a calling. George Mueller, the “apostle of faith” of the nineteenth century, who built up orphanages for homeless children and proclaimed the gospel around the world, on sheer faith, without ever asking anybody for money, described himself as “a poor, unworthy servant of the Lord.” That’s how I feel. I feel as if I am “the least of the saints,” as Paul did (Eph.3:8). I feel much like Jacob, who said, “I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies and of all the truth which You have shown Your servant” (Gen.32:10, NKJV). As David said, “Who am I, O Lord GOD? And what is my house, that You have brought me this far?” (II Sam.7:18).

I am nobody special. But God called me, and I bless Him and praise His name for that. As Jesus Christ once said, “I can of my own self do nothing” (John 5:30). How much more evident is that truth with the rest of us. I say with David who wrote in the Psalms, “O LORD, I am your servant, I am your servant, the child of your serving girl” (Psalm 116:16, NRSV). I am just God’s servant, and serve Him to the best of my ability, praise His name. I was called of God to be a “watchman.” To be a “bringer of good tidings” to Israel. That is the simple truth!

God called me as a teenager, and began to reveal His truth to me at the tender age of 15, as I was studying His Word while living in Taiwan, formerly known as “Formosa,” a island 90 miles off the coast of China. He called me to be His servant and to serve Him and His people. As I was studying the book of Matthew, reading about the calling of the disciples, praying and meditating, it was as if the Spirit of God spoke to me, saying, “Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men” (Matt.4:19, NKJV). At the time, I had no idea what that meant, or would mean, in my life. But from that moment it is as if God took hold of my life and began directing it, and preparing me to become His messenger and servant!

This Work IS the Work of the Living GOD! *And it is going out from the United States – which, since the Word of God says it would go forth from EPHRAIM, provides more PROOF that the United States IS Biblical “Ephraim”!*

If Great Britain and Canada were indeed Ephraim, then God’s end-time Work of warning should be originating in those countries. But it does not. In fact, most all of the end-time churches which are proclaiming to some degree the message God has given to warn this world – every remnant group of consequence – the Seventh Day Adventist Church, the Church of God Seventh Day, the United Church of God, the Living Church of God, the Philadelphia Church of God, the Church of God, International, the Intercontinental Church of God, as well as various Messianic synagogues and churches, and many Evangelical churches – they all have their headquarters in the United States of America, and not in England. Virtually all of the churches proclaiming a warning witness message to the nations have their origin and headquarters in the United States.

So, just as God foretold in the prophecy of Jeremiah: “For a voice declares from Dan and proclaims disaster from mount *Ephraim*” (Jer.4:15, NRSV). “For there shall be a day when sentinels will call in the hill country of *Ephraim*: ‘Come, let us go up to Zion, to the LORD our God” (Jer.31:6, NRSV). God told Hosea: “The prophet is a sentinel for my God over *Ephraim*, yet a fowler’s snare is on all his ways, and hostility in the house of his God. They have deeply corrupted themselves, as in the days of Gibeah; he will remember their iniquity, he will punish their sins” (Hosea 9:8-9).

The fact that this Work of God is going forth from the United States is additional PROOF that it is the United States of America who is to be identified as EPHRAIM in this end-time generation of mankind.

*Chapter Thirteen*

# Ephraim The More Religious Son

During the age of the founding of the American colonies, the world of Europe was a frightful world of horrendous religious persecution, atrocities, and hatred. Protestants and Catholics vied for political power and freedom. Galileo (1564-1642), the famous astronomer, had been forced to “recant” his scientific discoveries because they disagreed with the dogma of the Roman Catholic Church.

The Inquisition was still a strong memory in the minds of men. Religious persecution was still running strong during the seventeenth century, compelling many men and women of conscience to flee the “Old World” to risk the travails of the “wilderness,” in order to found a new nation where they could worship God according to their own conscience and the Bible.

The beginning of the story of America is the saga of the search for freedom to worship God without having to conform to the authority of a religious tyranny emanating from Europe.

In 1782, Benjamin Franklin wrote in a pamphlet entitled “Information to Those Who Would Remove to America,” that “Atheism is unknown there; infidelity rare and secret; so that persons may live to a great age in that country, without having their piety shocked by meeting with either an Atheist or an Infidel.”

Today, as a whole, America remains a religious nation. Says a special report on “Defining America,” in *U.S. News & World Report*, “America remains a godly nation. Among advanced industrialized countries, it is easily the most religious. Some 60 percent of its citizens say religion is very important to their lives, about six times the percentage of the French. But the divine looms even larger in most Americans’ hearts than those figures suggest. Some 90 percent say they believe in God – 94 percent if you add those who revere a ‘universal spirit’ – while less than 1 percent call themselves atheists or agnostics. It is very possible that an American might still live to a ripe old age without meeting an atheist or infidel” (*U.S. News & World Report*, June28/July 5, 2004).

If you visit Washington, D.C., you will be able to see Bible verses etched in stone all over Federal buildings and monuments. As you walk up the steps to the Supreme Court building, near the top of the building you will see a row of the world’s great lawgivers, each one facing the one in the middle – Moses holding the Ten

Commandments. Continuing inside the courtroom, you will see on the wall right above where the chief justice sits a display of the Ten Commandments.

If you attend a session of Congress, you will notice that every session begins with a prayer, said by a paid preacher, whose salary has been paid by the taxpayer since 1777.

It is a fact that religion has always been important to Americans. Fifty-two of the 55 founders of the Constitution were members of established churches in the colonies.

It is also a fact that the first Supreme Court Justice, John Jay, declared: “Americans should select and prefer Christians as their rulers.”

James Madison, the nation’s fourth president, observed, “We have staked the whole of our political institutions upon the capacity of mankind for self-government, upon the capacity of each and all of us to govern ourselves, to control ourselves, to sustain ourselves according to the Ten Commandments of God.”

It makes you wonder: How is it, then, that our nation has got to the point, in the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century, that the Supreme Court has outlawed prayers in schools, and declared that a monument of the Ten Commandments which had been placed in the supreme state court building in Montgomery, Alabama, had to be removed?

### ***Our Religious Heritage***

The history of the United States of America reveals that America is a predominantly religious nation and a religious people. Some 86 percent of our population believe in a Higher Power – God. On our coinage, every penny is inscribed, “In God we trust.” So is every nickel, dime and quarter. On our currency, every dollar bill is also inscribed with the words: “In God we trust.” And so is every \$5, \$10, and \$20 dollar bill. In 1776, many members of the new congress advocated adopting Hebrew as the official language of the United States.

In fact, according to a new Gallup poll, six out of every 10 Americans say religion is “very important” to them in daily life – a steadfast figure that has remained virtually unchanged during the past decade, says the Gallup poll. Twenty six percent said religion is “fairly” important, while just 15 percent said it doesn’t matter. The survey was conducted June 3 to June 6, 2004, and surveyed 1,000 adults..

According to the survey, 61 percent found faith to be practical and religion can solve “all or most of today’s problems,” whereas only 24 percent said faith was “old-fashioned and out of date.” Gallup analyst Joseph Carroll called the United States “a predominantly Christian nation.” Overall, 64 percent belong to a church or synagogue, and 43 percent attended a church service in the past seven days (*The Washington Times*, June 28-July 4, 2004).

We are the most religious nation on the face of the earth. The nation was

originally founded largely by Puritans, called Pilgrims, a break-away group of devout Christians who were known as Separatists, because they separated from the Church of England to follow the precepts of the Bible. Because of intense persecution, they sailed for the New World, to establish a country where they could worship God in peace.

Frank Lambert, in his book *The Founding Fathers and the Place of Religion in America*, Purdue University historian, the “Planting Fathers” – especially the Puritans of New England – sought to practice their own Christian faith and to found a Christian state. They established Congregationalism and supported it with taxes and compelled their chief magistrates to govern “according to the rule of the Word of God.” The Southern colonies, however, generally enforced Anglicanism.



About 150 years later, he declares, the “Founding Fathers” of the nation created a new national compact guaranteeing that the state would have no voice in determining religion or matters of conscience. During the 1740s, the colonies were swept by a powerful religious revival called “The First Great Awakening.” It emphasized individual religious experience and conversion. When the Founding Fathers gathered in Philadelphia to create a nation, they knew that the new United States was too diverse religiously to attempt to create a national church. Yet they never sought to drive religion from the public domain.

Nathan Hatch, provost of Notre Dame University, in his book *The Democratization of American Christianity*, shows that during the 70 years following the American Revolution, the United States became an avidly religious and evangelical nation.

The Second Great Awakening, around 1845, saw revivalist Christianity and evangelicalism spread hand in hand with Jacksonian democracy, bolstering the American creed of liberty, individualism and equality.

The Third Great Awakening came toward the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, inspiring

many cultural and political reforms in the nation. This was the era when Teddy Roosevelt led the fight against business monopolies, such as Standard Oil, and initiated new laws governing corporations, the nation's first food and cosmetic laws. This was the age of reformers seeking to create a just and equitable society, eliminating the gap between institutions and ideals.

In the Eisenhower era, when the United States was engaged in the Cold War struggle against atheistic Communism, Congress opened a prayer room in the Capitol, made "In God We Trust" the official national motto, required its inclusion on all currency, and added "Under God" to the Pledge of Allegiance.

What do these facts have to do with ancient Ephraim, the second son of Joseph?

### *The Key to Ephraim's Greatness*

The *Stone Edition Chumash* tells us that Joseph's sons were blessed by Jacob, who was inspired by God in his choice of words. They were to be blessed, to carry his name, and to "proliferate abundantly like fish within the land" (Gen.48:15-16). This meant that they would be like fish which are fruitful and multiply, and which are not affected by the evil eye (since they live calmly and are unseen by man).

This blessing came upon them because Joseph was righteous. Says the *Chumash*, in its commentary: "The Talmud explains that Joseph earned this blessing of immunity against the evil eye because he averted his own eyes from the advances of Potiphar's wife."

Jacob blessed the two sons of Joseph by placing his right hand on the head of the younger sibling, and his left hand on the older. When Joseph saw that Jacob's right hand was on Ephraim's head, he tried to move it, thinking Jacob couldn't see which son was which. Joseph assumed that the greater blessing would go to the older son. But this was not God's intent (Gen.48:13-19). Ephraim, the younger son, was blessed by God with the blessing of the right hand, the greater blessing – the blessing of the firstborn. His offspring were to become a "multitude" of peoples.

The *Chumash* quotes Jacob's words in verse 19, "*I know, my son, I know that he is the firstborn.*" It continues: "According to the Midrash, Jacob repeated the expression to imply that he knew many things of which Joseph was unaware, and if he chose to give the primary blessing to Ephraim, it was for good and sufficient reason. *Haamek Davar* explains that Ephraim's pre-eminence was not the *result* of Jacob's blessing. Rather, it was *because* Ephraim was destined for more greatness that he required a more intensive blessing, for prominent people need a blessing to carry out their mission successfully. **Not Jacob's blessing but Ephraim's upbringing was the source of his future greatness, for Ephraim spent his life studying Torah with Jacob** (see *Rashi* to 48:1), while Manasseh was Joseph's assistant in governing the country" (p.273, emphasis mine).

*It is very interesting – and significant -- that of the two peoples, the British and the Americans, it is the AMERICANS who are far more religious as a nation, believe in God, and attend a Christian church! It is interesting, too, that the British have a proclivity to rule and govern nations, as Britain once did when London ruled over a quarter of the world's population. Manasseh, as we have just seen, was Joseph's assistant in governing the country of Egypt!*

### ***The American Religious Experience***

America's national anthem, "The Star-Spangled Banner," was written by Francis Scott Key, a lawyer, during the War of 1812, when the British fleet was bombarding Fort McHenry, on Chesapeake Bay. It took almost 120 years for the original poem to rise to its present status. It was written in mid-1814 in humble circumstances, scribbled on the back of an envelope. Key had been sent to negotiate the release of a dear elderly doctor friend who was being held prisoner on a British warship. Key sailed in a small sloop to the British ship, and the British admiral agreed to the release after several hours of persuasive argument. He had intended to hang the man.

But while the British fleet bombarded Fort McHenry, the British held Key on board, fearing he was a security risk. So Key had the unwanted opportunity to see the blistering, roaring of shells plunging toward Fort McHenry with its 32 by 40-foot U.S. flag flying bravely. It was eight miles away but still plainly visible. All day Key watched as volley after volley roared from the fleet, amazed as he saw the gallant flag still waving. At night he saw the banner illuminated against the "rockets' red glare," still flying. Key remembered his grandmother's sage words that when nothing else could be done, "You can always pray." So he redoubled his prayers for Baltimore, Fort McHenry, his friends. The battle intensified. The heavens became as a sheet of flame. The next morning, after a harrowing night, a shout of thankfulness burst from the Americans on board – the flag was still flying high.

Francis Scott Key was so inspired by the sight in that "hour of joy and triumph," as he put it, that his heart was stirred to write the poem – a song of deliverance.

Religion played a very important role in the founding, and the history, of the United States of America. Jaroslav Pelikan, of Yale University, points out, "The spirit of a people often finds a more profound and lasting expression in its hymns and anthems, whether official or unofficial, than it does in its constitution and laws" (Foreword, *Religion and the Founding of the American Republic*, by James H. Hutson, Library of Congress, University Press of New England).

The official national anthem of the United States, 'The Star-Spangled Banner,' affirms,

Then conquer we must, for our cause is just –  
And this be our motto, "In God is our trust!"

In its unofficial national anthems that strong religious faith is even more affirmed, even intensified, as in Samuel Francis Smith's great song, "America," or as it is also known, "My Country 'Tis of Thee," sung to the tune, let it be remembered, of "God Save the King!"

My country 'tis of thee,  
Sweet land of liberty,  
Of thee I sing.  
Land where my fathers died!  
Land of the Pilgrims' pride!  
From every mountain side,  
Let freedom ring!

Our father's God to Thee,  
Author of liberty,  
To Thee we sing.  
Long may our land be bright  
With freedom's holy light,  
Protect us by Thy might,  
Great God, our King!

When the Civil War began, in 1860, the United States had no national anthem. In 1861 a contest was held to produce a new patriotic song. 1,200 entries were received but none was judged worthy of the honor. Then in December, Julia Ward Stowe, an unknown poet, visiting the Army of the Potomac, heard the soldiers singing one of their favorite marching songs, "John Brown's Body." She decided the very popular tune needed new words – and so she returned to Boston and wrote a new song and showed it to the editor of the *Atlantic Monthly*.

He suggested the title, "Battle Hymn of the Republic." It was published in February 1862 and became an instant sensation!

Mine eyes have seen the glory  
of the coming of the Lord;  
He is trampling out the vintage  
where the grapes of wrath are stored;  
He hath loosed the fateful lightning  
of His terrible swift sword;  
His truth is marching on.

Glory! Glory! Hallelujah!  
Glory! Glory! Hallelujah!  
Glory! Glory! Hallelujah!  
His truth is marching on.

In the beauty of the lilies

Christ was born across the sea,  
 With a glory in his bosom  
     that transfigures you and me,  
 As he died to make men holy,  
     let us die to make men free  
 While God is marching on.

And what about that crowd pleasing favorite, especially in times of war and trouble and unrest? Irving Berlin's "God Bless America"!

God bless America,  
 Land that I love,  
 Stand beside her and guide her  
 Through the night with the light from above.  
 From the mountains, to the prairies,  
 To the oceans, white with foam,  
 God bless America, my home sweet home,  
 God bless America, my home sweet home.

A very inspiring folk song in America is Woody Guthrie's "This Land Is Your Land," a vibrant song expressing America's wonderful heritage, that "this land was made for you and me."

This land is your land – this land is my land –  
 From Cal-i-for-nia – to the New York Island,  
 From the red-wood for-est – to the Gulf Stream wa-ters,  
 This land was made for you and me. —

As I went walking that ribbon of highway  
 I saw above me that endless skyway,  
 I saw below me that golden valley,  
 This land was made for you and me.

I roamed and rambled, and I followed my footsteps,  
 To the sparkling sands of her diamond deserts,  
 All around me a voice was sounding,  
 This land was made for you and me.

"When the sun came shining, then I was strolling,  
 And the wheat fields waving, and the dust clouds rolling,  
 A voice was chanting as the fog was lifting,  
 This land was made for you and me.

Perhaps the most transcendent song of all, with echoes from both Augustine's *City of God* and the Book of Revelation – we have the patriotic hymn "America the Beautiful":

O beautiful for spacious skies,  
 For amber waves of grain  
 For purples mountain majesties  
 Above the fruited plain!

America! America! God shed His grace on thee  
 And crown thy good with brotherhood  
 From sea to shining sea!

O beautiful for pilgrim feet  
 Whose stern impassioned stress  
 A thoroughfare from freedom beat  
 Across the wilderness!

America! America! God mend thine every flaw,  
 Confirm thy soul in self control,  
 Thy liberty in law!

O beautiful for heroes proved  
 In liberating strife,  
 Who more than self  
 Their country loved,  
 And mercy more than life!

America! America! May God thy gold refine,  
 Till all success be nobleness,  
 And every grace divine!

O beautiful for patriot dream  
 That sees beyond the years  
 Thine alabaster cities gleam  
 Undimmed by human tears!

America! America! God shed His grace on thee  
 And crown thy good with brotherhood  
 From sea to shining sea!

Writes Jaroslav Pelikan of Yale University, “In each case, significantly, the credo comes in the closing stanza of the anthem; only the ‘Battle-Hymn of the Republic’ keeps up the apocalyptic tone from beginning to end. But each poem expresses something special about the *American faith experience*: ‘In God is our trust’; ‘Great God, our King’; ‘While God is marching on’; ‘Thine alabaster cities gleam’” (Foreword, *Religion and the Founding of the American Republic*, by James H. Hutson, Library of Congress, University Press of New England).

In this remarkable book, prepared as a companion piece for the Library of Congress exhibition, which opened in 1998, and toured the nation, the strength of early American religious experience and faith is clearly revealed. The book tells the story of the relationship of religion to the government during the Founding Period of the nation, and the part played by the forces of evangelism during the 1730s through the 1830s, when it became the dominant feature of American religion.

### ***Religion in Early America***

George Washington, in his farewell address of 1796, declared that religion, as the source of morality, was “a necessary spring of popular government.”

Toqueville observed in 1845 in *Democracy in America* that Americans believed religion to be “indispensable to the maintenance of republican government,” and was somewhat surprised at how it worked in so large a country.

Contrary to recent Supreme Court decisions which have emasculated the role of religion in government in modern-day America, religion was indispensable to government in the early years of the American republic. On Sundays, during the first years of the new republic, “the state became the church,” says James H. Billington, of the Library of Congress.

Writes James Hutson, “Many of the people who settled British North America in the seventeenth century came for religious reasons, for the opportunity to worship God in ways that were unacceptable in Europe. Their passion for their faith was transmitted to their descendants who created the American nation in 1776. This legacy of faith, periodically refashioned and refreshed, gave to the new country the strong religious flavor that, in the nineteenth century, impressed foreign and domestic observers and, in 1922, prompted G. K. Chesterton (1874-1936), with ample justification, to call the United States ‘a nation with the soul of a church’” (p.3).

America’s religious spirit is the hidden secret of their national greatness. This reflects the original nature and upbringing of Ephraim, himself, who studied Torah at the knees of his grandfather Jacob. *This is one of the incredible heretofore unseen PROOFS that the United States of America inherited the birthright promise and represents as a whole the people of modern Ephraim!* The Americans inherited the religious nature and temperament of their ancestor, Ephraim.

### ***The Puritans and Pilgrims***

History shows that most of the American colonies of England, especially the Massachusetts Bay Colony, were founded by men and women seeking religious freedom and liberty. The original settlers in Massachusetts, who came across the Atlantic on the Mayflower, were known as Pilgrims, who were fleeing religious oppression in England. They were a special branch of the Puritans, seeking to live their lives according to the

Scriptures. The Puritans were actually more Jewish than Protestant in many of their beliefs!

During the 17th century English Civil War, Puritans were Protestant fundamentalists who wished to purify the Church of England. The Puritans felt that Parliament, and not the King, should have the final say and that the moral guidance for all legal decision should come from the Bible which they considered to be the highest authority in all matters.

Writes Hugh Fogelman, a Jewish historical writer who has studied at length the origin of the Puritan movement in England: “The Puritans were obsessed with the Bible and came to identify their political struggle against England with that of the ancient Hebrews against Pharaoh or the King of Babylon. Because they identified so strongly with ancient Israel, they chose to identify with the Old Testament (Hebrew Bible).”

He continues, “In 1620, the ‘Separatists’ sailed for America on the Mayflower. The Separatists/Puritans who settled at Plymouth Colony called themselves ‘Pilgrims’ because of their wanderings in search of religious freedom. The Puritan culture of New England was marked from the outset by a deep association with Jewish themes. No Christian community in history identified more with the Israelites of the Bible than did the first generations of settlers of the Massachusetts Bay Colony, who believed their own lives to be a literal reenactment of the biblical drama of the chosen people – they were the children of Israel and the ordinances of God’s Holy covenant by which they lived were His divine law. Since they viewed themselves as the persecuted victims of the sinful Christian establishment of the Old World (England), the Puritans also had a natural sympathy for the Jews of their own time. The Protestant Puritan leader Cotton Mather repeatedly referred to the Jews in his prayer for their conversion as God’s ‘Beloved People.’”

### ***Religious Hatred in Europe***

The founding of America was largely the result of incredible religious hatred and bigotry that raged in Europe, including Great Britain, during the seventeenth century, against those who sought to live by the Biblical code. Many who settled in the region of British North America were driven there by relentless religious persecution. Religious uniformity was demanded by both Catholic and Protestant states in Europe. Any who resisted were dealt with forcibly.

The ones who became American Pilgrims were actually a small minority of the Puritan movement, but they believed the Anglican church had become so corrupt as to be irredeemable. They felt they must withdraw immediately to seek the Lord while He may be found. Taking as their motto, the title of a pamphlet, *Reformation without Tarrying for any*, they set sail for the New World, Plymouth, Massachusetts, in 1620.

America was looked upon by many earnest, God-fearing Christians in Europe as a place where they could be free of religious oppression and persecution – as a Shangri-La,

as a new-found religious refuge and haven. With great hope and anticipation they set out on a risky enterprise, facing unknown dangers and perils.

### *Influence of the Bible*

The influence of the Hebrew Bible marked every step of the Puritan exodus to their New Canaan in the wilderness of the New World. The Bible formed their minds, concepts, and dominated their character.

The early founders of America were very religious people. Says Fogelman, when ready to depart from England for the new land, the Puritans “fasted in a manner reminiscent of the fasts held by the Israelites before any new undertaking. Their Pastor Robertson read I Samuel 23:3-4 and then they sailed to the New Canaan in America. The biblical basis for this procedure is manifest; just as the ancient Israelites prayed and fasted before undertaking an uncertain venture, so did the Puritans. And once settled in America, the custom was retained and frequently renewed” (Fogelman, “Puritans Were More Jewish than Protestant,” [www.jdstone.org](http://www.jdstone.org)).

Fogelman continues, “The next major group of Puritan settlers to arrive in New England (1630) was headed by John Winthrop (1588–1649) and founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony. They were ruled initially by an elite of leading Puritan families – since the colony itself was based on biblical principles and . . . the Holy Jewish Bible. The Puritans wholeheartedly believed that it was their special mission to establish in America a society precisely modeled on the precepts of Sacred Jewish Scriptures. The Massachusetts Bay Colony was at the very least a state inspired by and thoroughly devoted to the Jewish Bible. ‘If we keep this covenant,’ Governor John Winthrop assured his people, ‘we shall find that the God of Israel is among us, but if we deal falsely with our God . . . we [will] be consumed out of the good land whither we are going.’ The Jewish covenant concept was thus the bedrock of all Puritan religious communities” (*ibid.*).

In England, the Puritans were bitterly persecuted. They were far more religious and Bible-based in their thinking than the other people of England. This difference illustrates the difference between Ephraim – a lover of the Torah – and his brother Manasseh, who learned the methods of government, assisting Joseph in the administration of Egypt during the years of famine and thereafter.

### *New Canaan*

The Puritans applied the lessons of the Exodus to their own situation. “They firmly believed that the Hebrew prophets were speaking to them as directly as they had spoken to the Israelites. Thus the history of the Israelites as related in the Bible served, according to the ministers of the day, as a mirror in which the Puritans could see their own activities reflected. Still considering themselves as Christian Protestants, the Puritans related to the Israelites and their Jewish belief for their fundamental ‘grounding.’”

Fogelman goes on, explaining: “In this respect they differed sharply from the majority of traditional Christian theologies. To the Puritans the primary lesson of the Old Testament was that a nation as well as an individual could enter into a covenant with God. The Puritans reasoned in America the concept of the covenant would assume new dimensions. Once they reached the colonies a new factor entered into the matter of the covenant. In this New Israel the Puritans established a completely new society based solely upon the Jewish concept of a covenant between God and man. Thus the Puritans made certain of the biblical system they wished to establish in the New World. During a convention of Puritan ministers at Boston on May 26, 1698, they confirmed the belief that ‘under the Old Testament, the Church was constituted by a covenant.’ Because of this concept, the Puritan Church was not ruled by a formal and rigid papal hierarchy but derived its direction *immediately from God, ruled by His Word* as revealed in the sacred Jewish Scriptures.

“The Bible was in all circumstances and for all occasions the ultimate source of knowledge and precedent. The Jewish Bible was the inspired word of God which was for them a matter of absolute conviction, and, hence, indisputable. Accordingly, failure to abide by the strict reading and literal interpretation of the Scriptures was severely punished . . . Laws and regulations adopted by them, which, at the present day, are stigmatized as singularities, were in many instances, the legitimate fruits of their strict adherence to the teaching of the Bible.”

### ***Bible Basis for Law***

Fogelman observes that most of the official acts of the colonies were determined by the Jewish Scriptures. The Connecticut Code of 1650 adopted a near Mosaic form of government. Its fifteen Capital Laws, Pentateuchal citations and language are later found in the Massachusetts Code of 1660. The leader of early Connecticut was Thomas Hooker, a man deeply moved by the Bible and its spirit. He was called by some “the founder of American democracy.” Hooker wrote in a letter in 1648 to Governor Winthrop of Massachusetts on the subject of liberty under the law, quoting Deuteronomy 17:10–11: “Thou shalt observe to do according to all that they inform, according to the sentence of the law. Thou shalt seek that Law at his mouth: not ask what his discretion allows, but what the Law requires.”

The Puritans incorporated the Mosaic code and commandments from the Old Testament into their own legal framework. Fully half of the statutes in the Code of 1655 for the New Haven colony contained references to or citations from the Old Testament, whereas only three percent referred to the New Testament Scriptures.

The first Puritan settlers in New England called themselves “Christian Israel.” Names like Daniel, Jonathan, Esther, Enoch, Ezra, Rachel and a host of others were in common use among the Puritans.

Names of cities, towns and settlements likewise derived from Hebraic sources. Fogelman points out, “This widespread use of biblical names, however, was not confined

to the naming of offspring, cities and towns – names of many biblical heights were eventually bestowed upon the great mountains of America. Mount Carmel and Mount Horeb, home of the Prophets, were popular names, as was Mount Nebo, the final resting place of Moses. Names like *Mount Ephraim*, Mount Gilead, Mount Hermon, Mount Moriah, Mount Pisgah, were all popular as well. Some mountains in the New World were even called Mt. Sinai, Mount Zion and Mount Olive.”

If you look at a map or an atlas of the United States, you will find many Biblical names of cities and towns scattered throughout the various states of the union. Biblical place names are found throughout the country, from coast to coast. Certainly these manifold place names bear witness to the distant origins and heritage of our people!

Declares Fogelman, “The majority of the earliest settlers were Puritans from England. Unlike their cousins back home, these American Puritans strongly identified with both the historical traditions and customs of the ancient Hebrews of the Old Testament. They viewed their emigration from England as a virtual re-enactment of the Jewish exodus from Egypt: England was Egypt, the English king was Pharaoh, the Atlantic Ocean their Red Sea, America was the Land of Israel, and the Indians were the ancient Canaanites. They were the new Israelites, entering into a new covenant with God in a new Promised Land.”

Hugh Fogelman asserts, “At the first assembly of New Haven in 1639, John Davenport clearly declared the primacy of the Bible as the legal and moral foundation of the colony: ‘Scriptures do hold forth a perfect rule for the direction and government of all men in all duties which they are to perform to God and men as well as in the government of families and commonwealth as in matters of the church . . . the Word of God shall be the only rule to be attended unto in organizing the affairs of government in this plantation’” (Hugh Fogelman, “Puritans More Jewish than Protestant,”).

Why is America so much more a religious nation than Great Britain? The answer goes back to our historic origins and the birthright promises made to Ephraim and Manasseh. Ephraim spent much time at Jacob’s knees, learning the Torah and the laws of God, developing a spiritual relationship with God, whereas Manasseh, also blessed, spent most of his young life accompanying Joseph in performing his duties of administration of government. Even so, in modern times, Great Britain shows its great abilities in government and administration, as it administered its global empire and commonwealth, and America shows its greatness based on its Judeo-Christian heritage and inspiration.

### ***Religious Proclamations***

Early in 1620, the very year of the Pilgrims’ landing in the new Plymouth, a solemn day of prayer was observed. This custom, combining prayer and fasting with biblical readings on momentous occasions, continued. In 1800, President Adams likewise called a national day of prayer and fasting, and during the Civil War Abraham Lincoln did likewise. What other nation has done the like throughout its history?

The Pilgrim Governor William Bradford proclaimed a day of thanksgiving to be shared by all the colonists and the neighboring Native Americans. The Pilgrims invited Squanto and the other Indians to join them in their celebration. Their chief, Massasoit, and 90 braves came to the celebration which lasted for 3 days. They played games, ran races, marched and played drums. The Indians demonstrated their skills with the bow and arrow and the Pilgrims demonstrated their musket skills. Exactly when the festival took place is uncertain, but it is believed the celebration took place in mid-October .

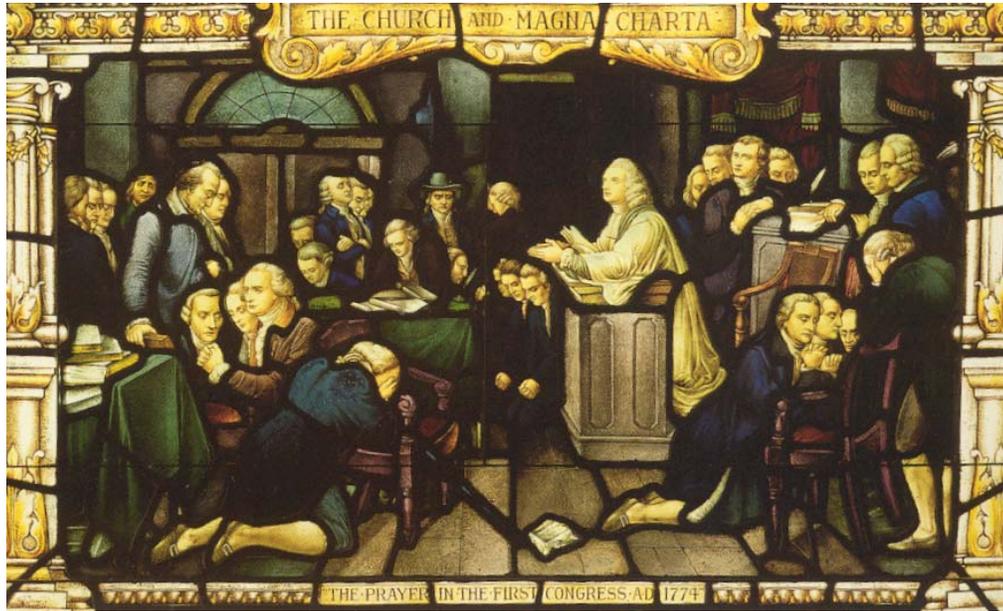
The following year the Pilgrims' harvest was not as bountiful, as they were still unused to growing the corn. During the year they had also shared their stored food with newcomers and the Pilgrims ran short of food.

The 3rd year brought a spring and summer that was hot and dry with the crops dying in the fields. Governor Bradford ordered a *day of fasting and prayer*, and it was soon thereafter that the rain came. To celebrate, November 29th of that year was proclaimed a day of thanksgiving. This date is believed to be the real true beginning of the present Thanksgiving Day in America.

### ***“A Day of Fasting and Prayer”***

In May, 1774, shortly after the Boston Tea Party, where patriots dressed as Indians dumped the tea carried on British ships into the Boston harbor, word reached Virginia that the British in retaliation planned to close the port of Boston.

As a consequence, Thomas Jefferson, Patrick Henry, and other Virginians resolved to immediately proclaim *a day of fasting and prayer* for the intervention of Almighty God. The Virginia legislature deemed it “highly necessary that the said first day of June be set apart, by the members of this House, as a day of fasting, humiliation and prayer, devoutly to implore the divine interposition, for averting the heavy calamity which threatens destruction to our civil rights and the evils of civil war . . .”



The picture above depicts the first prayer in Congress, September 7, 1774. John Adams, who became the second president of the United States, was present, and declared afterward, “I must confess that I never heard a better Prayer or one so well pronounced . . . with such fervor, such Ardor, such Earnestness and Pathos, and in Language so elegant and sublime – for America, for the Congress, for the Province of Massachusetts Bay, and especially the Town of Boston. It has had an excellent Effect upon every Body here” (*Religion and the Founding of the American Republic*, p.48).

Wherever we look, in Colonial America there was a very strong reliance on the divine blessing and intervention of Almighty God. America was founded on religious principles, and her people historically have been a very devout people.

### ***The Declaration of Independence***

July 4, 1776, the Second Continental Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence, the historic document in which the American Colonies declared their freedom from British rule. It ranks as one of the greatest documents of human history.

The preamble to this document states unequivocally:

“When in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bonds which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the *Laws of Nature and of Nature’s God* entitle them, a decent respect of the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.—

“We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are *endowed by their Creator* with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness . . .”

The Congress appointed a committee of five men to draft the Declaration, and they chose Thomas Jefferson to write it. Benjamin Franklin and John Adams made a few literary changes, and the final draft was adopted on July 4. The Declaration reveals that the United States was conceived under religious principles and a belief in the sovereignty of God. It is a distinctly religious document using key phrases such as “the laws of nature and *nature’s God*” and “endowed by their *Creator* with certain unalienable rights.” But the Declaration is also a political and legal document. Our forefathers base their right to declare their independence and to create a Constitution based on a claim to higher authority than King George III who represented the supreme law of the land. America was at that time a British colony. To explain their right to freedom from the rule of Great Britain, the Colonists based their Declaration on divine authority. God and His Word was our authority and basis for declaring our independence.

Testifying to that supreme truth is the Liberty Bell, a treasured relic from the early days of American Independence. It was rung July 8, 1776, along with other church bells to announce the adoption of the Declaration of Independence. Its famous inscription, “Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof” is from the Bible (Leviticus 25:10).

### ***George Washington – Man of Destiny***

Many modern revisionist historians have distorted the truth about George Washington, the “father of our country,” by referring to him as a “deist” – one who advocates a religion based on human reason as opposed to divine revelation, and who denies that the Creator ever intervenes in the laws or operation of the Universe.

Was Washington a deist? Not at all! His heart-felt prayer, prayed at Valley Forge, puts the lie to this fraudulent interpretation of early American history. Washington himself said he was a Christian, and regularly attended the Episcopal Church. In his own prayer book, written by his own hand, he wrote, “Direct me to the true object, Jesus Christ, the way, the truth, and the life.”

In his Farewell Address to the nation, when he left the office of president, after serving two terms, Washington warned that religion and morality are indispensable supports for political prosperity. He added that “reason and experience both forbid us to expect that national morality can prevail in exclusion of religious principle.” At another time, Washington observed that “it is impossible to rightly govern without God and the Bible.”

Washington’s dependence on divine Providence throughout his life is attested to by the fact that when he was appointed commander of the Continental Army, his response was that he would only accept if the Continental Congress also appoint and fund chaplains for his troops. Washington served, at his own choice, without any payment or

remuneration. He took a rag-tag, ill-equipped bunch of colonials, undisciplined, lacking in training, and out-manned, and doggedly worked with them, turning them into a powerful army.

Washington never sought power or authority for himself. The people of his day loved him. The officers of his army would have made him king, but he would not let them. One of his officers, Henry “Light Horse Harry” Lee summed up the feelings of Americans for Washington: “First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen.” Only reluctantly did Washington accept the office of first president of the new Republic. He accepted the post with misgivings saying that his own feelings were “not unlike those of a culprit who is going to the place of his execution.” He served two terms *without pay* at his own insistence.

Early in his life, Washington showed his prowess as a young soldier. During a battle in the French and Indian War, General Braddock ordered a retreat. Indians and Frenchmen had ambushed his troops and losses were heavy. Washington was only 26, and still recovering from a serious illness, but moved boldly through a hail of bullets to rescue hundreds of wounded soldiers, including Braddock himself. During his gallant and magnificent heroics, Washington had two horses shot out from beneath him, and four bullets tore his clothing to rags. Yet, miraculously, showing that the hand of divine Providence was even then upon him, he escaped the encounter without a single mark upon him, unwounded and unscathed. He later remarked that divine Providence had protected him beyond all human expectation.

An Indian chief, who fought on the other side as an ally of the French, later declared in amazement, “Our rifles knew not how to miss except for Washington.” He added, “A power far mightier than we shielded him from harm. He cannot die in battle. The Great Spirit protects that man and guides his destinies. He will become the chief of nations, and a people yet unborn will hail him the founder of a mighty nation.”

Thomas Jefferson wrote of the character of this great man: “His mind was great and powerful . . . no judgment was ever sounder. It was slow in operation, being little aided by invention or imagination, but sure in conclusion. . . . Perhaps the strongest feature in his character was prudence, never acting until every circumstance, every consideration, was maturely weighed; refraining when he saw a doubt, but, when once decided, going through with his purpose whatever obstacles opposed. His integrity was most pure, his justice the most inflexible I have ever known . . . He was indeed, in every sense of the words, a wise, a good and a great man . . . On the whole, his character was, in its mass, perfect . . . it may truly be said, that never did nature and fortune combine more perfectly to make a man great.”

Washington once declared: “In tendering this homage to the Great Author of every public and private good, I assure myself that it expresses your sentiments not less than my own; nor of my fellow-citizens at large, less than either. No people can be bound to acknowledge and adore the Invisible Hand which conducts affairs of men more than the people of the United States.”

George Washington, known as the “father of our country,” when he was president, in 1789, issued a proclamation showing the religious nature of our people – and his own heart. He declared,

WHEREAS it is the duty of all nations to acknowledge the providence of Almighty God, to obey His will, to be grateful for His benefits, and humbly implore His protection and favor; and

Whereas both Houses of Congress have, by their joint committee, requested me “to recommend to the people of the United States a day of public thanksgiving and prayer, to be observed by acknowledging with grateful hearts the many and signal favors of Almighty God . . .”

Now, therefore, I do recommend and assign Thursday, the 26<sup>th</sup> day November next, to be devoted by the people of these States to the service of that great and glorious Being who is the benevolent Author of all the good that was, that is, or that will be; that we may then all unite in rendering unto Him our sincere and humble thanks for His kind care and protection of the people of this country . . . .

And also that we may then unite in most humbly offering our prayers and supplications to the great Lord and Ruler of Nations, and beseech Him to pardon our national and other transgressions . . .”

### ***Benjamin Franklin***

America was founded on solid Biblical, religious principles, testifying to the religious nature of our forefathers as a whole. Benjamin Franklin, while attending the Constitutional Convention in 1787, was then 81 years old. It seemed the convention was hopelessly deadlocked. Franklin made a short speech in which he beseeched the delegates to daily seek Divine guidance for their meetings and deliberations. He declared:

“In this situation of this Assembly, groping as it were in the dark to find political truth, and scarce able to distinguish it when presented to us, how has it happened, Sir, that we have not once hitherto thought of humbly applying to the Father of lights, to illuminate our understandings? In the beginning of the contest with Great Britain, when we were sensible of danger, we had *daily prayer in this room* for the divine protection. Our prayers, Sir, were heard, and they were graciously answered.

“All of us who were engaged in the struggle must have observed frequent instances of a superintending Providence in our favor. To that kind Providence we owe this happy opportunity of consulting in peace on the means of establishing our future national felicity.

“And have we now forgotten that powerful friend? Or do we imagine that we no longer need his assistance?

“I have lived, Sir, a long time, and the longer I live, the more convincing proofs I see of this truth – that God governs in the affairs of men. And if a sparrow cannot fall to the ground without his notice, is it probable that an empire can rise without his aid?”

“We have been assured, Sir, in the sacred writings, that ‘except the Lord build the house they labor in vain that build it.’ I firmly believe this; and I also believe that without his concurring aid we shall succeed in this political building no better than the builders of Babel. . . .

“I therefore beg leave to move – that henceforth prayers imploring the assistance of Heaven, and its blessings on our deliberations, be held in this Assembly every morning before we proceed to business, and that one or more of the clergy of this city be requested to officiate in that service.”

After Franklin’s motivational address, the delegates agreed with him and meetings of the Constitutional Convention were always begun with prayer to God.



### *President John Adams*

John Adams, the second president of the United States, issued two proclamations during his term of office calling upon the people of the nation to observe a day of “solemn humiliation, fasting, and prayer,” in 1798 and 1799. Relations had deteriorated between the U.S. and France, since France aided the colonies during the Revolutionary War, and the the growing threat of war hung in the air. The earnest prayers of the nation were answered and war was averted.

President Adams proclaimed, March 6, 1799:

“AS NO TRUTH is more clearly taught in the Volume of Inspiration, nor any more

fully demonstrated by the experience of all ages, than that a deep sense and due acknowledgment of the governing providence of a Supreme Being and of the accountability of men to Him as the searcher of hearts and righteous distributor of rewards and punishments are conducive equally to the happiness and rectitude of individuals and to the well-being of communities; as it is also most reasonable in itself that men who are made capable of social acts and relations, who owe their improvements to the social state, and who derive their enjoyments from it, should, as a society, make their acknowledgments of dependence and obligation to Him who hath endowed them with these capacities and elevated them in the scale of existence by these distinctions; as it is likewise a plain dictate of duty and a strong sentiment of nature that in circumstances of great urgency and seasons of imminent danger earnest and particular supplications should be made to Him who is able to defend or to destroy; as, moreover, the most precious interests of the people of the United States are still held in jeopardy by the hostile designs and insidious acts of a foreign nation, as well as by the dissemination among them of those principles, subversive of the foundations of all religious, moral, and social obligations that have produced incalculable mischief and misery in other countries; and as, in fine, the observance of special seasons for public religious solemnities is happily calculated to avert the evils which we ought to deprecate and excite to the performance of the duties which we ought to discharge by calling and fixing the attention of the people at large to the momentous truths already recited, by affording opportunity to teach and inculcate them by animating devotion and giving to it the character of a national act:

For these reasons I have thought proper to recommend, and I do hereby recommend accordingly, that Thursday, the 25th day of April next, be observed throughout the United States of America as *day of solemn humiliation, fasting and prayer*; that the citizens on that day abstain as far as may be from their secular occupations, devote the time to the sacred duties of religion in public and in private; that they *call to mind our numerous offenses against the Most High God, confess them before Him with the sincerest penitence, implore His pardoning mercy*, through the Great Mediator and Redeemer for our past transgressions, and that through the grace of His Holy Spirit we may be disposed and enabled to yield a more suitable obedience to His righteous requisitions in time to come; that He would interpose to arrest the progress of that impiety and licentiousness in principle and practice so offensive to Himself and so ruinous to mankind; that He would make us deeply sensible that ‘righteousness exalteth a nation, but sin is a reproach to any people;’ that He would *turn us from our transgressions and turn His displeasure from us*; that He would withhold us from unreasonable discontent, from disunion, faction, sedition, and insurrection; that He would preserve our country from the desolating sword; that He would save our cities and towns from a repetition of those awful pestilential visitations under which they have lately suffered so severely, and that the health of our inhabitants generally may be precious in His sight; that He would favor us with fruitful seasons and so bless the labors of the husbandman as that there may be food in abundance for man and beast; that He would prosper our commerce, manufactures, and fisheries, and give success to the people in all their lawful industry and enterprise; that He would smile on our colleges, academies, and seminaries of learning, and make them nurseries of sound science, morals and religion . . . that He would put an end to the effusion of human blood and the accumulation of human misery among the contending nations of the earth by disposing them to justice, to equity, to benevolence, and to peace; and that He would extend the blessing of knowledge, of true liberty, and of pure and undefiled religion throughout the world.

And I do also recommend that with these acts of humiliation, penitence and prayer still continuing to the people of the United States, and which render their condition as a nation eminently happy when compared to the lot of others.

-- JOHN ADAMS.

What other nation has on several momentous occasions issued such astounding proclamations to their people to call on God in *fasting, prayer, and humiliation?*

About sixty years later, in 1861, another similar proclamation was made by a sitting president during a time of national crisis and upheaval.

### *Abraham Lincoln*

When Lincoln departed from Springfield, Illinois for Washington, D.C., to take up his new duties as president, he told his friends and neighbors gathered to see him off:

“I know not how soon I shall see you again. A duty devolves upon me which is perhaps greater than that which has devolved upon any other man since the days of Washington. He would never have succeeded except by the aid of Divine Providence, upon which he at all times relied. I feel that I cannot succeed without this same Divine Aid which sustained him, and upon the same Almighty Being I place my reliance for support. I hope you, my friends, will all pray that I may receive that Divine Assistance without which I cannot succeed, but with which success is certain.”

Abraham Lincoln was perhaps America’s most spiritual president, the most compassionate, and humble. He said, at one time, surrounded by difficulties and problems, as the American nation was being torn apart in Civil War:

“I have been driven many times upon my knees by the overwhelming conviction that I had nowhere else to go. My own wisdom, and that of all about me, seemed insufficient for the day.”

During the terrible ordeal of the Civil War, President Abraham Lincoln also directed the attention of the country and its citizens to the need for a national day of humiliation, prayer, and fasting. In 1861, he issued a proclamation as follows:

“WHEREAS a joint committee of both Houses of Congress has waited on the President of the United States and requested him to ‘recommend a day of public humiliation, prayer, and fasting to be observed by the people of the United States with religious solemnities and the offering of fervent supplications to Almighty God for the safety and welfare of these States, His blessings on their arms, and a Speedy restoration of peace,’ and Whereas it is fit and becoming in all people at all times to acknowledge and revere the supreme government of God, to bow in humble submission to His chastisements, to confess and deplore their sins and transgressions in the full conviction that the fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, and to pray with all fervency and contrition for the pardon of their past offenses and for a blessing upon their present and prospective action; and

Whereas when our own beloved country, once, by the blessing of God, united, prosperous, and happy, is now afflicted with faction and civil war, it is peculiarly fit for us to *recognize the hand of God in this terrible visitation, and in sorrowful remembrance of our own faults and crimes as a nation and as individuals to humble ourselves before Him and to pray for His mercy* – to pray that we may be spared further punishment, though most justly deserved; that our arms may be blessed and made effectual for the reestablishment of law, order and peace throughout the wide extent of our country; and that the inestimable boon of civil and religious liberty, earned under His guidance and blessing by the labors and sufferings of our fathers, may be restored in all its original excellence.

Therefore I, Abraham Lincoln, President of the United States, do appoint the Last Thursday in September next as a *day of humiliation, prayer, and fasting* for all the people of the nation. And I do earnestly recommend to all the people and especially to all ministers and teachers of religion of all denominations and to all heads of families, to observe and keep that day according to their several creeds and modes of worship in all humility and with all religious solemnity, to the end that the united prayer of the nation may ascend to the Throne of Grace and bring down plentiful blessings upon our country.

In testimony whereof I have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the United States to be affixed, this 12th day of August, A.D. 1861, and of the Independence of the United States of America the eighty-sixth.

-- ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

God heard these prayers of a sorrowful, repentant people, and He guided our nation through peril and sword and brought us to a position of international greatness and power such has never been enjoyed by any other people on the face of the earth.

As Lincoln declared, our blessings were not due our own goodness. Continually we have had to repent of our sins, and return to the ways of the Great God who created us. On another occasion, Lincoln declared that America had forgotten the gracious hand of Providence. He asserted:

“We have been recipients of the choicest bounties of Heaven; we have been preserved these many years in peace and prosperity; we have grown in numbers, wealth and power as no other nation has ever grown. But we have forgotten God. We have forgotten the gracious hand which preserved us in peace and multiplied and enriched and strengthened us, and we have vainly imagined, in the deceitfulness of our hearts, that all these blessings were produced by some superior wisdom and virtue of our own. Intoxicated with unbroken success, we have become too self-sufficient to feel the necessity of redeeming and preserving grace, too proud to pray to the God that made us.

“It behooves us, then, to humble ourselves before the offended Power, to confess our national sins, and to pray for clemency and forgiveness.”

Most of his life, Lincoln was not a “religious” man, even though he was brought up in a family that attended an antislavery Baptist church. Lincoln never made a public

profession of faith. However, he was such a moral, upright, honest, good and compassionate man, a minister said to him one day, “Surely you must be a Christian! Why haven’t you joined a church?”

Lincoln replied that if he could find a church whose creed was summed up in, “Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and thy neighbor as thyself,” he would join that church with his heart and soul!

After the time his son Willie died in 1862, the greatest grief of his life, and before Lincoln’s death at age 56 in 1865, something happened which inspired him to begin to intensely study and pore over the Holy Scriptures. He was seen reading the Bible daily and frequently. Lincoln began to believe that the Civil War was the judgment of God of the sin of the nation for hundreds of years of slavery. Lincoln declared, during this time, “When I buried my son, the severest trial of my life, I was not a Christian. But when I went to Gettysburg and saw the grave of thousands of our soldiers, *I then and there consecrated myself to Christ. Yes, I do love Jesus.*” Shortly after that he told a friend that he had found the peace which had eluded him all his life.

In President Abraham Lincoln’s second inaugural address, he showed his deep spiritual insight into the causes of the Civil War and the people’s true need. It was March 6, 1865, a little over a month before his death. It has been described as “theologically intense,” “sacred,” even “prophetic,” containing “majestic biblical cadences.” Others have labeled it as the most spiritual, religious speech ever given by any American president. Lincoln declared:

“Neither party expected for the war the magnitude or the duration which it has already attained. . . . Each looked for an easier triumph, and a result less fundamental and astounding. Both read the same Bible and pray to the same God, and each invokes His aid against the other. It may seem strange that any men should dare to ask a just God’s assistance in wringing their bread from the sweat of other men’s faces, but let us judge not, that we be not judged. The prayers of both could not be answered. That of neither has been answered fully. The Almighty has His own purposes. ‘Woe unto the world because of offenses; for it must needs be that offenses come, but woe to that man by whom the offense cometh.’ If we shall suppose that American slavery is one of those which, in the providence of God, must needs come, but which, having continued through His appointed time, He now wills to remove, and that He gives to both North and South this terrible war as the woe due to those by whom the offense came, shall we discern therein any departure from those divine attributes which the believers in a living God always ascribe to Him? Fondly do we hope, fervently do we pray, that this mighty scourge of war may speedily pass away. Yet, if God wills that it continue until all the wealth piled up by the bondsman’s two hundred and fifty years of unrequited toil shall be sunk, and until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword, as was said three thousand years ago, so still it must be said ‘the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether.’”

In the closing words of his address, Lincoln declared:

“With malice toward none, with charity toward all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation’s wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and orphan, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.”

Lincoln had planned to make a public profession of his faith on Easter Sunday, 1865. Three days before his death, he gave a speech in which he said he was submitting a proclamation for a national day of thanksgiving to God. His last act was to issue an edict that all U.S. coins would bear the words, “IN GOD WE TRUST.” April 14, 1865, he was gunned down by an assassin, John Wilkes Booth.

When questioned about his last words, his wife replied: “He said he wanted to visit the Holy Land and see those places hallowed by the footprints of the Savior. He was saying there was no city he so much desired to see as Jerusalem. And with the words half-spoken on his tongue, the bullet of the assassin entered his brain.” (“Jewish Jewels,” February 2004; William Federer, “America’s God and Country,” *Encyclopedia of Quotations*).

### ***Theodore Roosevelt***

Another of America’s great presidents, Theodore Roosevelt, was also a Christian and deeply religious man. In his campaign for the presidency in 1912, running against Woodrow Wilson, he sounded like a Biblical prophet, warning against the dangers of Germany. He thundered against the life of “ignoble ease.”

During his second campaign for president, when World War I was threatening to break out in Europe, he foresaw the danger. He declared to his audiences, “We stand at Armageddon; we battle for the Lord.”

Roosevelt preached the ideals of the active, energetic, “strenuous life.” He himself had been a rancher, shot a grizzly bear that almost killed him, captured outlaws in South Dakota, later traveled the Amazon, and shot wild game in Africa, and was famous for his love of the out-of-doors. He was a “doer of deeds,” and lived the philosophy he advocated.

Roosevelt declared:

“In the long fight for righteousness the watchword for all of us is spend and be spent. It is of little matter whether anyone man fails or succeeds; but the cause shall not fail, for it is the cause of mankind.

“We, here in America, hold in our hands the hope of the world, the fate of the coming years; and shame and disgrace will be ours if in our eyes the light of high resolve is dimmed, if we trail in the dust the golden hopes of men.”

Throughout his presidency and political life, Teddy Roosevelt was assailed by critics, vilified by the press, and condemned vehemently by his political opponents. He learned to stand up under stress and persecution. Expressing his own philosophy of life, and life’s experience, Roosevelt wrote:

“Its not the critic who counts; not the man who points out how the strong man stumbles, or where the doer of deeds could have done them better. The credit belongs to the man who is actually in the arena, whose face is marred by dust and sweat and blood; who strives valiantly; who errs, and comes short again and again, because there is no effort without error and shortcoming; but who does actually strive to do the deeds; who knows the great enthusiasms, the great devotions; who spends himself in a worthy cause; who at the best knows in the end the triumph of high achievement and who at the worst, if he fails, at least fails while daring greatly, so that his place shall never be with those cold and timid souls who know neither victory nor defeat.”

### ***Ronald Reagan***

During his tenure as president of the United States, Ronald Reagan was also vilified and excoriated by the press, hounded and harassed by his critics who accused him of being shallow in his thinking, too old for the job, and who were horrified by his blunt, direct, and to them “unsophisticated” foreign policy. His critics accused him of being an “intellectual lightweight.” The French and much of Europe viewed him as a naïve and simplistic “cowboy.” The liberal left feared his contact with evangelical Christian leaders and his belief that a “nuclear Armageddon” would come in the future.

Nevertheless, Reagan was right and his critics in high places were wrong. As a result of his “simplistic” policy – “We win, they lose,” as he once said – the Evil Empire of the Soviet Union collapsed in upon itself. It was his very courage and convictions, and actions that drove the Soviet Union into bankruptcy and caused the demise of the Communist empire which – when he came to office – was threatening freedom around the globe. Unlike his predecessors, Reagan had faith and courage, and took bold, direct action – fearlessly – and by the end of his two terms in office, the Soviet Union had begun to crumble, collapse, and disintegrate.

Ronald Reagan restored the prestige and the might of America. Under his watch, more than \$2 trillion dollars were invested for new weapons, and troops, in a great strategy to defeat the ogre of Communism in the Soviet Union. In 1981, when he took over from President Carter, the military was demoralized, the fleet was shrinking, naval petty officers were quitting at the rate of 1,000 a month. The army acknowledged it could no longer carry out its mission to defend America; the military had become

“hollow.” When Reagan left office, he had completely revamped the military: The fleet was near 600 ships, including the new Trident nuclear submarine with its long-range missile launchers; the army had the new Abrams main battle tank and Apache attack helicopters; and the air force commissioned the new B-1B bomber, which had been canceled by Carter. All in all, the morale of the two million all-volunteer military, given a 12.5% pay raise, soared. But national morale also rose into the stratosphere.

What kind of man was Ronald Reagan? What were his roots? What were his beliefs? Why was he such an effective leader and statesman? How could one man stand up to and demolish by his courage, convictions, and actions, the greatest threat to world peace the world had ever known?

### *Reagan's Spiritual Beginnings*

Ronald Reagan's mother Nelle was an amazing Christian woman whom President Reagan credited for truly influencing him and his brother Neil. He wrote, “Nelle Reagan, my mother, God rest her soul, had an unshakable faith in God's goodness. And while I may not have realized it in my youth, I know now that she planted that faith very deeply in me. She made the most difficult Christian message seem very easy” (*Hand of Providence*, Mary Beth Brown, p.18).

In *An American Life*, Reagan wrote, “I was raised to believe that God has a plan for everyone and that seemingly random twists of fate are all part of His plan. My mother – a small woman with auburn hair and a sense of optimism that ran as deep as the cosmos – told me that everything in life happened for a purpose. She said all things were part of God's Plan, even the most disheartening setbacks, and in the end, she said, you didn't let it get you down: You stepped away from it, stepped over it, and moved on. Later on, she said, something good will happen and you'll find yourself thinking – ‘If I hadn't had that problem back then, then this better thing that *did* happen wouldn't have happened to me” (p.20).

Nelle prayed like she had a direct connection with God. President Reagan declared, “I've always believed that we were, each of us, put here for a reason; that there is a plan, somehow divine for all of us. In an effort to embrace that plan, we are blessed with a special gift of prayer, the happiness and solace to be gained by talking to the Lord.” He went on, “Many of us have been taught to pray by people we love. In my case, it was my mother. I learned quite literally at her knee. My mother gave me a great deal, but nothing she gave me was more important than that. She was my inspiration and provided me with a very real and deep faith” (p.28).

Ronald Reagan lived by a little saying Nelle had written in her Bible many years ago: “*You can be too big for God to use, but you cannot be too small.*”

A fellow worker with Reagan when he broadcast sports events at radio station WHO in Des Moines, Iowa, said of him, “I always thought he was a deeply religious man. Not the kind who went to church every Sunday. A man with a strong inner faith.

Whatever he accomplished was God's will – God gave it to him and God could take it away.”

Adrian Rogers, then president of the Southern Baptist Convention, met with Reagan in 1980, during the presidential primaries. He cross-examined him extensively and came away reporting, “Governor Reagan said that his faith is very personal, that God is real to him. He had a personal experience when he invited Christ into his life. I asked him if he knew the Lord Jesus or just knew ‘about’ Him. Reagan replied, ‘I *know* Him’” (Brown, p.88).

In the magazine *Modern Screen* in 1950, May issue, Reagan talked about prayer and dealing with hardships. He had lost a daughter, just days old, had almost died himself, and his first wife had departed from him. He knew personally the assurance promised in Psalm 34:18 – “The LORD is near to the broken-hearted, and saves the crushed in spirit.”

Ron confided to the reporter, “Unfortunately, my rate of prayer increases with my troubles. There hasn't been a serious crisis in my life when I haven't prayed and when prayer hasn't helped me.” He went on, “There was a wonderful line in *Kings Row* – ‘Some people grow up and some people just grow older.’ I believe God intends us all to grow up, and that there are times when all of us ought to take stock and see if we are growing up or if we are merely growing older. Sometimes it takes a tragedy to help us grow up.”

Throughout his life, Ronald Reagan has “always felt hands on his shoulders, keeping him safe, and he has never doubted that they belong to God,” says his daughter Patti. He would frequently tell her, “God always listens, and He's always watching.”

Reagan put a lot of stock in the power of prayer. When governor, people would stand across from his desk and say, “We have a problem.” Reagan commented on this in a letter to a young lady, saying, “The help I have found is in turning to God and asking His help in prayer. I believe very much in the power of prayer and feel if you ask sincerely for His help, it is forthcoming. For me that has been the answer.” He declared, “I have spent more time in prayer these past months than any previous period I can recall. The every day demands of this job could leave me with many doubts and fears if it were not for the wisdom and strength that come from these times of prayer” (*ibid.*, p.143).

Reagan's faith itself was deep, personal, and strongly influenced his political beliefs and activities. It was much more complex and embracing than a simple fundamentalist faith. His son, Michael Reagan, says, “My Dad was always religious. I remember him pointing to the lovely landscape and magnificent California trees around us when we took walks together and he'd say that they were the revelations of God's handiwork. He never really pushed his beliefs on others, though . . . he lived his religious beliefs . . . He always espoused his belief in God and how God made this beautiful land that we live in. He'd say that this is God's plan. He knew God all of his life. There may have been times when he wasn't hand-in-hand with God, but God was always close.”

Michael Reagan wrote in the “Foreword” of the book *Hand of Providence: The Strong and Quiet Faith of Ronald Reagan*, written by Mary Beth Brown, “My father is a godly man. He loves God. When he decided to run for president, he didn’t do it to raise himself up, to be admired, or to have others think he was great. He didn’t do it out of selfish reasons or because it is the most powerful position in the country. He did it out of duty. He believed God had called him to run for president. He believed God had things for him to do” (p. x).

In his eulogy at his father’s state funeral, Michael declared:

“Throughout it all my father never lost his sense of humility, his innate decency, his love of country, and his love of the American people. In an age of incivility he was a gentleman to the tips of his fingers. In all my life with him I never saw him do anything to hurt another person. He would have rather cut off his hands than offend a fellow human being.

“Above all, my father lived close to his Maker. He accepted whatever happened as the will of the Lord with absolute confidence. And he believed that he would receive what he needed to cope with whatever problems arose. This was the source of his great optimism

“. . . [M]y father prayed and meditated wherever he was. He especially liked to worship at his beloved Rancho del Cielo, his ‘open cathedral,’ as he called it, saying it reminded him of the line from Scripture: ‘I lift up my eyes to the hills – from whence comes my help? My help comes from the Lord’ (*U.S. News & World Report*, June 21, 2004).

Says author Mary Beth Brown, about Reagan’s faith, “Current biographers have looked at Ronald Reagan through jaded eyes. When you see someone through the eyes of a secular humanist, you will fail to see the vibrant Christian faith and fruits of the Holy Spirit that were evident in the life of Ronald Wilson Reagan. To understand this man, his decision-making process as president, and the unprecedented success it produced, you must understand his reliance on God.

“The writers who have attempted to explain Ronald Reagan have ignored this most important aspect of his life: his faith in God, who rules in the lives of men and women who are committed to Him. Reagan believed he had a calling upon his life from God, and he wanted to fulfill that calling” (p.xiii).

When asked about his personal faith, Reagan himself told a questioner, “Having accepted Jesus Christ as my Saviour, I have God’s promise of eternal life in heaven, as well as the abundant life here on earth that He promises to each of us in John 10:10.”

In 1984, Reagan showed his indefatigable spirit of faith, when he declared:

“If we trust him, keep his work, and live lives for his pleasure, he’ll

give us the power we need – power to fight the good fight, to finish the race, and to keep the faith.”

Reagan believed that acceptance of Jesus Christ as Savior is paramount to salvation. He accepted Christ as Savior as a teenager, and continued to profess that belief throughout his life. He credited God and divine intervention for his survival of the assassination attempt on his life in 1981. He wrote during his recuperation, “Whatever happens now I owe my life to God and will try to serve Him every way I can.”

Ronald Reagan truly believed in the power of prayer. He was almost constantly in prayer. Biographer Edmund Morris saw him sitting down mumbling to himself and was surprised to learn that he was talking to God. Reagan once told Jerry Falwell that he tried to begin every day as president praying, “O God, not my will, but Thine be done.”

Former Attorney General Edwin Meese worked with Reagan since he was governor and was a close, personal friend. He observed, “The president feels a person’s religious beliefs are a very private matter. He has never tried to exploit them or utilize them for political purposes. At the same time, he feels a Christian has an obligation, when the opportunity comes up naturally, not to be reticent about professing his faith.

“Of all the people I’ve ever known, I have never known anyone less uncomfortable about discussing religious matters in a very matter-of-fact and confident way. To him, this is an important part of his life, and when the subject comes up, he is not at all hesitant to talk about it – and this was true way back in California” (Brown, *op. cit.*, p.183).

### ***The Assassination Attempt***

John Hinckley Jr. attempted to assassinate President Reagan, in March of 1981, soon after he became president. It was a very close call.

The bullet was found within an inch of the president’s heart. It was a specially designed bullet for use in big game hunting, called a “Devastator,” because it was made to flatten out and cause maximum damage as it ripped through a body. Its tip was filled with lead azide, a chemical designed to explode on secondary contact with something hard. The chemical is a toxic poison. Amazingly, the bullet did not explode when it hit Reagan’s chest.

Writes Mary Beth Brown, “Many ‘miraculous factors,’ as the president called them, added up to the saving of his life. And if any one of them had occurred differently, he most certainly would have died that day in March 1981. President Reagan points out in his autobiography that most of the doctors that practiced at the hospital had been attending a special meeting that afternoon: ‘Within a few minutes after I arrived, the room was full of specialists in virtually every medical field.’ He had turned to the reporter at just the right time when he was shot; otherwise, the bullet might have hit directly into his heart. Reagan biographer Edward Morris points out that the limousine miraculously reached the hospital, although driving in uncontrolled traffic, in just three-

and-a-half minutes. And the bullet didn't explode while Dr. Aaron was exploring for it – or at any other time since it had entered Reagan's body. 'Jerry's decision [Jerry Parr, the lead of the security detail with the president that day] to go directly to the hospital was the difference between my dad living or dying,' Michael Reagan says in his autobiography, *On the Outside Looking In*. Michael also says his father told him 'that it was only divine intervention that kept him alive'" (p.14).

Says Brown, after this close call, "Recovering in the White House, President Reagan recommitted his life to God, writing in his diary, 'Whatever happens now, I owe my life to God and will try to serve him in every way I can'" (p.15).

Michael Deaver, a presidential aid, later told Peggy Noonan, "I know from conversations he and I had after the assassination attempt that there was no question in his mind that his life had been spared. He absolutely believed it. He felt the Lord had spared him to fulfill whatever mission it was that he was supposed to fulfill. And he was gonna make sure that he lived his life to the fullest and did whatever he considered to be the right thing for the rest of his life."

### ***God and Ronald Reagan***

Paul Kengor in *God and Ronald Reagan: A Spiritual Life*, tells a side of America's president few really know. It is a surprising book. Kengor is not a religious zealot but a professor of political science who set out to write a book about how Reagan defeated Communism and the Soviet Empire. But when he got into the original papers and letters of President Reagan, a whole new side of him opened up and he discovered a degree of religious intensity that has not been publicly known.

As he began to write the book, the story of Reagan's faith "overtook the rest of the book," Kengor wrote. Reagan's mother was the greatest influence in his life, and she was a devout Christian who tithed faithfully and devoted her life to the poor and helpless, regularly visiting local hospitals, mental asylums, jails, carrying her Bible, apples, and cookies. She was fearless in her Christianity. She tithed scrupulously and taught her son to do the same.

Reagan believed that acceptance of Jesus Christ as Savior is paramount to salvation. He accepted Christ as Savior as a teenager, and continued to profess that belief throughout his life. He credited God and divine intervention for his survival of the assassination attempt on his life in 1981. He wrote during his recuperation, "Whatever happens now I owe my life to God and will try to serve Him every way I can."

### ***Reagan's Legacy***

When Ronald Reagan was sworn into office, the world was in crisis. People had lost their confidence in the country and its leadership. American hostages were being held in Iran. An aggressive Soviet Union was gobbling up countries in Africa, and central America, fomenting revolution nearer and nearer to our shores.

Eight years later, when Reagan left office, the scene had changed – dramatically. The Soviet Union was suddenly “left on the ash heap of history,” as Reagan had prophesied. The world was safer, and the economy had performed an about-face and was booming, beginning a time of great economic expansion.

### *Reagan’s Farewell Address*

Ronald Reagan understood that faith is what made America great. He was deeply concerned that Americans would forget their heritage “under God” because of a powerful and influential secularism growing throughout the country.

Reagan declared 1983 to be “The Year of the Bible. That same year he gave his famous speech to the National Association of Evangelicals about the “evil Empire.” Reagan knew that the Christian audience he was speaking to that evening fully understood the true significance of Independence Day – and the unique place the American people had in the world. But he wanted them to understand his own heart on these matters – and to take comfort in knowing their president also understood the dangers of secularism, which even back then was undermining our religious heritage at every opportunity.

Reagan told the audience, “I want you to know, that this administration is motivated by a political philosophy that sees the greatness of America in you, her people, and in your families, churches, neighborhoods, communities – the institutions that foster and nourish values like concern for others and respect for the rule of law under God.”

He went on, “Now, I don't have to tell you that this puts us in opposition to, or at least out of step with, a prevailing attitude of many who have turned to a modern-day secularism, discarding the tried and time-tested values upon which our very civilization is based. No matter how well intentioned, their value system is radically different from that of most Americans. And while they proclaim that they’re freeing us from superstitions of the past, they’ve taken upon themselves the job of superintending us by government rule and regulation. Sometimes their voices are louder than ours, but they are not yet a majority.”

Ronald Reagan’s America was an America “under God.” American history makes no sense unless we acknowledge the vital role religion has played in our national heritage. The Declaration of Independence clearly states that we acknowledge that all our rights come from God, who is Sovereign and Creator over all. The Declaration of Independence expresses America’s heart and soul.

Ronald Reagan was the “Last Great Lion” of the 20<sup>th</sup> century – the man credited the most for the fall of the Soviet Empire. He was a deeply spiritual man, as all of America’s great presidents were. America has been blessed with many spiritual giants as leaders throughout its history, especially in times of crisis.

Undoubtedly this is because we are at heart a deeply religious people. We are descended from Ephraim, the younger son of Joseph, who was taught the Torah at the bended knees of Jacob, his grandfather, and who absorbed this teaching deep into his inner being.

### *Normandy*

In 1984, on the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the landing of the Allied forces at Normandy, President Reagan spoke against the windswept cliffs, eloquently pointing out the motivation and heart of the American troops on that fateful day, D-Day, June 6, 1944:

“Forty summers have passed since the battle that you fought here. You were young the day you took these cliffs; some of you were hardly more than boys, with the deepest joys of life before you. Yet, you risked everything here. Why? Why did you do it? What impelled you to put aside the instinct for self-preservation and risk your lives to take these cliffs? What inspired all the men of the armies that met here? We look at you, and somehow we know the answer. It was faith and belief. It was loyalty and love.

“The men of Normandy had faith that what they were doing was right, faith that they fought for all humanity, faith that a just God would grant them mercy on this beachhead, or on the next. It was the deep knowledge – and pray God we have not lost it – that there is a profound moral difference between the use of force for liberation and the use of force for conquest. You were here to liberate, not to conquer, and so you and those others did not doubt your cause. And you were right not to doubt.

“You all knew that some things are worth dying for. One’s country is worth dying for, and democracy is worth dying for, because it’s the most deeply honorable form of government ever devised by man. All of you loved liberty. All of you were willing to fight tyranny, and you knew the people of your countries were behind you.

“Something else helped the men of D-day, their rock-hard belief that Providence would have a great hand in the events that would unfold here; that God was an ally in this great cause. And so, the night before the invasion, when Colonel Wolverton asked his parachute troops to kneel with him in prayer, he told them: ‘Do not bow your heads, but look up so you can see God and ask His blessing in what we’re about to do.’ Also, that night, General Matthew Ridgway was on his cot, listening in the darkness for the promise God made to Joshua: ‘I will not fail thee nor forsake thee.’

“These are the things that impelled them; these are the things that shaped the unity of the Allies.”

The heart and soul of Ephraim is manifest in these stirring words. They describe our nation and our people in their best and brightest moment. These same motives are manifest in the devotion and loyalty and purpose of American and British fighting men now serving their country in Iraq, battling for freedom and striving to bring democracy to a beleaguered and abused nation which suffered such gross inhumanity under the brutal tyranny of Saddam Hussein. They are “the best and the brightest.” May God remember their good deeds and kindnesses and suffering on the behalf of others.

Willingness to sacrifice self for their country, which they love, and for the principles of freedom and liberty, for others – is it any wonder why God loves the American and the British peoples?

The Boy Scouts organization, which began in 1907 by Sir Robert Baden-Powell of Great Britain, and was brought to the United States in 1910, exemplifies this character trait. Today more than five million young boys belong to the Boy Scouts of America. The Scout oath states:

“On my honor I will do my best,  
To do my duty to God and my country;  
To obey the Scout law;  
To help other people at all times;  
To keep myself physically strong, mentally awake, and morally straight.”

The Scout Law is also based on sound religious principles, and promotes solid citizenship and moral conduct. Its twelve points state that a Scout is: Trustworthy, Loyal, Helpful, Friendly, Courteous, Kind, Obedient, Cheerful, Thrifty, Brave, Clean, and Reverent.

The institution of Scouting promotes sound character development among young people. It teaches boys to get along, to become good citizens, to participate with others, and to learn skills of survival and leadership qualities. The Scout motto is “Be Prepared,” and its slogan is, “Do a good turn daily.” Its foundational principles are clearly based on the Bible – the Torah and Christian ethics. Scouting teaches by giving young people “hands on experience” – *teaching by doing* is the active principle underlying its program and activities.

These character traits are certainly the same traits exemplified by Joseph, the son of Jacob, and his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh!

### ***The American Soldier***

James Dobson, in a special message on Memorial Day 2004, to American soldiers, sailors, marines, airmen and coast guardsmen, described the beating heart in every true American. His words give us deep insight into the heart of our people.

“Since the dawn of our nation’s founding, every generation has endured a time of testing. From the first skirmish at Lexington, to the burning of the White House in 1812, to Teddy Roosevelt’s charge up San Juan Hill, to the carnage and human cost of the Civil War to the death and destruction of World War I to the surprise attacks and subsequent liberations of World War II, to the wretched winter campaign of Korea, to the stalemate in the jungles of Vietnam and to the more recent war against terrorism and tyranny in the Middle East, this nation has been through the types of trials and conflicts that, as Thomas Paine suggested, ‘try men’s souls.’ We are also facing our challenges and dangers. The cast of characters may change, but the goal of the enemy has always been the same – to take away the freedoms of others who could not defend themselves. Last month, in an address to the American people, President Bush summed up the significance behind our tireless fight and the source of our

liberties by stating, ‘. . . freedom is not this country’s gift to the world; freedom is the Almighty’s gift to every man and woman in this world.’

“You might be familiar with a favorite author of mine who writes on issues related to American military history. The late Stephen Ambrose wrote numerous best sellers, ranging from biographies of Presidents Eisenhower and Nixon to various works related to World War II. In *Citizen Soldier*, Mr. Ambrose spoke eloquently to the noble and pure nature of the American warrior. All throughout history, he said, conquering soldiers looted, raped, pillaged, plundered and even murdered the people they had subdued. Americans in uniform, however, served as a significant exception. ‘Everywhere in the world,’ wrote Ambrose, ‘whether in Belgium, the Philippines, Germany, or Japan, the sight of a twelve-man squad of GIs brought joy to people’s hearts. . .the sight of those American kids meant cigarettes, candy, C-rations, and freedom. They had come, not to conquer, but to liberate.’”

This nobility of character and purpose God foresaw in the days of Jacob, when he blessed Ephraim and Manasseh. This noble character is why Ephraim was given the choicest and greatest of the blessings of the birthright!

### ***Other Presidents and Patriots***

The theme of religious faith and Biblical foundation runs throughout the history of the United States of America like a mighty river – coursing from the Founding Fathers to the 21<sup>st</sup> century. It is a strong flowing current throughout our turbulent history. George Washington acknowledged, “No people can be bound to acknowledge and adore the invisible Hand which conducts affairs of men more than the people of the United States.

Patrick Henry, the famous patriot and one of the founding fathers of the United States, declared: “It cannot be emphasized too strongly or too often that this great nation was founded not by religionists but by Christians, not on religions but on the Gospel of Jesus Christ.”

President Grover Cleveland declared, “Above all, I know there is a Supreme Being who rules the affairs of men and whose goodness and mercy have always followed the American people, and I know He will not turn from us now if we humbly and reverently seek His powerful aid.”

President Dwight D. Eisenhower professed, “Without God there could be no American form of government nor an American way of life. Recognition of the Supreme Being is the first – the most basic – expression of Americanism.”

Why is this nation so unique in this regard? Why are the American people, throughout their history, at heart, in their innermost being, so religious?

Why, indeed! The answer lies in the upbringing of Ephraim, who learned the ways of God, the teaching of the Torah, from his grandfather Jacob, as he sat upon his knees as a little child.

The American, Anglo-Saxon people are descended in no small part from Ephraim, the second son of Joseph, son of Jacob, son of Isaac, son of Abraham! When all is said and investigated, we have been a very religious, moral, and morally aware nation. We have had our many faults, to be sure. We have repeatedly transgressed the laws of God, and have had to repent and turn back to Him in heart-felt repentance, sorrow, and contrition.

### *Who Is More Religious?*

Nevertheless, our religious heritage testifies on our behalf, that we are a much more religious people than other nations around the earth. *We are Ephraim.*

America has a huge church going population. Most Americans, even today, still identify themselves as “Christian” and go to church. In Great Britain church attendance is way down. Almost two thirds of Americans belong to a religious group, and of those 95 out of 100 are “Christian,” and 5 out of 100 are Jewish.

In Great Britain, the Church of England has come upon hard times. An article in the *Daily Mail* boldly states, “Church may drop Sabbath day due to lack of interest.” The article continues, “Sunday should be abandoned as the Sabbath day because nobody wants to go to church at the weekend,” according to a report by the Church of England (“Never on a Sunday,” *Daily Mail*, by Steve Doughty, January 20, 2004).

Says Doughty, “Britain is no longer a Christian country and most of the population would rather spend Sunday with their families. . . The bleak assessment of the collapse of Sunday church-going follows years of declining attendance. The number of people going to Sunday services fell below a million by 2000.” During the 20<sup>th</sup> century, Sunday school attendance dropped from 55% to only 4% of children, “meaning that even the rudiments of the Christian story and Christian experience are lacking in most young people,” added the report.

Declining church attendance is matched by declining moral standards, and a terrible increase in promiscuity and profligate behavior among young people. These problems are increasing throughout the Western world, even in America, but compared to Great Britain, America still has a much greater interest in religion. “There are an estimated 40,000,000 evangelicals [Christians] in America. The U.S. is regarded as the most ‘religious’ Christian country in the world!,” writes Shira Sorko-Ram in *MaozIsrael Report*. “And it is this country that God is using to protect Israel’s existence at this very time while most of the world is quite willing to see her demise” (*MaozIsrael*, February 2004).

But while Great Britain is navigating the slippery slope of diminishing faith and religious convictions, with declining interest in Christianity by the population, it is significant to observe that on March 20, 1992, President George Bush signed a historic Joint Resolution of the United States Congress, recognizing the Seven Noachide Laws as

the “bedrock of society from the dawn of civilization.”

The Resolution urged America to “return to the moral and ethical values contained in the Seven Noachide Laws” (J.J. Res. 104, Public Law 102-104).

*This strong religious characteristic of America down through its history, from its inception even to the present day, is a very important identifying and defining mark of Ephraim!*

Writes Steve Bonta, in “America’s Hidden Strength,” appearing in the March 22, 2004 issue of *The New American*, “But the most important, indeed the foundational, element of American culture is the comparatively high standard of morality observed by American citizens. This is a legacy of the deeply religious settlers who first settled what became the American colonies. Motivated by both a desire to escape religious persecution in the mother country and to establish a higher, covenant-driven social order, the Pilgrims, Puritans, and other religious refugees of the 17<sup>th</sup> century set a standard of piety still recognized in our day. Morality reinforced by religion is crucial to liberty; as Lord Acton pointed out, ‘liberty is the prevention of control by others. This requires self-control, and therefore religious and spiritual influences’” (page 14).

Bonta surveys modern-day America, and concludes, “Americans, for all our failings, are among the most moral people on earth. We attend church far more consistently than our counterparts in Europe, for example.” He also observes the sad plight of drug addiction, pornography, and other vices, but states that “they are nevertheless far less prevalent here than in much of the rest of the world.”

Even so, we have entered a critical time in our history. Without any shadow of a doubt, America and her freedoms are today in great peril. The moral decline in our nation, since the days of the founding fathers, is truly shocking. We dare not rest on our laurels of yesteryear, and the deeds and piety of our ancestors. America, today, along with the rest of the world, is in dire need of a spiritual shock treatment – and a return to the ways of the God who has blessed our nation from its inception to the present time. If we don’t wake up and take stock of the situation, then a day of reckoning fast approaches.

### ***Faith and Liberty***

The difference between the approach to religion and faith by Americans and Europeans is fundamental. Americans are descendants of men and women who fled religious persecution in Europe. Writes Emanuele Ottolenghi in the *Jerusalem Post*, “Religious minorities fleeing European persecution created many North American colonies – Puritans in Massachusetts, Quakers in Pennsylvania, Catholics in Maryland, Baptists in the Carolinas. When, two centuries later, their descendants gathered in Philadelphia, they agreed on one thing: Government could not forbid religious freedom by legislating against this or that denomination, nor could it promote one denomination’s establishing one Church to the detriment of others. In other words, the kind of religious freedom intrinsic to the US Constitution First Amendment aims to empower believers to

freely practice their own faith. It is a freedom that embraces the idea of religious pluralism, religious tolerance, and respect for different readings of the Christian gospel and revelation” (“Faith and Liberty,” *International Jerusalem Post*, June 11, 2004).

The writer is a Leone Ginzburg Research Fellow in Israel Studies at Oxford University. Europe, he says, is another story. In Europe, “on the old continent there ruled one church, whether Protestant or Catholic, against which arose French revolutionaries and their Enlightenment supporters. Freedom of religion in Europe is born out of a revolt *against* religion.”

The writer contrasts the two approaches toward religion and faith. American liberalism proclaims “In God we trust,” he points out, whereas in Europe “God was perceived as *liberticide* because in God’s name, books and people were burnt.” The differences are sanguine. Says the author, “While American democracy, rooted in Protestant ethics and in the religious tolerance of the Anglo-Saxon liberal tradition, could reconcile faith and freedom, Europe’s nineteenth century’s anti-clerical liberalism has now become an atheistic, anti-religious and post-Christian sentiment, which views religion as synonymous with intolerance and sees it suspiciously as an obstacle to freedom and democracy.”

In Europe religion is almost viewed as synonymous with oppression, whereas in the United States it is viewed liberating. Therefore, the churches in the United States are far more energetic, alive, and a force to be reckoned with, whereas religion in Europe makes men cringe with worry and fear of oppression. In European history, religion often sided with the forces of reaction and tyranny and against religious liberty and freedom of conscience. The two approaches have led to diametrically opposite results and a widely divergent view of religion.

This is another vital factor illustrating the fundamental difference between America – Ephraim, the more religious son of Joseph, with a religiously inspired democracy – and the nations of Great Britain and the rest of Europe.

### ***Letter from a Prisoner***

A prisoner in Texas wrote me a letter, and put America in spiritual perspective, today. I thought the letter was very profound in its insights. He declared:

“I would like to commend you for the Jan-Feb.04 issue of the PF. You hit the nail right on the head, especially in the article ‘The Ugly Christian.’ You are exactly right in pointing out the hypocrisy of so-called ‘Christians’ and how America is not truly a Christian nation. People like to refer to the fact that we had great God-fearing leaders in our past such as George Washington and Abraham Lincoln. They think that somehow this justifies what we do now, but what have we done for God lately? Where are the true Christian leaders now? You mentioned in Prophecy Briefs of this very issue about how one would think if there were any other true Christians in high offices that they would have come to the aid of Judge Roy Moore. Well, even as I write this letter the mayor of San Fran-

cisco is illegally issuing same-sex marriage licenses. He is clearly breaking the law of California and just about everyone knows it, but our so-called 'Christian' President and the governor of California have done nothing to stop this. If a mayor of any U.S. city were to proclaim that murder is legal wouldn't the governor of that state and most assuredly the President intervene? This clearly shows once again that there is no true Christian leadership in this country.

"The main reason that people in America don't repent is that they don't see or want to see that there is anything wrong with this country. Take for example some sins and acts that are rampant in America that God Almighty condemns; homosexuality (Rom.1:26-27). Rich getting richer on the backs of the poor (Amos 2:6-7). Strangers devour our strength and we know it not (Hosea 7:8-9). A lot of people including so-called 'Christians' don't see anything really wrong with these things. We have all heard comments like, 'The more diversity the stronger our nation is,' and, 'It's just business.'

"Yet anyone who studies the Bible knows that God condemns homosexuality and greed. The Bible states that we have mixed ourselves among the people. Not only do we fail to realize that strangers are devouring our strength, we think that this makes our nation 'stronger.' Most people in America think that all of this diversity is good, yet the Bible states that a house or kingdom divided cannot stand (Matt. 12:25). One thing is for sure, and that is America is clearly a nation divided.

"There is an old saying which is 100% true, that is the first step in overcoming a problem (addiction) is to admit that you have a problem. It is the exact same way when it comes to repentance. The first step in repenting is to admit that you have sinned and therefore have something to repent of. If a person or nation does not believe that they have something to repent of or that their way of life is wrong they will not repent.

"In the weeks following the attacks of 9-11 all we could hear was 'God Bless America,' yet within a year's time of this great tragedy the California Supreme Court outlaws the 'Pledge of Allegiance' because of the phrase 'One nation under God,' and even now this issue is in the hands of the U.S. Supreme Court. What utter hypocrisy! One minute it's 'God bless America' and the next it's let's strike the name of God from all mention! Also, whenever anyone would suggest that God allowed the attacks of 9-11 because of our great sins they would be told, 'There's nothing wrong with our way of life!' This attitude shows exactly what I mentioned earlier, and that is, people refuse to believe that America has sinned greatly against God Almighty. . .

"I tell you that the words of Paul in II Timothy 3:1-5 certainly describe our nation. 'Having a form of godliness (we claim to be a Christian nation) but denying the power thereof (we put God out to pasture at every turn). From such turn away.'

"May God help all of us to acknowledge that our country is wicked and has turned its back on God. If doing this makes 'America' look bad so be it. We need to put God and His Word first instead of covering up sin in order to maintain the idea of 'America.' Putting God and His Word in a corner because of a person, thing, or even a name is idolatry. Yes, this country used to be at one time the most God-fearing nation on earth, but the sad truth is that America now is a completely

different nation.” Those are sobering words. America stands at a cross-roads.

***Judge Roy Moore’s Poem***

Judge Roy Moore is the former Chief Justice of the Alabama Supreme Court. He achieved notoriety for his resistance to a judicial mandate to remove a monument of the Ten Commandments from the judicial building in Montgomery, Alabama. For his alleged offence, he was stripped of his judicial office and persecuted by liberals and the ACLU and other anti-Christian organizations.

Judge Moore was removed from office because of his strong Judeo-Christian stance, but never apologized for his beliefs. In the course of his trials and tribulations, Judge Moore wrote a tremendous poem, entitled “America the Beautiful.” He wrote, in a poem entitled “America the Beautiful”:

“America the Beautiful, or so you used to be.  
Land of the pilgrim’s pride; I’m glad they’ll never see.  
Babies piled in dumpsters, Abortion on demand,  
Oh, sweet land of liberty, your house is built on sand.

“Our children wander aimlessly, poisoned by cocaine,  
Choosing to indulge their lusts, when God has said abstain.  
From sea to shining sea, our Nation turns away  
From the teaching of God’s love and a need to always pray.

“So many worldly pastors tell lies about our Rock,  
Saying God is always broke so they can fleece the flock.  
We’ve kept God in our temples, how callous we have grown,  
When earth is but His footstool, and Heaven is His throne.

“We’ve voted in a government that’s rotting at the core,  
Appointing Godless Judges who throw reason out the door,  
Too soft to place a killer in a well deserved tomb,  
But brave enough to kill a baby before he leaves the womb.

“You think that God’s not angry, that our land’s a moral slum?  
How much longer will He wait before His judgment comes?  
How are we to face our God, from Whom we cannot hide?  
What then is left for us to do, but stem this evil tide?

“If we who are His children, will humbly turn and pray;  
Seek His holy face and mend our evil way:  
Then God will hear from Heaven and forgive us of our sins,  
He’ll heal our sickly land and those who live within.  
But America the Beautiful, if you don’t, then you will see,  
A sad but Holy God withdraw His hand from thee.”

### *We Have Forgotten God*

At the present time, the struggle to make the United States live up to its heritage as a “Christian nation” has fallen on hard times. In its 1962 decision in *Engel v. Vitale*, the Supreme Court ruled that public schools could not sponsor specific prayers in the classroom. The next year the Court banned state-sponsored Bible readings in schools.

Last year (2003), the Ninth Circuit Court in California ruled that “under God” had to be dropped from the Pledge of Allegiance. In June, 2004, the Supreme Court overturned the ruling on a technicality, since the father of the child who brought the lawsuit was not married or the custodial parent of the child. This case still remains unfinished business, since the Supreme Court only dismissed the case because the father had no legal standing to file the lawsuit.

University of Tennessee-Chattanooga humanities professor Wilfred McClay, coeditor of *Religion Returns to the Public Square*, believes that hard-line secularists are determined to see “unbelief established as the only permissible expression by the state of any disposition toward ultimate things.” Says McClay, “Expression like ‘under God’ in the pledge suggest that the nation is under judgment and subject to higher moral principles” (quoted in *U.S. News & World Report*, “The Faith of Our Fathers,” June 28/July 5, 2004).

J. R. Church, of *Prophecy in the News*, wrote in the July, 2004 issue: “A generation has been raised with the notion that prayer and Bible reading are forbidden. Uncle Sam said it was! The laws of our land are no longer founded upon the Ten Commandments. Therefore, the politicians can become as corrupt as they want, and society can plunder the assets of what was once a great nation.

“As a minister, I am tempted to lay the blame at the feet of every pastor and every Christian in America, but I must say that we are not altogether to blame – not in the past, and not now. Having tried to warn society for so many years, I am convinced that what ministers and Christians say no longer carries any moral weight. We are not the ‘salt’ and ‘light’ that we thought we were.

“The real blame must be laid at the doorstep of every politician . . . from the bully pulpit of the mayor’s office, to the courts, to the governors, to the state legislatures, to the Congress, and finally, to the bully pulpit of the American president. I point the finger of accusation and say, ‘It’s your fault!’” (“Preparing America for the Mark of the Beast!”, *Prophecy in the News*, 2004, p.3).

J. R. Church has a point. However, one must also point the finger to many ministers and pastors who also have joined forces with the secularists to minimize the influence of religious faith based on the Bible in America. The blame for this secularization of America is widespread and the sickness continues to get worse. For many, it may well be a sickness unto death.

This spiritual malaise was prophesied long, long ago, in the pages of Holy Writ. Isaiah the prophet, about 713 B.C., eight centuries before Christ, was led by God's Spirit to prophesy, "Go now, write it before them on a tablet, and inscribe it in a book, so that it may be for the time to come as a witness forever. For they are a rebellious people, faithless children, children who will not hear the instruction of the LORD; who say to the seers, 'Do not see'; and to the prophets, 'Do not prophesy to us what is right; speak to us smooth things, prophesy illusions, leave the way, turn aside from the path, let us hear no more about the Holy One of Israel'" (Isa.30:8-11, NRSV).

Because of this widespread attitude of rejection and ignoring of the Word of God in the conduct of life by people, God thunders, "Therefore thus says the Holy One of Israel: Because you reject this word, and put your trust in oppression and deceit, and rely on them; therefore this iniquity shall become for you like a break in a high wall, bulging out, and about to collapse, whose crash comes suddenly, in an instant; its breaking is like that of a potter's vessel that is smashed so ruthlessly that among its fragments not a sherd is found for taking fire from the hearth, or dipping water out of the cistern" (Isaiah 30:12-14).

God says to His people, "For thus says the Lord GOD, the Holy One of Israel: In returning and rest you shall be saved; in quietness and trust shall be your strength" (verse 15).

The sooner we return to God and His laws, the better it will be for us. Denial only means more suffering, more punishment, more pain and agony, because of the fruits of rebellion and transgression.

The apostle Paul also warned of this rebellious end-time generation. He wrote, "You must understand this, that in the last days distressing times will come. For people will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boasters, arrogant, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, inhuman, implacable, slanderers, profligates, brutes, haters of good, treacherous, reckless, swollen with conceit, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God, holding to the *outward form of godliness but denying its power*. Avoid them!" (II Tim.3:1-5).

Paul went on, in the next chapter, warning us, "For the time is coming when people will not put up with sound doctrine, but having itching ears, they will accumulate for themselves teachers to suit their own desires, and will turn away from listening to the truth and wander away to myths" (II Tim.4:3-4).

Hosea the prophet declares, "Hear the word of the LORD, O people of Israel [our people!]; for the LORD has an indictment against the inhabitants of the land. There is no faithfulness or loyalty, and no knowledge of God in the land. Swearing, lying, and murder, and stealing and adultery break out; bloodshed follows bloodshed. Therefore the land mourns, and all who live in it languish; together with the wild animals and the birds of the air, even the fish of the sea are perishing" (Hosea 4:1-3).

## *Chapter Fourteen*

# The Astonishing Prophetic Times

A major area of Biblical evidence as to which nation, today, is representative of ancient Ephraim is in the realm of fulfilled Biblical prophecy in history. This is an area which has been totally overlooked or ignored by most Biblical commentators. It is the proof of the dates and time-lines of Biblical prophecy itself.

The fulfillment of Biblical prophecy to the very year, stretching over thousands of years, relating to the lost tribes of Israel, is clearly of the utmost significance. How does this kind of evidence apply to the identities of Ephraim and Manasseh?

God told ancient Israel, that if they disobeyed Him and violated His covenant, then He would punish the nation “seven times for their sins.” This key prophecy is found in Leviticus, chapter 26: “But if you do not obey Me, and do not observe all these commandments, and if you despise My statutes, or if your soul abhors My judgments, so that you do not perform all My commandments, but break My covenant, I also will do this to you: I will even appoint *terror* over you, wasting disease and fever which shall consume the eyes and cause sorrow of heart, and you shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it. I will set My face against you, and you shall be defeated by your enemies. Those who hate you shall reign over you, and you shall flee when no one pursues you. And after all this, if you do not obey Me, then I will punish you *seven times* for your sins” (Lev.26:14-18, NKJV).

Thus God’s people were to be punished “seven times” for their sins.

### ***The Prophetic Year***

The Ten Tribes of ancient Israel were taken into captivity by the Assyrians in 721-718 B.C. According to Leviticus 26, these tribes were to be punished “seven times” for their sins (Lev.26:18, 21, 24, 28). How is this to be computed?

As many Scriptural commentators have pointed out years ago, a “time” equals a “year” in prophetic fulfillment. In the book of Revelation, we find “the woman” is to be protected “in the wilderness” for “1260 days” (Rev.12:6). Later on in the same chapter, we read that the woman is to be protected in the wilderness for “a time, times, and half a time” – three and one half “times” (Rev.12:14). Thus 1260 days equals 3 ½ times. Simple division shows us that dividing 1260 days by 3 ½, gives us 360 days in a “time.”

A “prophetic year” contains 360 days, apparently based on the fact that the original “year” was 360 days in length. This is derived from the length of the months during the Noachian deluge. We read in Genesis 7:11, “in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on that day all the fountains of the great deep burst forth, and the windows of the heaven were opened” (Gen.7:11). Then we read: “At the end of one hundred fifty days the waters had abated; and in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, the ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat” (Gen.8:3-4). The Flood lasted five months, to the very day.

Therefore, a period of five months in Noah’s time equaled 150 days; making each month in succession 30 days in length. That means 12 months would have been *360 days!* This indicates that the original calendar of mankind was a 360-day calendar, at least up until the Flood. (From this ancient calendar, we derive the “circle” which has 360 degrees, dating back to the primeval past).

### *The 360 Day Year*

Immanuel Velikovsky points out in *Worlds in Collision* that, “Numerous evidences are preserved which prove that prior to the year of 365 ¼ days, the year was only 360 days long” (p.330). He states that in ancient India, “The texts of the *Veda* period know a year of only 360 days.” Passages in which this length of year are clearly stated are found in all the Brahmanas. Those texts nowhere mention an intercalary period of five extra days which are currently part of the solar year. Velikovsky goes on, “This Hindu year of 360 days is divided into twelve months of thirty days each. The texts describe the moon as crescent for fifteen days and waning for another fifteen days; they also say that the sun moved for six months or 180 days to the north and for the same number of days to the south” (p.331).

In their astronomical works, the Brahmans used “very ingenious geometric methods,” Velikovsky states, and so their apparent “failure” to discern that the year of 360 days was 5 ¼ days too short seemed baffling to western historians. Their perplexity fails to account for the fact that the terrestrial year may have once been 360 days.

In the ancient Persian calendar, “The ancient Persian year was composed of 360 days or twelve months of thirty days each. In the seventh century [B.C.] five *Gatha* days were added to the calendar,” Velikovsky continues (p.332).

The old Babylonian year was also 360 days. Ctesias wrote that the walls of Babylon were 360 furlongs in compass, “as many as there had been days in the year” (quoted on page 333). The Babylonians divided the heavens into 36 decans, a decan being the space the sun moved relative to the fixed stars in a 10-day period. 36 decans in a year would make a year of 360 days – no more, no less.

Historians realize that at first the Babylonians recognized a year of 360 days, “and the division of a circle into 360 degrees must have indicated the path traversed by the sun each day in its assumed circling of the earth” (Cantor, *Vorlesungen uber Geschichte der*

*Mathematik*, I, 92, quoted by Velikovsky).

The ancient Assyrians also had a 360 day year with each month containing 30 days. Assyrian documents refer to months of 30 days each, only, and count the months from the moon's crescent to crescent. These facts all puzzle astronomers who cannot understand why all these ancient civilizations were so consistently erroneous in their calculation of the months and the year.

The ancient Mayans, half way around the world, also had a year of 360 days, in remote antiquity. The Mexicans, at the time of the conquest, called a thirty-day period a moon, even though they knew that the moon's synodical period is 29.5209 days. Their calculations were even more accurate than the Gregorian calendar. Says Velikovsky, "Obviously, they adhered to an old tradition dating from the time when the year had twelve months of thirty days each, 360 days in all" (p.339).

Similarly, in ancient China the people had a year divided into twelve months of 30 days each, comprising a 360 day year. Says Velikovsky, "A relic of the system of 360 days is the still persisting division of the sphere into 360 degrees; each degree represented the diurnal advance of the earth on its orbit, or that portion of the zodiac which was passed over from one night to the next. After 360 changes the stellar sky returned to the same position for the observer on the earth" (p.340). After the year changed from 360 days to  $365 \frac{1}{4}$ , the Chinese added  $5 \frac{1}{4}$  days to their year.

Suffice it to say, the 360 day year is well attested to in ancient history. Thus the Bible uses it in calculating the "prophetic years" in prophecy. A 360-day year is called a "prophetic year" in prophecy.

Therefore, since a Biblical "time" equals a year, then a period of punishment of "seven times" would equal seven years of 360 days each. Seven years of 360 days each would equal 2,520 days. Now we come to another factor which must be weighed.

### ***Day for a Year Principle***

Each "day" itself represents a "year" in actual fulfillment. This principle of interpretation is revealed in the book of Numbers. Moses sent twelve spies to search out the land of Canaan. They were gone for forty days. When they returned, ten of the spies brought back an "evil" report, saying that the land was filled with giants, and to conquer them was hopeless (Num.13:1-32). The people then rebelled against Moses and refused to go up and take the land out of fear (Numbers 14:1-4).

Because of this disobedience and lack of faith, God punished that generation. He told them, "According to the number of the days in which you spied out the land, forty days, *for every day a year, you shall bear your iniquity, forty years*, and you shall know my displeasure (Numbers 14:34, NRSV).

This same principle of prophetic interpretation is borne out in Ezekiel 4:4-6. God told His prophet: “Then lie on your left side, and place the punishment of the house of Israel upon it; you shall bear their punishment for the number of the days that you lie there. For I assign to you a number of days, three hundred ninety days, *equal to the number of YEARS of their punishment*; and so you shall bear the punishment of the house of Israel.

“When you have completed these, you shall lie down a second time, but on your right side, and bear the punishment of the house of Judah; forty days I assign you, *one day for each year*” (Ezek.4:4-6, NRSV).

Let’s apply this principle to the “seven times” punishment God said He would pour out on his people if they broke His covenant (Lev.26).

A “time” is a “year.” A prophetic year is 360 days. Therefore 7 x 360 equals 2,520 “days.” Since each “day” is a “year” in actual fulfillment, this means the punishment was to be incurred for 2,520 *years*. Counting 2,520 years from 718 B.C., when Israel was taken captive, we come to the year 1803 A.D. (Remember, there is no year “zero”). That is the precise year in which the time of punishment was to be concluded.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2520 \text{ years} \\
 \underline{-718 \text{ B.C.}} \\
 1802 \\
 \underline{+1 \text{ (because no year zero)}} \\
 1803 \text{ A.D.}
 \end{array}$$

We should expect, therefore, to see something significant to occur during that year which proves indeed that the term of punishment was finished. We should expect that something very fortuitous would occur in that year, specifically concerning the tribe of Ephraim, which was the leading tribe in ancient Israel – where the government rested.

### ***The Louisiana Purchase***

In 1803, the fledgling, newly-born United States suddenly acquired the greatest land tract in all history, by peaceful means – it purchased the Louisiana Purchase from France for a paltry 3 cents per acre!

After he sold the richest farmland in the world – the primary agricultural land west of the Mississippi – to the fledgling United States, Napoleon Bonaparte said, “This accession of territory affirms forever the power of the United States. I have just given England a maritime rival that sooner or later will lay low her pride.”

The total purchase price for a vast territory stretching 828,000 square miles, more than 500 million acres, was a mere \$15 million dollars. Out of this vast territory was carved all or part of 13 states: Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, North Dakota, South

Dakota, Nebraska, Oklahoma, Colorado, Kansas, Minnesota, Montana, and Wyoming. Never in world history had there been such a bargain! The value of this vast territory today would be beyond calculation. It contains a major part of the world's greatest breadbasket.

What is the significance of this greatest land acquisition in all history? It occurred in 1803, exactly 2,520 years from the date the "seven times" punishment fell on ancient Ephraim and the kingdom of Israel. Since Ephraim was the leading tribe back in ancient history, we would expect this "miracle" to occur for the descendants of Ephraim, not Manasseh. During that fateful year it was the *United States* which received this fantastic blessing from God, delivered through the hands of Napoleon, who was strapped for cash to continue his wars in Europe against Britain and other enemies.

### ***France-Reuben Loses Birthright!***

Let's take a closer look at this date in history.

What is the significance of the acquisition of the Louisiana Purchase in 1803? The fact that it occurred precisely in 1803, 2,520 years from the beginning of the "seven times" punishment which fell on ancient Israel, and the fact that it was America which reaped this astonishing blessing, should give us pause to consider. Since *Ephraim* was the leading tribe of ancient Israel, we would anticipate that some "miracle" would occur for the *descendants of Ephraim*, not Manasseh, at the time specified.

And indeed, that was the precise year that the *United States* received this incredible acquisition of territory from Napoleon of France! It was not Napoleon's intent to create a rival superpower, but that is what he did!

Let's look behind the scenes, and see what really happened in 1803. Napoleonic France was at war with Great Britain. Napoleon had conquered much of Europe, and was creating a vast French Empire. But then, suddenly, strapped for cash, Napoleon sold the greatest land tract in all history to the new fledgling United States, guaranteeing they would become a great world power to rival England. Of what significance is this?

### ***Jacob's Prophecy***

The Stone Edition of the *Chumash* discusses Genesis, chapter 49, where Jacob blesses his twelve children. The *Chumash* states: "Blessings occupy a prominent place in the Torah and particularly in the book of Genesis. From the time Abraham was given the power to bless whomever he wanted (*Rashi* to 12:2), the concept of blessing played an increasingly important role. That the righteous can confer a blessing is a God-given privilege, for He provides the metaphysical force that makes the blessing efficacious."

The *Chumash* continues: "Jacob was about to bless the tribes individually, each in line with its own character and ability, so that they would be directed toward the paths for which God had suited them, for His blessings would make clear that each of the tribes

had its own unique mission. Only Jacob could perceive this.

“Far from breeding disunity, however, their separate missions were to bring them together, because they were like the spokes of a wheel; though the spokes point in different directions, they are all part of the same wheel and essential to its function. So, too, the tribes of Israel.”

In blessing his children, in his last days before his death, Jacob also gave a prophetic summary of what would befall his twelve sons – based upon their tribal characteristics which were identified.

Reuben was Jacob’s firstborn son, the son of Leah (Gen.29:32). But he had gone up to his father’s bed, and had sexual intercourse with Bilhah his father’s concubine, and Jacob discovered it (Gen.35:22). Because of this crime of incest, Reuben lost the birthright.

In his final remarks concerning the descendants of Reuben, Jacob declared, “Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might and the firstfruits of my vigor, excelling in rank and excelling in power. *Unstable as water, you shall no longer excel* because you went up to your father’s bed; then you defiled it – you went up onto my couch!” (Gen.49:3-4).

Says the Stone edition of the *Chumash*, regarding Jacob’s prophecy on Reuben, “*Water-like impetuosity*. Jacob told Reuben, ‘You lost your right to national leadership because of the *impetuosity* with which you rushed to vent your anger’ [in the incident with Bilhah when you mounted your father’s bed. See 35:22]. It was hasty recklessness like that of fast-flowing waters, which rush ahead and cause damage without a thought to the consequences – therefore *you cannot be foremost*, ‘you do not deserve to serve in the superior positions that were designated for you’ (*Rashi*). Following the Midrash, *Targum Yonasan* renders interpretively: ‘But because you sinned, my son, the *birthright is given to Joseph*, the kingship to Judah, and the priesthood to Levi.’

“*Ramban* comments that Reuben was punished measure for measure. He wanted to prevent Jacob from having children by Bilhah, who would share in the family heritage. His punishment was that he lost the firstborn’s share of the heritage.

“The tragedy of Reuben is informative. He did not mean to sin; to the contrary, he thought he was acting virtuously in defending his mother’s honor. Moreover, Reuben repented sincerely, and was held up as a model of sincere repentance, but this did not save his status as the firstborn. A leader cannot be impetuous. He must think through his decisions and reckon their consequences. The Midrash adds that Jacob comforted Reuben, saying that he was still a respected member of Israel and that Moses would bless him along with the other tribes (Deuteronomy 33:6)” (p.276-277).

The descendants of Reuben in the modern world have been identified as the people of France! France, like Reuben, is a nation noted for its hasty decisions, recklessness, and being “unstable as water.” The French are noted for their

preoccupation with sex as well, like Reuben. The French were notorious in years past for “French post cards,” nude revues in Paris, and a looseness when it comes to sexual morality. But they are also noted for excellency in customs, decorum, and manners.

Notice that Reuben of old forfeited his birthright and it went to Joseph instead. Even so, Napoleon of France, in selling the vast Louisiana territory to the United States, *sold what might have been France’s birthright territory to the people of Ephraim, the second son of Joseph who was to receive the birthright!* God said, “Ephraim is my firstborn,” in place of Reuben who went up to his father’s couch (Jeremiah 31:9).

The fact that France (Reuben) sold this vast territory to the United States (Ephraim) illustrates in precise detail how the rights of the “firstborn” and “birthright” were transferred from Reuben to Ephraim in historical times. Here then is another “proof” that the United States is Ephraim – because we and not someone else received this vast territory from France, the original holder of the birthright!

Isn’t it remarkable? After the lengthy period of 2,520 years of punishment, when everybody had probably forgotten all about this long prophecy, right on cue, as it were, God suddenly BLESSED the United States – modern Ephraim – with the greatest land acquisition ever in all human history! Of course, the blessings would naturally be expected to be poured out primarily upon the holder of the *BIRTHRIGHT* promise – which was *Ephraim!*

Now if on the other hand, it is Great Britain who represents modern Ephraim, then at the end of the 2,520 years we would expect BRITAIN would reap this incredible windfall blessing given precisely at the end of the times of punishment! But such is not the case. Not even close. Great Britain did not receive any particular “blessing” that year, or any year close to it.

Here, then, is incredible Biblical evidence that America represents ancient Ephraim.

### ***Judah Also Fulfilled the 2,520 Year Prophecy***

Ancient Judah was invaded by king Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon in 607 B.C. After a siege of three years, the Jewish people were carried into captivity to Babylon in 604 B.C. When we apply the “seven times” punishment principle to them, then we have another period of prophecy of 2,520 years of punishment which would not be fulfilled until precisely 2,520 years later.

Notice!

2520 years
<u>-604 B.C.</u>
1916
<u>+1</u> (no year zero)

1917 A.D.

What happened in 1917 A.D. that relates to the kingdom of Judah?

Counting from 604 B.C., 2,520 years brings us to 1917 A.D. – the very year General Allenby conquered Jerusalem and wrested control of Palestine from the Turkish Empire during World War I! *In that very same year, the Balfour Declaration in Great Britain paved the way for the return of the Jewish people to their homeland in the Middle East.*

Arthur James Balfour (1848-1930) served as the Prime Minister of Great Britain from 1902 to 1905 and was a leader of the Conservative Party for over 20 years. The Balfour Declaration issued in 1917 bore his name. He served as Foreign Secretary in the coalition war cabinet of David Lloyd George from 1916 to 1919.

The Balfour Declaration dealt with the establishment of a Jewish homeland in Palestine. The Declaration read as follows:

“His Majesty’s Government view with favor the establishment in Palestine of a national home for the Jewish people, and will use their best endeavors to facilitate the achievement of this object, it being clearly understood that nothing shall be done which may prejudice the civil and religious rights of existing non-Jewish communities in Palestine, or the rights and political status enjoyed by Jews in any other country.”

In 1922 the League of Nations endorsed the declaration and gave Great Britain a mandate to rule over Palestine. The British mandate ended in 1947. In 1948, the Jews in the territory mandated to Britain established the independent state of Israel.

1917 was the pivotal year. Notice! Once again, a very significant fulfillment of prophecy occurred, 2,520 years after the original nation of Judah was taken into captivity by Babylon in 604 B.C. This amazing prophetic fulfillment, like that for the kingdom of Israel, clearly validates the prophetic principle of 2,520 years of punishment on God’s people for disobedience – for both Israelites and Jews.

### ***The Jubilee Cycles***

The “Jubilee cycle” is a yearly cycle of 50 years, the 50<sup>th</sup> year being the “Jubilee” year, or year of release, liberty, and freedom – the great year of “blessing” (see Leviticus 25:8-15). A great “Jubilee” cycle would be 50 Jubilee cycles, or 2,500 years (50 x 50). Therefore we call it a “great” Jubilee cycle. Such a year would be a year of very special, unique blessings.

The “great Jubilee” time cycle dates also are very interesting and informative. Was it a mere “coincidence” that there were exactly 50 “Jubilee” periods of 50 years each – exactly 2,500 years – from the conquest of ancient Israel-Ephraim in 718 B.C. until

their true independence in 1783, when the Treaty of Paris was signed, concluding the American Revolutionary War?

2500 years (Great Jubilee cycle)  
-718 B.C. (year of Israel taken captive)  
 1782 A.D.  
+1 (no year zero)  
 1783 A.D. Treaty of Paris

Was it mere “coincidence” that a similar Jubilee period of 2,500 years from the conquest of ancient Judah in 604 B.C. takes us to the very year the great Zionist movement began, in 1897-1898? (the Jewish year overlaps the Roman year).

2500 years (Great Jubilee cycle)  
-604 B.C. (year Judah taken captive)  
 1896 A.D.  
+1 (no year zero)  
 1897/98 A.D. year Zionist movement began

Was it mere “coincidence” that another Jubilee period of 2,500 years from another captivity of ancient Judah in 597 B.C., during the reign of Jehoiachin, brings us to 1904 A.D. – the precise year of the start of the Panama Canal?

2500 years (Great Jubilee cycle)  
-597 B.C. (year Jehoiachin /Judah taken captive)  
 1903  
+1 (no year zero)  
 1904 A.D. USA begins Panama Canal

In the year 1904, the United States took possession of the Panama Canal zone, in central America, and began construction on the Panama Canal – one of the greatest engineering feats in world history, creating one of the world’s greatest sea gates. The main work on the canal was completed in 1914, uniting the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, paving the way for world trade and commerce. The canal shortened voyages from New York to San Francisco to less than 5,200 miles. The former route around the southern tip of South America required 13,000 miles.

The Panama Canal was vital in World War II, allowing the U.S. to move its fleets where needed the most. This great “sea gate” was obtained by the United States precisely 2,500 years after king Nebuchadnezzar took king Jehoichin and Judah captive in 597 B.C.

Another Great Jubilee cycle fulfillment of prophecy can be dated from the time of Daniel’s vision of the he goat, Alexander the Great, conquering the Persian Empire. The vision occurred in the year 553 B.C. – 219 years before Alexander attacked the Persian Empire. The date Daniel had this astounding vision was, according to Ussher’s

chronology, in 553 B.C. – *precisely 2500 years* – fifty Jubilee cycles or one Great Jubilee cycle – till the year 1948 – the year of the founding of the modern state of Israel!

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2500 \text{ (Great Jubilee cycle)} \\
 \underline{-553 \text{ B.C. (year of Daniel's great vision)}} \\
 1947 \\
 \underline{+1 \text{ (no year zero)}} \\
 1948 \text{ A.D. (year state of Israel founded)}
 \end{array}$$

Now let's take a good look at that astounding prophecy contained in the eighth chapter of Daniel itself. It has a very amazing meaning and application for our day, in this end-time generation.

### ***The Mystery of Daniel's 2300 Day Prophecy***

In the book of Daniel the prophet is a most puzzling prophecy that has dumfounded Biblical students and researchers for thousands of years. It is found in chapter 8: “In the third year of King Belshazzar’s reign, I, Daniel, had a vision . . . In my vision I saw myself in the citadel of Susa in the province of Elam; in the vision I was beside the Ulai Canal. I looked up, and there before me was a ram with two horns, standing beside the canal, and the horns were long. One of the horns was longer than the other but grew up later. I watched the ram as he charged toward the west and the north and the south. No animal could stand against him, and none could rescue from his power. He did as he pleased and became great.

“As I was thinking about this, suddenly a goat with a prominent horn between his eyes came from the WEST, crossing the whole earth without touching the ground. He came toward the two-horned ram I had seen standing beside the canal and charged at him in great rage. I saw him attack the ram furiously, striking the ram and shattering his two horns. The ram was powerless to stand against him; the goat knocked him to the ground and trampled on him, and none could rescue the ram from his power. The goat became very great, but at the height of his power his large horn was broken off, and in its place four prominent horns grew up toward the four winds of heaven” (Dan.8:1-8).

The angel Gabriel explains to Daniel the basic meaning of this vision. In verse 20, he says, “The two-horned ram that you saw represents the kings of Media and Persia” – that is, the Persian Empire. “The shaggy goat is the king of Greece, and the large horn between his eyes is the first king” – that is, Alexander the Great. “The four horns that replaced the one that was broken off represent four kingdoms that will emerge from his nation but will not have the same power” (vs.20-22). After the death of Alexander by fever in Babylon, his natural brother and two sons were murdered. The kingdom was therefore divided up between Alexander’s four top generals, with Seleucus obtaining Syria and Babylon in the east, Cassander ruling Greece and Macedonia in the west, Ptolemy ruling in Egypt to the south, and Lysimachus ruling over Thrace, Cappadocia, and northern Asia Minor in the north.

### *Alexander's Ferocious Attack*

This prophecy was amazingly fulfilled. Alexander's forces – composed of 30,000 mobile cavalry – moved so rapidly it was as if they traveled “without touching the ground” (v.5). He attacked the Persians with fury and unheard-of violence, representing the concentrated wrath of Greece against the Persians because of previous Persian invasions of Greece and the cruelty they had shown, as well as Darius's attempts to seduce Alexander's soldiers to treachery.

The date of Alexander's world-changing, bench-mark invasion of Asia was 334 B.C. Thus the date of the vision of the shaggy goat smashing the two-horned ram begins with this incredible victory of the Greeks over the Persian army in 334 B.C.

But after Alexander's lightning-like conquests, he mysteriously died in Babylon and his kingdom was divided. The prophetic vision of Daniel 8 then continues: “Out of one of them [the four horns or kings that divided up the Empire] came another horn, which started small but grew in power to the south and to the east and toward the Beautiful Land. It grew until it reached the host of the heavens, and it threw some of the starry host down to the earth and trampled on them. It set itself up to be as great as the Prince of the host; it took away the daily sacrifice from him and the place of his sanctuary was brought low. Because of REBELLION, the host of the saints, and the daily sacrifice were given over to it. It prospered in everything it did, and truth was thrown to the ground.

“Then I heard a holy one speaking, and another holy one said to him, ‘*How long will it take for the vision to be fulfilled* – the vision concerning the daily sacrifice, the rebellion that causes desolation, and the surrender of the sanctuary and of the host that will be trampled underfoot?’ He said to me, ‘It will take 2,300 evenings and mornings; then the sanctuary will be reconsecrated’” (Dan.8:9-14, NRSV). The word for “reconsecrated” here is translated “cleansed” in the King James Version. The Hebrew word is *tsadaq*, #6663 in Strong's Concordance and means “to make right, cleanse, clear self, do justice, turn to righteousness.” *Gesenius Chaldee-Hebrew Lexicon* defines it as “to be right, straight”; “to be just, right,” “to have a just cause,” “to obtain one's cause,” “to render just or righteous.” It can also mean “justice, liberation” (#6664, with a slightly different vowel pointing).

What is the real meaning of this strange vision of the 2300 days and the temple sanctuary being “made right,” “cleared,” “justified,” “cleansed,” or “attaining liberation”?

### **2300 “Days”**

Daniel heard the question of HOW LONG would it take for the VISION he saw in Daniel 8 to be fulfilled, or accomplished – from beginning to end. That is, from the beginning moment when the Grecian “goat” attacked and pulverized the two-horned Persian “ram” – until the END of the vision, when the “sanctuary” would be cleansed or restored, during the “TIME OF THE END” (Dan.8:17; also 8:13, and 5-7).

The prophesied length or duration of this vision was to be 2300 “days” (v.14). Using the “day for a year” principle, we have therefore 2300 YEARS of fulfillment.

Alexander the Great attacked and conquered the assembled Persian army at the river Granicus in 334 B.C., storming across the river with fury, with only 30,000 troops. In so doing, he changed the course of the history of the world from that moment, with one world empire falling, and another rising. Since the prophecy begins with this event, we must count the 2300 years from that very date. Beginning in 334 B.C., counting 2300 years, we come to the year of 1967 A.D.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2300 \text{ days} \\ \underline{-334 \text{ B.C.}} \\ 1966 \\ \underline{+1 \text{ (because no year zero)}} \\ 1967 \text{ A.D.} \end{array}$$

What happened in 1967 A.D.? How was this prophecy literally fulfilled? Let’s review the incredible sequence of events that fulfilled this amazing Biblical prophecy!

### ***The Six Day War in 1967***

In 1967 the state of Israel defeated the combined armies and air forces of the surrounding Arab nations in Six Days that shook the world. Was this incredible victory foretold in the pages of Bible prophecy?

Says the *Worldbook Encyclopedia* in regard to this marvelous event:

“UN troops prevented raids across the Israeli-Egyptian border after the 1956 war. But Arab raids continued from Syria and Jordan into Israel, and Israeli forces raided those countries in return. Border clashes increased greatly in the mid-1960’s.

“In May 1967, Israel and the three Arab countries all alerted their armed forces for possible war. At Egypt’s demand, the UN troops left the Gaza Strip and the Sinai Peninsula. The Egyptians then again closed the Gulf of Aqaba to Israeli ships.

“On June 5, 1967, Israeli planes attacked airfields in Egypt, Jordan, and Syria. The Israelis destroyed the Arab air forces almost completely. Then they defeated the Arab armies. By June 8, Israeli troops occupied the Gaza Strip, the Sinai Peninsula, and Jordanian territory west of the River Jordan, including Jordan’s half of Jerusalem. On June 10, Israel captured Syria’s Golan Heights. The war was over in six days.

“When the brief war ended, the Israelis controlled Arab territory totaling more than three times the area of Israel itself. In June 1967, Israel officially made Jordan’s half of Jerusalem a part of Israel” (“Israel,” p.393).

In June of 1967 the world was astounded as in Six Days, the small nation of Israel demolished and devastated the combined land and air forces of Egypt, Syria, and Jordan, recapturing the Sinai, the Golan Heights, the West Bank of the Jordan River, and the Old City of Jerusalem. In the Six Day War, against seemingly hopeless odds, in less than three hours the Israeli air force destroyed three hundred Egyptian aircraft on the ground, losing only 3-4 planes in the bargain.

When Jordan entered the war, the Israelis attacked with a vengeance. To many, it was like the “day of the Lord” in Biblical prophecy. Quickly, the West Bank was seized from Jordanian forces, and the Old City of Jerusalem, from which the Jews had been expelled during the time of Emperor Hadrian in 135 A.D., once again fell into Jewish hands. The news rang out in Israel – “HAR HA’BAYIT B’YADENU!” “The Temple Mount is in our hands!” Throughout Israel, there was a spontaneous burst of incredible joy and exultation – newly-weds embraced, mothers hugged children, fathers and sons danced, comrades in arms shouted with glee, everywhere Jews embraced, danced and sang, “*This is the day the LORD hath made . . .*”

It was truly a Day of *Nissin v’niflaot* – “*miracles and marvels*”!

After having been exiled from Jerusalem for some 1832 years, it seemed like a dream come true. Once again Jewish feet trod on the holy places of Zion! The enemies of Israel were vanquished *in six days!* Who could believe it? Surely the hand of the Almighty was evident in this spectacular victory!

Could Bible prophecy overlook such a pivotal and critical event? Of course not! The 2300 day prophecy of Daniel, chapter 8, *foretold* the Temple Mount would be returned to Israel in the year 1967 A.D.

This astounding war occurred exactly 2300 years from the pivotal battle between Greece and Persia that began Daniel’s vision of the eighth chapter. This furious battle, like its predecessor 2300 years ago, was fought against overwhelming odds, and the outcome was decided by Divine Providence. Something occurred during this battle in 1967 which proves it was the terminus of this ancient prophecy. The Jews seized the Old City of Jerusalem, historic Jerusalem, and along with it THE SACRED TEMPLE MOUNT, where history shows that Solomon’s Temple, and the Second Temple, were both constructed.

In 70 A.D., Roman armies under Titus and Vespasian, conquered the Jews and destroyed the Temple. In 132-135 A.D., during the Bar Kochba rebellion, another generation of Jews rebelled against Rome – after which Jews were *banished* from Jerusalem and expelled from their homeland by the Romans who were furious that they had had to fight two fierce and costly wars with the Jews in a space of only sixty two years. The Jews were a shattered people. Hope of a Jewish Kingdom was extinguished.

Of that time, Winston (grandson of the wartime Prime Minister) and Randolph Churchill wrote:

“Jerusalem was finally reduced to rubble and the harrow drawn across its former glories. In the new Roman city of Jerusalem no Jew was allowed to set foot more than once a year. The practice of Judaism was forbidden and even circumcision proscribed. Although the Jews remained in Palestine, there could be no further hope of a Jewish Kingdom” (*The Six Day War*, Churchill, p.2-3).

But now, incredibly, in 1967, for the first time since those ancient days, the Jews once again established Jewish *control* and sovereignty and authority over the TEMPLE MOUNT AREA OF JERUSALEM! The Temple Mount sanctuary was “restored” – “made right” – “justified” – vindicated – “liberated” – just as the prophecy had predicted! Gentiles had ruled the region for almost two thousand years. Now, once again, it was under Jewish control – and the way was once again *prepared* for the rebuilding of the ancient Jewish Temple.

When the Jews conquered the Old City of Jerusalem, wresting it from the hands of the Jordanians, feelings were at an incredible level. Winston S. and Randolph S. Churchill wrote:

“The Wailing Wall is supposedly the last remains of the Temple, destroyed by the Roman Emperor Titus in the year 70 A.D. As he stood beside it Dayan affirmed: ‘We have returned to our holiest of holy places, never to be parted from it again.’ Ben-Gurion, too, when he visited the wall declared, in a voice charged with emotion: ‘This is the greatest day of my life’” (*ibid.*, p.141).

Winston and Randolph Churchill continue:

“Thus, by nightfall on Wednesday June 7, the Israelis had in their hands Jerusalem, the city of King David, Hebron, the city of Abraham, and all the Holy Land. Just a couple of weeks before, there were few Jews who would have believed they would see any of these places in their lifetime. For Jews the world over but particularly for those who had come to make their homes in Israel, *this was the fulfillment of a hope of centuries*” (p.147).

Is this astonishing victory for Israel in 1967 significant? A nation of 2 1/2 million put to rout the armies and military forces of Arab nations with a combined population of over 140 million. This was “a staggering achievement,” in the words of Winston S. and Randolph S. Churchill. Colin Legum in *The Observer* called the Israeli victory “a *miracle of arms*” (*ibid.*, p.194-195). He added that one of Israel’s leading soldier-politicians remarked:

“The only analogy I can think of is if Britain had found herself in occupation of Berlin just three days after Dunkirk. The suddenness of the transformation from a situation of acute danger to unparalleled victory is too much for any people to absorb. It will take time to get over it” (*ibid.*).

On June 27 three laws were passed through the Knesset annexing the Old City of Jerusalem and reuniting it with the New City on the next day.

### *The Awesome Significance*

What is the real significance of this amazing fulfillment of Biblical prophecy? Since this prophecy terminates with the year 1967, that year itself must be a key linchpin in the overall plan of God. It must be extremely significant. Could it be the key pointer that tells us we are *now living in the "time of the end"*?

The Messiah, Jesus Christ, told us, "Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled" (Matt.24:34). What is "this generation"? He is talking about the generation that *sees these signs of fulfilled prophecy* given in the Mount Olivet prophecy. Surely the fulfillment of the 2300 day/year prophecy is a major dating key in God's overall plan. It must pinpoint the "last generation" of which Christ speaks.

In Biblical language, a "generation" is generally a period of forty years (Numbers 14:34). Therefore, the END of the generation of 1967 *would come* within a period of 40 years from 1967, bringing us to 2007 A.D.

However, in 1967 the Jews did NOT obey God, and take control of the Temple Mount which Divine Providence had given into their hands. They left the Arab Wakf or Muslim authorities in control. They refused to begin to rebuild the Temple of God in its rightful place in Jerusalem. Even though they recaptured the Temple Mount, Jewish General Moshe Dayan gave control over the holy site to the *Muslims!* So an opportunity to fulfill prophecy and usher in the coming of the Messiah was *lost!*

Almost 40 years have gone by since that date. Even as God caused ancient Israel to WANDER in the wilderness for 40 years, because they did not have FAITH in God to enter into the Promised Land – they "feared the GIANTS" – even so, the generation of 1967 lacked *faith* in God to bring about His promises, and refused to seize the initiative, take control of the Temple Mount, and begin to *rebuild God's House*. So they, too, like their ancestors, have been punished with *40 years* of ongoing troubles, Palestinian strife, terrorism, incessant and multiple suicide-bomber attacks, and seething hate-filled Muslim violence!

Those 40 years are about up. Will the Jews *now* repent of their stubbornness, and secularism, and lack of faith, and once again set about to rebuild God's House?

### *The Prophecy of Haggai*

Another vital prophecy in the book of Haggai speaks of a Temple of God being rebuilt in the "end of days," before the return of the Messiah (Hag.2:7-9). The foundation of the Second Temple was laid in the year 520 B.C. under Zerubbabel. It was finished in 515 B.C. God told the people of Judah, "Consider now from this day and upward . . .

even from the day that the foundation of the LORD's temple was laid, consider it" (Hag.2:18).

So let's "consider" it. Using the principle of "seven times," and counting 2,520 years from 520 B.C. brings us to the year 2001 A.D. – the very year of the Muslim terrorist assault on the Twin Towers in New York and the Pentagon – symbols of America's great wealth and power. If we count the 2,520 years from the date the Temple was *finished*, 515 B.C., then we are irresistibly brought to the year 2006 A.D. – just a few years from now! Will something happen then to bring about the rebuilding of God's House in Jerusalem?

### ***The PROOF of Biblical Prophecy***

Think about it. The odds against all these prophecies being fulfilled, to the very year – prophecies dating back thousands of years – by mere chance, is absolutely zero. For these things to occur *right on schedule, as it were, after thousands of years, by mere accident or chance – without DIVINE INTERVENTION – would be IMPOSSIBLE!* Only a supreme GOD could bring these astounding Biblical prophecies to pass, over the millennia. Such events would be IMPOSSIBLE – except for the Supreme Power of God!

You might as well as take a bunch of spare parts from an automobile junk-yard, and throw them up into the air, and think that when they fell to the ground you would see a fully assembled whole fleet of fully equipped and furnished Boeing 747 Jumbo Jets, complete with wings, tails, fuselage, jet engines, wheels, cockpit, instrument panels, food, fuel, seats, cushions, toilets, movies, stereo, earphones, magazines, and not to mention toilets!

God thunders in His Word, "Declare and present your case; let them take counsel together! Who told this long ago? Who declared it of old? Was it not I, the LORD? There is no other god besides me, a righteous God and a Savior; there is no one besides me" (Isaiah 45:21).

God declares, "Remember this and consider, recall it to mind, you transgressors, remember the former things of old; for I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is no one like me, declaring the END from the beginning, and from ancient times things NOT YET done, saying, 'My purpose shall stand, and I will fulfill my intention'" (Isaiah 46:8-10).

*These fulfilled prophecies PROVE the Bible is God's Word, and also prove who is modern-day Ephraim and modern Manasseh, and modern-day Judah!*

## Chapter Fifteen

# Honest Objections ANSWERED

Who are the descendants of the two sons of Joseph in the Modern world? Who is Ephraim? Who are the offspring of Manasseh? Does it really make any difference? If so, why? Many of those who understand that the “Lost Ten Tribes” of Israel have been found in the modern nations of Western Europe, the British isles, and North America, can’t seem to agree as to who modern day Ephraim and Manasseh represent. Historically, the ‘British-Israel’ people have identified Ephraim with the British Commonwealth, and Manasseh with America. Herbert Armstrong perpetuated and popularized this view in his writings on the subject.

More recently, two prominent writers continue to support this *old* viewpoint. But isn’t it about time we re-examined and reviewed the REAL FACTS and the true EVIDENCE in this matter? Isn’t it time we quit looking to the opinions of others, and investigate the real facts underlying the case? The truth should stand on its own, and shine forth like a beacon of light. It needs no apology.

Most people today make the same mistake Adam and Eve made in the garden of Eden. When presented with some new gift of “knowledge,” people have a tendency to accept it without checking out the source, motivation, or background to the gift. They choose to believe something without adequate proof or evidence, perhaps because they like the personality of the presenter, they admire him, or his office, or they look up to him for other reasons – but they *fail to do a proper investigation of the facts!* Eve was guilty of this very same thing when she first partook of the fruit of the tree of the “knowledge of good and evil,” presented to her by the cunning and seductive serpent. Adam was guilty of the same character flaw when he accepted the same fruit from Eve, without asking any questions as to its origin or provenance.

Says the *Stone Edition Chumash* on this critical failure of human beings, in a commentary on Genesis 3:17 – “*Because you listened . . . People always make choices in life and they are responsible for them. Adam failed to exercise his responsibility to investigate what he was being offered and to realize that when he had to choose between pleasing God and pleasing the one who was offering a momentarily enticing choice, his first allegiance had to be to God. As Or HaChaim puts it, he succumbed to her voice without examining the content of her words*” (p.18).

Belief and acceptance of something without proper research and investigation is a short-cut to error and serious trouble in life, and ultimately leads to death and destruction.

How often this little drama has played itself out in the course of human affairs! As king Solomon wrote, “There is a way that *seems right* to a person, but its end is the way to death” (Prov.14:12, NRSV).

### ***A Recent Letter***

I received a letter asking about the Ephraim-Manasseh issue. The writer sent me a copy of a letter written to him identifying modern day Manasseh with the United States and Ephraim with Great Britain and her sister nations. The author was Steve Collins, who has written many books on ancient Israel, including his epic *The Lost Ten Tribes . . . Found!*

Another modern author who believes Ephraim is the United Kingdom and related peoples is Yair Davidy, of Israel. I have had correspondence with both of these gentlemen, and count them as friends, and have sold many of their books to others. However, I cannot agree with their determination as to the identities of these two powerful tribes of the ‘Lost Tribes’ of Israel.

In his letter, Steve Collins gave six reasons – “proofs,” if you please – as to why he believes the USA is Manasseh and the United Kingdom and its sister nations comprise end-time “Ephraim.”

Let’s examine these six points, one by one, according to history, common sense, and the most important of all – the testimony of the Scriptures.

### ***Genesis 48***

Collins writes: “1. Gen.48 prophesies that Ephraim will be a multitude (or fullness) of nations but Manasseh will be one single nation. The British fit the Ephraimite description.”

This idea came straight from the mouth and writings of Herbert Armstrong. He wrote in his booklet *United States and British Commonwealth in Prophecy*, copywrited in 1967, 1972, 1975, 1980, in a section titled “The United States Is Manasseh,” the following assertion: “In Genesis 48 Jacob first passed the birthright on to the two sons of Joseph jointly, speaking of them both together. Then, finally, he spoke of them separately – Manasseh was to become the single GREAT nation; Ephraim, the COMPANY of nations” (page 93).

Then, after a short dissertation on the subject, Herbert Armstrong concluded: “The proof that we [the U.S.A.] are Manasseh is overwhelming. Manasseh was to separate from Ephraim and become the greatest, wealthiest single nation of earth’s history. We alone have fulfilled this prophecy. Manasseh was in fact the *thirteenth* tribe. There were twelve original tribes. Joseph was one of these twelve. But when Joseph divided into two tribes and Manasseh separated into an independent nation, it became a *thirteenth* tribe” (p.94).

To say something is one thing. But *where is his proof?* He offers none. The reader is expected to believe what he is told.

But merely “saying so” does not make it true!

The fact is, there are several problems with this simplistic viewpoint. First of all, Genesis 48:19 says Ephraim was to *become* a “multitude of nations.” But Great Britain *never* became a “multitude of nations.” Are the *five* English-speaking nations of the British Commonwealth – Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and South Africa – truly a “multitude” of nations? Would you consider “five” to be a “*multitude*”? I don’t think so.

But this is not necessarily the meaning of the original Hebrew insofar as the word “nations” is concerned. The Hebrew word is *goyim* and has several meanings, as “a troop,” “group,” “massing,” “nation,” “people,” etc. “A multitude of people” would be better in this case, and certainly just as good a translation as “nations.” Or, the English word “states” could just as readily be used – “a multitude of states.”

So let’s look at this objectively. The Anglo-Saxon members of the British Commonwealth have *never* numbered more than “5” nations – certainly NOT a “multitude.”

On the other hand, the word *goyim* can just as readily be translated as “people” or “states.” The United States of America is composed of “50” closely allied STATES – groups of people with individual, separate governments, joined in a great UNION. Certainly, fifty could be considered as a “multitude”! So in actual fact, using Mr. Collins’ own criteria, the USA fits this description better than the United Kingdom.

### ***The Thirteenth Tribe***

Collins says Genesis 48 incorporates Ephraim as one of the 12 sons of Jacob, but Manasseh is “‘grandfathered in’ literally as a NEW tribe.” He says this makes Manasseh the “13<sup>th</sup>” tribe and the number “13” is identified with the USA. He gives no proof whatsoever of his basic premise that Gen.48 “incorporates” Ephraim as one of the 12 sons of Jacob, but not Manasseh. Herbert Armstrong also claimed that Manasseh was the “thirteenth” tribe. But is this true? Let’s analyze this.

In verse 5 of Genesis 48, Jacob says: “Ephraim and Manasseh, even as Reuben and Simeon, shall be MINE.” In Genesis 48:14-16, Jacob laid his hands on BOTH boys, and then said, of them BOTH, “*let my name be named on THEM.*” Thus they both were adopted by Jacob to be among his sons. Since Jacob deliberately placed his right hand on Ephraim’s head, he made him to be the recipient of the “firstborn’s” blessings. There is nothing at all said about one tribe being “grandfathered in” as opposed to the other one. Rather, both boys were “grandfathered in” – that is, both were adopted by Jacob as his own two sons! What could be clearer than that?

On this question of the 13<sup>th</sup> tribe, long after Jacob blessed Ephraim and Manasseh in Genesis 48, and placed Ephraim before Manasseh in terms of blessings, the Scriptures in Joshua 17:1 state clearly that Manasseh was the *firstborn* of Joseph. Literally, he was, but the firstborn's *blessings* went to Ephraim! So, in regard to birth, Ephraim was still the "13<sup>th</sup>" son but first of all in terms of blessings.

The number 13 is interesting. Collins says this is America's number, and it identifies America as Manasseh. Since Joseph became two tribes, Ephraim and Manasseh, and both were equally adopted by Jacob, this brings up the question, which tribe would be 12<sup>th</sup> and which would be 13<sup>th</sup>?

Can we end this dispute? We must remember that Jacob had twelve sons, the last or 12<sup>th</sup> one being Benjamin. Joseph was number 11. However, Joseph was thought to have been killed. His brothers sold him into slavery and told their father that he had been slain by a wild animal, showing him Joseph's coat of many colors, soaked in goat's blood (Genesis 37:31-35). Now, years later, Jacob adopts Joseph's two sons and divides Joseph's share of the inheritance between them, his firstborn Manasseh and his second-born, Ephraim. This would logically move Benjamin, the 12<sup>th</sup> son, up to number 11 since Joseph was deemed as being dead. This would move Manasseh, the older of the two sons of Joseph, up to the new number 12. And since Ephraim was born second of the two, he would logically become the new "13<sup>th</sup>" tribe.

The number "13," Bullinger points out, is the number of "rebellion," as well as "super-abundance." Both characteristics describe Ephraim in Scripture – and the United States, which was both born in rebellion, and which has become super-abundant in prosperity and blessings.

### ***What Rabbis Say***

At this point, let's notice the testimony of the Jewish rabbis on this subject.

The Jewish Pentateuch and Haftorahs, used in Jewish synagogues worldwide, comments on these verses: "5. *and now*. Jacob adopts the two sons of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh, born before he came to Egypt, thus making them equal to any of his other sons. By giving him a double portion of his inheritance, he transferred to Joseph the rights of the true firstborn."

The Stone Edition *Chumash*, a similar Jewish commentary, says that when Jacob returned from serving Laban twenty years, and reached Eretz Israel, God blessed him saying that a "nation and a congregation of nations" would descend from him (Gen.35:11). This meant, the rabbis say, that he would still have more children. "The promise of a nation was fulfilled with the birth of Benjamin. The further blessing of a congregation of nations, in the plural, intimated that two more sons besides Benjamin would descend from him. Since no more sons were born to him after Benjamin, Jacob assumed that one of his existing sons would branch out into two tribes – and he was now

about to confer that blessing upon Joseph” (p.270). The same authority says, “Jacob’s blessings also included an aspect that surprised Joseph; Jacob gave priority to the younger son Ephraim, for, as he explained to Joseph, both sons would be great, but Ephraim would be the greater of the two” (p.271).

### *“That Day”*

Genesis 48:20 says, “So he blessed them that day.” I believe the term “that day” has a special meaning for the “end of days,” our day, today. That is, these blessings and their major fulfillment would be in the END OF DAYS – the very years preceding the coming of the Messiah! Thus it would be that in “that day,” Ephraim would be much greater than Manasseh – and as we see on the world scene, today, the United States of America, population 280 million, the world’s only remaining “super-power,” both economically and politically and militarily, is truly “much greater” than Great Britain, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. South Africa, of course, has also many English-speaking people but it is rapidly being devoured by black nationalists and Communists and whites are suffering greatly under the process of “redistribution” of homes, ranches, farms, jobs, and wealth.

When Joseph saw that Jacob crossed his hands, to put his right hand on Ephraim’s head, he thought Jacob was making a mistake, since Manasseh was the firstborn. He objected. Genesis 48:19 describes Jacob’s reply to Joseph’s displeasure and his attempt to remove his right hand from Ephraim’s head. In the JPS Hebrew-English Tanakh we read in this passage: “But his father objected, saying, ‘I know, my son, I know. He too shall become a people, and he too shall be great. Yet his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his offspring shall be *plentiful enough for nations.*’”

Notice, again, this passage was not necessarily even saying that one son would become “many nations,” as such, but that his offspring would be *numerous* – “enough for nations.” Thus again, this passage in no way “proves” that the British Commonwealth is Ephraim. The United States has a much greater population, surely enough to be “plentiful enough for nations.” This was not saying that his offspring would *become* literally *many* nations but that they would be *multitudinous* – enough to become many nations, states, or peoples. The states of New York, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan, California, Texas, and many others are larger than many nations of the earth.

Adam Clarke’s Commentary says of the passage, “Jacob laid his right hand on the head of the younger, which we are told he did wittingly – well knowing what he was about, *for (or although) Manasseh was the first-born*, knowing by the Spirit of prophecy that Ephraim’s posterity would be more powerful than that of Manasseh. It is observable how God from the beginning has preferred the younger to the elder, as Abel before Cain; Shem before Japheth; Isaac before Ishmael; Jacob before Esau; Judah and Joseph before Reuben; Ephraim before Manasseh; Moses before Aaron; and David before his brethren.”

### *The Speech Impediment*

Steve Collins then points out that Judges 12:6 records that Ephraimites could not pronounce the letter “h” very well and claims that dropping the “h” is a “genetic” Ephraimite (and British) trait. He says, “The DNA doesn’t lie! I think this is a ‘smoking gun.’”

Let’s examine this passage more closely. We read that after the Gileadite Jephthah, of the tribe of Manasseh, had defeated the Ammonites, the men of Ephraim were angry with him for not calling them to the battle (Judges 12:1). He said he had called on them, but they had not come to his aid when needed, so he launched into battle himself. A heated controversy ensued, and a war broke out between the men of Gilead, who lived east of the Jordan, and the Ephraimites who lived to the west of the river. The Gileadites got the upper hand, and the Ephraimites attempted to flee across the Jordan river. “Then the Gileadites took the fords of the Jordan against the Ephraimites. Whenever one of the fugitives of Ephraim said, ‘Let me go over,’ the men of Gilead would say to him, ‘Are you an Ephraimite?’ When he said, ‘No,’ they said to him, ‘Then say Shibboleth,’ and he said, ‘Sibboleth,’ for he could not pronounce it right. Then they seized him and killed him at the fords of the Jordan. Forty-two thousand men of Ephraim fell at that time” (Judges 12:5-6, NRSV).

Was this some “genetic defect” in the ability of the Ephraimites to say the word “Shibboleth” properly? The Stone edition of the Tanakh says of this passage, “The people of Gilead took advantage of an Ephraimite speech defect to identify who was from that tribe. The people of Ephraim could not pronounce a “sh” sound, and that was their undoing” (p.618, Judges 12:6 footnote).

First of all, notice. This problem was not the pronunciation of the letter “h” at all, but rather the “sh” sound! Thus Collins has already muddled the issue.

The *Critical-Experimental Commentary* by Jamieson, Fausset and Brown at this passage says that the Gileadites chased “their foul-mouthed but cowardly assailants out of the territory; and rushing to the ford of the Jordan – a few miles below the confluence of the Jordan and the Jabbok – intercepted and slew every fugitive. The method adopted for discovering an Ephraimite was by the pronunciation of a word naturally suggested by the place where they stood. ‘Shibboleth’ means a stream, ‘Sibboleth’ a burden. The *eastern* tribe had, it seems, *a dialectical provincialism in the sound of Shibboleth*; and the Ephraimites could not bring their organs to pronounce it” (page 106).

The “eastern tribe” was of Manasseh. This suggests that it was *Manasseh* that had a “dialectical provincialism” – that is, it was *their own way* of speaking and pronouncing the word in question that produced the problem for the Ephraimites!

Adam Clarke in his commentary, goes further in explaining this passage. He points out, “The original differs only in the first letter *samech*, instead of *sheen*. . . . The difference between *seen*, without a point, which when pointed is pronounced *sheen*, and *samech*, is supposed by many to be imperceptible. But there can be no doubt there was, to the ears of a Hebrew, a most sensible distinction.” He goes on, “There must have been

a very remarkable difference in the pronunciation of the Ephraimites, when instead of *shibboleth*, an *ear of corn*, they said *sibboleth*, which signifies *a burden*. . . It is likely that the Ephraimites were, in reference to the pronunciation of *sh*, as different from the Gileadites as the people in some parts of the north of England are, in the pronunciation of the letter *r*, from all the other inhabitants of the land” (vol.1, page 156).

One thing should be quite clear. This matter had nothing whatever to do with the pronunciation of the letter “h.” Therefore Mr. Collins’ “smoking gun” is a figment of his own imagination. I discussed this matter with an English friend of mine, Nick Wood, on the telephone. He pointed out that this idea of Collins probably came from an early edition of Herbert Armstrong’s booklet *The United States and British Commonwealth in Prophecy*. People have picked up that old canard and still use it and believe it as “truth” when nobody seems to have stopped to take the time to validate it one way or the other.

I possess a copy of that old booklet, where Herbert Armstrong wrote, to my own amazement, “The Hebrews, however, never pronounced their ‘h’s.’ Many a Jew, even today, in pronouncing the name ‘Shem,’ will call it ‘Sem.’ Incidentally, this ancient Hebrew trait *is also a modern English trait*” (p.87 of booklet, 1980 edition).

I read this statement to my own amazement. Many years ago, when a teenager, I read it, and thought little about it. I had completely forgotten that Herbert Armstrong ever wrote such incredible nonsense. I have studied Hebrew at length. Of course the Hebrews (Jews) pronounce the letter “h.” In Hebrew, it is the letter *hay*. It forms a part of many words, and in fact is the Hebrew word for “the” in English. “Ha shamayim” in Hebrew means “the heavens; “ha erez” means “the earth.” “Hag sameach” means “Happy Feast!”

Herbert W. Armstrong certainly knew very little, if anything, about the Hebrew language. It is sad that so many people accept whatever he says without checking it out and proving whether it is true or not. Remember the words of the Messiah: “And if one blind person guides another, both will fall into a pit” (Matt.15:14, NRSV).

Regardless of that matter, however, how the English or British pronounce the letter “h” has nothing whatsoever to do with proving their Biblical identity, for there is no evidence whatsoever that ancient Ephraim did not pronounce the letter “h.”

Nick pointed out that the English language has many dialects. I have been to England, and have talked with many British people, and they have no problem pronouncing their “h’s.” Some do drop their “h’s,” but not all. But this fact has nothing to do with the question of pronouncing the letters “sh.”

In fact, in the classic movie *My Fair Lady*, the story is told of a language professor Higgins who takes on a young Cockney girl. She has a horrible accent, drops her “h’s,” and speaks notorious slang with a Cockney accent. He proposes in a wager to teach her the king’s English. The movie is a wonderful story, full of humor and witticisms. Eliza Doolittle, the young girl, drops her “h’s” and says “ ‘erford, ‘ampton,

and ‘artforshire,’ instead of “Hereford, Hampton, and Hertfordshire.” But Higgins is up to the task, and is able to teach her to speak so that at a royal ball she meets European and English royalty and nobility, who are all amazed and pondered this enchanting young woman’s place of origin. They are all completely baffled. Her English is *excellent – impeccable!*

I might also point out that nobody claims that Canadians, Australians, or New Zealanders have any problem pronouncing the “h,” yet they too are claimed by Collins to be of Ephraimite stock. But all this is beside the point, and amounts to a matter of “misdirection,” since there never was any issue as to the pronunciation of the letter “h.” The Biblical example involves pronouncing the letter *sheen* versus *seen*.

This is certainly no “smoking gun.” To infer that this is in any way a “genetic” trait which traces to one’s “DNA” is absurd – preposterous. Language and pronunciation of words is a matter of training, learning, practice, and custom – not DNA. Babies learn to speak as they hear their parents and others use the language. It is not one’s personal genetics and DNA factors that govern how we pronounce our letters, but rather our conditioning and environment from birth.

### ***The Order of Blessings***

Collins writes: “The order of Jacob’s blessing in Gen.48 records Ephraim was blessed with a larger blessing *first* and Manasseh received his blessing *after* Ephraim. Applying this order of blessing consistently in history, the British received their blessing first before the Americans (making the British Ephraim and the Americans Manasseh). The British Empire was great for centuries *before* the American Age, which has lasted mere Decades so far.”

What about this claim? Is it necessarily so? Is it “proof”? Or could there be another, equally good, or better, explanation? Would Jacob mention Ephraim’s blessing first because he would later on receive them first?

The order of the blessing was given in the “order of importance.” We would normally recite the greater blessing first, and the secondary blessing next. “Order of importance” is the key here, not the order of succession. Ephraim received the blessing of the “first-born” – the birthright – so it is natural that he would be mentioned first.

This in no way suggests that Ephraim would be blessed first in time sequence. I would suggest that since Manasseh was the older boy, he would mature first, and receive his blessing sooner than Ephraim.

Ephraim, being younger, would mature later, and receive his greater blessing *later* than Manasseh.

### ***Size of the British Empire***

Steve Collins also said that the British Empire was “great for centuries” and much greater than the United States, making it more representative of the “birthright” blessing of power and influence.

What about it?

I believe this to be largely an illusion, when we examine all the facts. Remember, the two peoples dwelt together for centuries, until the American colonies split off from Great Britain in 1776. Prior to that time the greatness would have applied to both brothers. They were dwelling together during the reign of Queen Elizabeth, when the British defeated the Spanish Armada (1588 A.D.). From that time on, they dwelt together, *until* the colonies split off almost two centuries later. Therefore, the only valid comparison would be *after* their separation, about the turn of the nineteenth century (1800).

Great Britain did not really become a great Empire until after she defeated Napoleon Bonaparte, the Emperor of France, in 1815. From then up until about 1915 – approximately one century – she was dominant in the world.

In fact, it was the United States which *rescued* the British from utter disaster in World War I, 1914-1918. At that time, Great Britain was still great, but her resources were being drained in the European conflict, and Germany was winning. If the United States had not intervened, the allies would have been defeated! At that time, the United States was already catching up to Great Britain in power and might, and had begun surpassing it in economic and industrial strength and in total population.

After World War I, Great Britain’s resources were exhausted financially. The British Empire was already beginning to see its sun set. For a short moment, however, British influence expanded, after the war – because of the victory. With the aid of the United States, Britain was given a mandate by the League of Nations over the Middle East (the former Turkish Ottoman Empire). German colonies of Tanganyika and Southwest Africa were handed over to the British. Nevertheless, British influence and power was beginning to be stretched very thin, and the situation could not last long. At this point in time, Britain and America reached the “crossing point” – with America ascending and Britain descending in worldwide power and influence.

After the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, it was the United States which kept growing and became the dominant power in the world. It began flexing its muscles at the turn of the century, beginning with the Spanish-American war in 1898, and became very strong by World War I, and grew to a behemoth during World War II. It has been a world juggernaut since the 1950s. America and Britain were about equal from 1915-1940. But America has been dominant – “king of the mountain” – from about 1940 until 2005, or the past 65 years. Britain became dominant after the defeat of Napoleon in 1815. America became clearly dominant after World War II. Today, the “American Empire” extends all over the world, as the British Empire did in the nineteenth century.

Another factor we must not overlook in this type of comparison is very important in any fair analysis. That is, the comparison of the centuries themselves – i.e. the 1800s, when Great Britain was the greatest nation in the world, versus the 1900s, when America became the greatest, by far. We must remember that the world was much smaller in the 1800s, in terms of overall population. It was much less developed, travel overseas took months, all society was relatively slow and plodding, and economies were much smaller. To be “greatest” then required much less in terms of total or aggregate “wealth” or “greatness.”

But during the 1900s, after the advances in communication, transportation, scientific achievements, and population growth, the TRUE greatness of these nations multiplied exponentially, and America surged ahead of every other nation, as if by a divine miracle. Her population exploded, her scientific prowess created amazing new inventions (far more than Great Britain, which came in second), such as the telephone, telegraph, steamboat, cotton gin, electric light bulb, motion pictures, sound recording, airplanes, etc. It is amazing to me how many of these were invented right about the turn of the century. The Wright brothers flew their first airplane at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina, December 17, 1903. The world itself as a whole “exploded” in growth and advancement at the turn of the century, and that is when America’s overall superiority and true greatness began to be established.

“Ephraim,” we might say, began to come into his own. The youngster (the youngest nation at the time) suddenly grew into adulthood and quickly became a “presence” in the world, during the time of Theodore Roosevelt who sent the American battleship fleet around the world, carved out the Panama Canal, and added the vast archipelago of the Philippine islands to America’s sphere of influence. Since that beginning, American power has been exerted overseas and around the world, during World War I, World War II, and the Cold War.

In other words, when comparing “greatness,” should we not compare relative and intrinsic greatness? How much greater in terms of *everything* is America in the twentieth century than Britain was in the nineteenth century? It is like comparing a modern Cadillac with an old horse and buggy. Stacked up side by side, I would say that nineteenth century greatness was only “relative” and much less in terms of absolute “greatness.” True greatness was not achieved until the twentieth century arrived because of the march of human progress and development!

### ***The Monarchy Question***

As his fourth point of evidence, Steve Collins claims: “The ancient monarchies of Israel were located in Ephraim’s territory and this was fitting because Ephraim was the leading tribe. There is no indication in the Bible that Manasseh ever felt slighted by this or desired the monarchy in its territory. This indicates the Ephraimites are monarchists and the Manassites are not. The British now host David’s monarchy in the modern world and the British are monarchists (like ancient Ephraim). The USA is very anti-monarchist as we fought our war of independence to be free of kings’ rule. The USA fits this

Manassite temperament.”

Let’s analyze that paragraph carefully. Were the Ephraimites monarchists? Were the Manassites anti-monarchists?

There are several things wrong with this statement. First, Americans are not anti-monarchist in general. The early Americans even wanted to crown George Washington as their *king*. He rejected the offer, believing the country should be a republic governed by a representative government, elected by the population.

The Ephraimites in ancient times were not necessarily anti-monarchist, nor were the Manassites. The fact is, most of the kings of the northern ten tribes were of the tribe of Ephraim, *beginning with Jeroboam himself*. So it is logical that the monarchy of the northern kingdom of Israel would be found in Ephraim.

Nor were the people of Manasseh anti-monarchy. All northern Israel had their own king, and there is no record of Manasseh ever revolting against the kings of northern Israel.

However, the real issue is not monarchies in general, but rather one specific monarchy or royal line.

### *The Throne of David*

Almighty God foretold that the Davidic throne would endure forever, and a descendant of David would still be ruling on that throne up until the coming of the Messiah (Gen.49:10; II Sam.7:4-5, 12-16; Jer.33:17-26). When ancient Judah was carried into captivity to Babylon, the throne was transplanted to the house of Israel, where the northern Ten Tribes had migrated (Ezek.17:22-23).

The location of David’s throne today is in Great Britain, and continues today as the British throne, and currently is sat upon by Queen Elizabeth. This fact itself is startling proof that Great Britain IS NOT and CANNOT BE “Ephraim”! Why?

Here’s why.

The northern Kingdom of Israel revolted against David’s throne in the days of king Rehoboam in 975 B.C. They were led by Jeroboam, *an Ephraimite!* It was the tribe of *Ephraim* which LED THE REVOLT AGAINST THE THRONE OF DAVID! (see I Kings 12)!

Thousands of years later, it was the American colonists who led the REVOLT against the British throne – the “throne of David” – once again!

In 975 B.C., since it was Ephraim who led the revolt against the throne of David, it is obvious that Ephraim has no great love for the throne of David. Since that throne is

now in Great Britain, it stands to reason that if the British were indeed Ephraim, they would not tolerate that throne in their midst!

King Rehoboam listened to his counselors and advisers and tried to increase the tax burden on the Israelites. In 1775 the British throne, together with the British Parliament, likewise tried to impose increased taxation on the American colonies – to unilaterally force it down their throats. In both cases, heavy taxes led to fiery rebellion, with Ephraim leading the way!

The British and Canadian peoples have remained loyal to the throne of David. But just like their ancestors, the Ephraimites of the United States rebelled against that throne 200 years ago and have remained without a throne ever since. Rebellion is our very heritage as a nation and a people. Says I Kings 12:19, “Thus Israel *revolted* against the House of David, *as is still the case.*”

In the days of Isaiah the prophet, Pekah, king of Israel, allied with Rezin, king of Syria, to attack Jerusalem and the throne of David (Isaiah 7:1-3).

From the beginning, ancient Ephraim was slow to submit to the authority of David (II Samuel 2:8-9). David ruled in Judah for seven years before the other tribes of Israel accepted him as king. Later, when trouble came, a man of Ephraim led another rebellion against David. “A man of the *hill country of Ephraim*, called Sheba, the son of Bichri, has lifted up his hand against king David, ” David’s general Joab reported (II Samuel 20:21).

These historical facts show us that it would not be logical for David’s throne to be located in Ephraim, a people who have long distrusted the throne of David and its occupants.

Let’s cut to the heart of the matter. It was the tribe of Ephraim which *led* the ancient *rebellion* against the house of *David* – the *Davidic* dynasty. Jeroboam hated the Davidic line, since Solomon had tried to have him assassinated (I Kings 11:40). He led the rebellion against the tribe of Judah and the royal line of David (I Kings 12:2-19).

The Ephraimites had no problem with kings in general. They were very supportive of Jeroboam, and his successors. They wanted to be like all the other nations – and have a king (compare I Samuel 8). But they *did* have a serious problem with the *monarchic line of David and his successors*. The kings of the ten tribes always feared that the people might return to the kingdom of Judah, where the Temple was located. They did not want to lose their authority or power to the kings descended from David. Since most of the northern kings descended from Ephraim, the birthright tribe, they were the ones who were very much opposed to and hostile toward the kingly dynasty of David.

Mr. Collins correctly points out that the British kings are descended from the Davidic dynasty and trace their ancestry back to David. That is a fact. However, if Great Britain indeed is Ephraim, after all, then that poses a *huge* problem: When in history did

they learn to love the royal line of David, which they had rebelled against in 975 B.C.? Ephraim *never* accepted the Davidic dynasty unless it was compelled to do so, and always threw off the yoke the moment an opportunity revealed itself.

The British, on the other hand, have been very content to have the throne of David in their midst. This fact by itself shows that Great Britain does not have the characteristics of Ephraim!

On the other hand, in the mid-1700s, when British rule and taxation without representation was grating on the colonists of the thirteen colonies, in heated anger, and smoking wrath, they took up arms and *REBELLED against the throne of David in Great Britain! Just as their ancestors did in 975 B.C. against Rehoboam, son of Solomon!*

That would be just the sort of thing we would expect Ephraimites to do!

God has set David's modern throne in Manasseh – one of the birthright tribes – but not in Ephraim, which was always hostile toward the throne. Manasseh did not have the same animosity toward the throne of David that Ephraim did. In fact, some of the men of Manasseh were among the first to desert to David when he came with the Philistines to fight Saul. They helped David against robbers and raiders in the area (I Chron.12:19-22).

Indicating an affinity between the house of David and the descendants of Manasseh is the fact that I Chronicles 2:21 gives the account of the granddaughter of Manasseh marrying into the family of Judah from which David was descended. It is very noteworthy, too, that one of the kings descended from David was named *Manasseh*, the longest ruling king of either the Kingdom of Israel or Judah. This is another indication of the affinity which existed between the tribe of Manasseh and the family of David. The nation of modern Manasseh, then, would be the logical place for David's throne to have been established – not Ephraim!

Indeed, when carefully analyzed, this is just one more proof that America is Ephraim, and Manasseh refers primarily to Great Britain and Canada.

### ***Dominance and Power***

As another major point, Collins declares: “Deuteronomy 33:17 prophesies that the people dominated (“pushed together to the ends of the earth”) by Ephraim will be ten times the number dominated by Manasseh. The British Empire indeed dominated and directly ruled many times more people than has modern America. India alone accounted for a half billion souls in the British Empire. This indicates that Britain is Ephraim.”

Unfortunately, in this case Mr. Collins clearly misstates the scripture. Deuteronomy 33:17 does NOT say that the peoples “dominated” by Ephraim would be *ten times* the number “dominated” by Manasseh. The passage in question deals with Moses blessing the tribes of Israel shortly before his death. Regarding Joseph, Moses

says: “his horns are like the horns of unicorns: with them he shall push the people together to the ends of the earth: and they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh.”

In the *Chumash*, Deuteronomy 33:17 says: “A sovereignty is his ox-like one – majesty is his, and his glory will be like the horns of a re’eim; with them he shall gore the nations together, to the ends of the Land; they are the myriads of Ephraim, and the thousands of Manasseh.” The Stone Edition *Chumash*, on this verse, interprets as follows: “A sovereignty is his ox-like one – majesty is his. . . According to Ramban, *they*, refers to the two *horns* – figuratively representing the two branches of Joseph, Ephraim and Manasseh, both of which would grow and number in the many thousands” (page 1117).

Says the *Chumash*, “the metaphor of the ox alludes to power.” The “re’eim” it says was “an animal whose horns were noted for beauty.” The *Chumash* says that the “myriads” of Ephraim refers to the Canaanites slain by Joshua (an Ephraimite) at the conquest of Canaan, and the “thousands” of Manasseh refers to the Midianites slain by Gideon (a Manassite). Thus the armies under Ephraimite leadership kill vast numbers of enemies, many more than the armies under Manassite leadership. So even if we acknowledge that the numbers in this passage can refer to the peoples who were conquered, the *Chumash* identifies the *numbers who are slain* in the armies of the aliens, and not rulership over foreign nations as such.

But let’s take another look at this passage. The *Pentateuch and Haftorahs* translates this passage: “His firstling bullock, majesty is his; and his horns are the horns of the wild ox; with them he shall gore the peoples all of them, even to the ends of the earth.” In the commentary portion, it says: “The twin tribe, Ephraim and Manasseh, receives the temporal blessings of fertility of soil and military prowess, accompanied by uninterrupted enjoyment of Divine favor” (p.912). On verse 17, it states: “*firstling bullock. i.e.* Ephraim, to whom Jacob had given the precedence over the elder brother Manasseh; Gen.48:19. *and his horns.* The figure of the bull is here employed as the emblem of strength. *wild ox.* See on Num.23:22 [which says the *re’em* is an irresistible species of wild ox, now extinct]. *he shall gore.* Ephraim shall extend his conquests over remote peoples. *and they are.* Better, *and these be; i.e.* the reference is to the myriads of the men of Ephraim, and the thousands of the men of Manasseh” (p.912).

Notice that this authority states that “the reference is to the myriads of the men of Ephraim, and the thousands of the men of Manasseh.”

It would seem that even Jewish scholars and commentators find two meanings in the counting of the “ten thousands of Ephraim” and “thousands of Manasseh.” However we view it, it still refers to the MILITARY PROWESS of Ephraim and Manasseh, in subduing their enemies, even around the world, to the “ends of the earth.” Joshua’s conquests, as Moses’ successor, were much greater than those of Gideon, the Manassite. But both were noble champions and leaders of ancient Israel. However, the comparison can also refer to the relative size and power and success of the *armies* of Ephraim and

Manasseh, as well as to the relative numbers of enemy *soldiers slain* by them in war.

Collins speaks of the people “dominated by Ephraim” being “ten times the numbers dominated by Manasseh.” The text nowhere speaks of “dominance” in the sense of ruling over a nation, but dominance in the sense of conquest and numbers of enemy slain, as the Jewish sources declare.

On the other hand, Deuteronomy 33:17 clearly speaks of the “ten thousands of *Ephraim*,” not the “ten thousands of people *ruled by* Ephraim.” It speaks clearly of the “thousands of Manasseh,” not the “thousands *ruled by* Manasseh.” This is not difficult to understand. It is not talking about numbers of people “dominated” or “ruled” *by* these two tribes at all, but to their own relative “numbers” in some way, as well as to the numbers that they kill or conquer on the battlefield.

Let’s investigate this a little deeper.

Notice carefully the *context* of these numbers: The passage says the brothers “together” *push* the peoples of the earth to the ends of the world. They have done this – *both* Ephraim and Manasseh. “Push” comes from the Hebrew word *nagach* (Strong’s #5055), which means “to but with the horns,” “to war against.” The Hebrew does *not* talk about “ruling over” these peoples, but *warring against them!* In the next breath, Moses says these (warriors) are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and the thousands of Manasseh.

In other words, this isn’t speaking of how many peoples were dominated by Britain during her heyday – especially the peoples of India. Yes, Britain was the strongest western power to go into India and to secure trade agreements with her people, instead of the French, Germans, or other potential competitors. Britain was a great trading Empire. But her “conquests” were more in the area of trade and commerce.

### ***The Real Meaning of the Numbers***

When we look at the two brothers in their relationship to war-waging ability, however, we begin to see the meaning of this passage emerge. According to the *World Almanac and Book of Facts*, America in World War I had 4,743,826 men under arms. The *Encyclopedia Britannica 2004 (DVD)* states that Great Britain and the British Empire at the end of World War I had 8,904,467 total mobilized forces, and the largest navy and air force in the world. This was probably the peak of her power. But the tilt toward victory in that war only came in mid-1917 when the United States sent one million “doughboys” and “Yanks” to fight alongside their French and British compatriots. A total of two million Yankees serviced in France during the war, and Germany was forced to sue for peace in 1918. The American Expeditionary Force took part in 13 major operations in World War I.

Total casualties in the war: British Empire, 2,384,860 (including Canada, Ireland, and colonials); United States: 320,518. France suffered 4,968,000 casualties; Russia an

estimated 9,150,000; and Germany, 6,251,000.

The war had a shattering effect on Great Britain. About 750,000 British servicemen died. Britain lost almost 8 million short tons of shipping. The war created severe economic problems and “shook its position as a world power” (*World Book Encyclopedia*, “Great Britain,” p.336). The sun was already beginning to set for the British Empire.

In World War II, the United States had 16,353,659 men under arms. During this war, it was also the great financial power. During the five and one half years of the war, it sent more than \$50 billion worth of war materials to its allies, about half to Great Britain and one fourth to Russia.

In 1939 the United States had about 174,000 men in its army, but by the end of the war in 1945 it had grown to 6 million! British Army manpower figures for May 1945 were 2,920,000, just under half of the U.S. figure. The U.S. Navy grew from 126,000 in 1939 to 3,400,000 by the war’s end. The British Navy manpower numbers for May 1945 were 866,000 – about one quarter of the U.S. numbers. The U.S. Army Air Corps went from 26,000 to 2,400,000 in the same period of time. The British Air Force manpower figures for May 1945 were 1,208,843 – just about half the U.S. figure.

During this time, obviously, the United States had surpassed the United Kingdom in total world power and economic strength. It has been estimated that World War II cost the world \$1,154,000,000,000 (\$1.154 *trillion*] dollars and \$239 billion in property damage. The United States alone spent about ten times as much as it had in all previous wars put together.

States the *World Book Encyclopedia*, “World War II sealed the fate of the British Empire, though Britain had begun loosening control over its empire earlier. In 1931, Britain granted independence within the empire to Australia, Canada, the Irish Free State, New Zealand, New Foundland, and South Africa. . . . After World War II, the peoples of Africa and Asia increased their demands for independence. Britain could no longer keep control of its colonies. In 1947 India and Pakistan became independent nations within the Commonwealth. . . .

“During the 1950s and 1960s, many more countries became independent. They included Cyprus, Ghana, Kenya, Malaysia, Malta, Nigeria, Sudan, Trinidad and Tobago, and Uganda” (*World Book Encyclopedia*, “Great Britain,” p.338).

The British today are deeply aware of the difference between the great power Britain used to be and the smaller power they can afford to be now.

In the Korean War, 1950-1953, the United States supplied the bulk of the foreign forces intervening to save South Korea from invasion from the north. It sent 480,000 troops to aid the South Korean military, whereas 39,000 troops were sent from an array of other allies – Australia, Belgium, Canada, Columbia, Ethiopia, France, Great Britain,

Greece, the Netherlands, New Zealand, the Philippines, South Africa, Thailand and Turkey combined.

In the Vietnam war, at its peak in 1969 the United States had 543,000 troops involved in the fighting. All the other nations together sent a total of 68,000 to assist in the war effort.

Since World War II, the United States of America has put in the field *ten times more soldiers* in the great wars of the latter half of the twentieth century – beginning with the Korean War in 1950 to the Iraq War of 2003 – than Great Britain. American forces outnumbered the British in World War II, and by an even greater ratio in Korea, the Gulf war, and the Iraq war. The numerical ratio mentioned in Deuteronomy 33:17 seems to be in reference to *war waging ability*, not strictly population comparisons. However, the nation with the greatest population would logically be able to send more troops into battle.

The plain truth is, America has been very dominant during the last half of the Twentieth Century, as well as the beginning of the Twenty-First century. That should be perfectly obvious. Of the tribes of end-time “Israel,” who descended from the “Lost Ten Tribes,” there is no doubt that America – the United States – is far more *dominant* in the world than any of the other Israelite nations.

### ***What Do You Mean, “Ten to One”?***

Collins continues his analysis, saying: “I realize others interpret this passage to indicate Ephraim will have ten times the population of Manasseh, but I find that view untenable and unbiblical. Neither the British nor Americans have ever outnumbered the other by tenfold. Neither one outnumbers Reuben (the French) by a ten-one margin! Such an interpretation would make Manasseh a very tiny nation, smaller than some of the other ‘lesser’ tribes of Israel! Gen.48:16 records Jacob conferred the blessing of population growth equally on Ephraim and Manasseh (no 10-1 population ratio was ever foretold in the Bible). If Deut.33:17 refers to population, then God’s Word has failed because that has never occurred. Indeed, the last census in the Bible showed Manasseh with a population larger than Ephraim (Numbers 26). Also, Deut.33 isn’t technically a ‘latter day’ prophecy. It may be one, but the Bible doesn’t specifically claim that it is.”

Collins is partly right on this point. In truth, although America is much larger in population than Great Britain, Canada, Australia, and New Zealand combined, it is *not ten times greater* and never has been. But I must wonder – whoever said that they were? I have pointed out that America’s population is *ten times greater* than that of *Canada*, our Manassite brother to the north. But no one to my knowledge has ever said the U.S. population was ever ten times the population of Great Britain.

I do not know anyone who claims that the population differential between Ephraim and Manasseh overall is or ever was on the order of a ratio of ten-to-one. Therefore, these remarks seem to be a sort of “straw man.” The author sets up this

argument, and then proceeds to demolish it! Well done! But nobody who believes that America is Ephraim argues that America has a population that is ten times greater than that of the British nations.

On the other hand, the United States does have an economy which could be said to be *ten times greater*, a military which is *ten times greater*, and it does therefore reflect the blessings that would accrue to Ephraim. The prophecy of Moses, addressed to all the tribes of Israel, shortly before his death, is definitely a prophecy for the peoples of Israel, throughout their future, but *especially applicable* during the “end of days,” the final generation before the coming of the Messiah!

We do not need to rely on a false interpretation of the meaning of a “ten-to-one ratio” between Ephraim and Manasseh to grasp the fact that Ephraim was to be *much greater* than Manasseh. When we realize the ratio is more relevant to economic and military might, especially military numbers and strength, according to the context of “pushing the nations,” then we are still driven to conclude that America represents Ephraim and Great Britain and its off-shoots represent Manasseh.

### ***Census Numbers and their Meaning***

Mr. Collins mentions the census of the tribes of Israel given in Numbers 26. In this chapter we find that Manasseh numbered 52,700 (verse 34). Ephraim numbered 32,500 (verse 37). This was approximately 1452 B.C. These were total population figures of men over 20 years of age (Num.26:2). This gives us a “snapshot” of their relative population numbers in the year the census was conducted.

However, a generation previously, in 1491 B.C., another census was taken of the tribes shortly after Israel came out of Egypt. Of men who were “twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go to war” (Num.1:34), Manasseh had 32,200 “men of war.” Ephraim, at that time, had “40,500” (verses 32-33). So in this count, Ephraim *outnumbered* his older brother in men of fighting age by about 8,000.

Why the turnabout in numbers in just 40 years? What happened? We can only speculate. It would appear that Ephraim lost many more in the older generation who died off during the wandering in the wilderness than did Manasseh. This may have been due to the sins of the Ephraimites of that time. Some may have departed, to strike out for parts unknown, instead of submitting to God’s decree.

However, I do not believe that census statistics from the two peoples from the middle of the second millennium before Christ have any bearing on the final fulfillment of these prophecies. They are interesting for that time, but not relevant for the final prophecy. Remember, Moses did not make this prophecy until *after* these statistics were compiled. His final blessings, given shortly before his death, were delivered in 1451 B.C., a year after the census mentioned by Mr. Collins. And his blessings were a prediction for the *future*, not a reference to the past.

### *Ephraim's Pre-emptive Strike*

It is interesting to note that the tribe of Ephraim had been decimated in the years before the Exodus out of Egypt. Its numbers had been far greater, but many Ephraimites left Egypt before God brought Moses to deliver them. They left on their own, in rebellion against Pharaoh.

We read of this in the book of Jasher. The book of Jasher recounts many aspects of the servitude and bondage of Israel in Egypt, and the sore duress they were under. It states in chapter 75: "At that time, in the hundred and eightieth year of the Israelites going down into Egypt, there went forth from Egypt valiant men, thirty thousand on foot, from the children of Israel, who were all of the tribe of Joseph, of the children of Ephraim son of Joseph. For they said the period was completed which the Lord had appointed to the children of Israel in the times of old, which he had spoken to Abraham. And these men girded themselves, and they put each man his sword at his side, and every man his armor upon him, and they trusted to their strength, and they went out together from Egypt with a mighty hand. But they brought no provision for the road, only silver and gold, not even bread for that day did they bring in their hands, for they thought of getting their provision for pay from the Philistines, and if not they would take it by force" (verses 1-4).

The account goes on: "And these men were very mighty and valiant men, one man could pursue a thousand and two could rout ten thousand, so they trusted to their strength and went together as they were" (v.5).

This premature foray out of Egypt ended in disaster for the tribe of Ephraim. Jasher reports that the children of Gath, a city of the Philistines, engaged them in battle. The first day of battle many were slain on both sides. The second day all the Philistines in the region joined in the battle, numbering over 40,000 (verses 12-14). Meanwhile, the sons of Ephraim "were exhausted with hunger and thirst, for they had eaten no bread for three days" (v.14). The result was catastrophic.

"And these men were engaged in battle with the children of Ephraim, and the Lord delivered the children of Ephraim into the hands of the Philistines. And they smote all the children of Ephraim, all who had gone forth from Egypt, none were remaining but ten men who had run away from the engagement. For this evil was from the Lord against the children of Ephraim, for they transgressed the word of the Lord in going forth from Egypt, before the period had arrived which the Lord in the days of old had appointed to Israel" (Jasher 75:15-17).

Despite this setback, however, the fighting men of Ephraim still outnumbered the fighting men of Manasseh a few years later, in the census of 1491 B.C. (Numbers 1). The Ephraimites indeed reproduced quickly and were "doubly-fruitful," as their name implies.

### *Yair Davidy's Contribution*

In his book *Joseph: The Israelite Identity of America*, Yair Davidy also claims that Ephraim would become greater than Manasseh, and that he would become great first.

Let's notice the key passage once again. First of all, notice, Jacob said first, speaking of Manasseh, "he also shall be great" (Gen.48:19). This was mentioned first, implying that Manasseh would therefore become great *first*, and this is logical since he is the *elder* brother. Then, second, Jacob says, "Nevertheless, his *younger* brother SHALL BE GREATER than he" (same verse, NRSV).

This implies that although Manasseh would become great on the world scene, that eventually, or later, his younger brother would grow greater, and *surpass him* in greatness. That is to say, Manasseh would have their "day in the sun," but then his younger brother Ephraim would *take over and exceed him and become GREATER!*

It is really quite clear.

However, Davidy declares, "This is *ambiguous* but it could be understood to imply that Manasseh would *also* become great after Ephraim and that Ephraim's greatness in its own time was the greater of the two" (*Joseph*, p.193).

Frankly, I see nothing whatever ambiguous about the verse. To derive Davidy's meaning one would have to ignore the order in which Jacob stated who would be great and who would be greater. There is certainly no hint whatsoever that Ephraim would become greater *first*, and then Manasseh would become great. None whatsoever. But old, cherished opinions and ideas, like the earth is flat, often die hard.

### ***Period of Greatness***

In his second point relating to "Greatness," Davidy admits "the USA is now greater" but says "Britain had a *longer period* of predominance and glory" (p.194). I have already answered this point previously.

Britain's day of glory was the 1800s, after defeating Napoleon at Waterloo (1815). This was while America was still an infant as a nation. But by the beginning of the twentieth century, especially after World War II, the United States quickly became dominant. Britain was dominant from about 1815 to 1915, and the First World War – about one hundred years. The United States has been dominant for about 65 years. Length of time of predominance means nothing. The scale of greatness today is much greater than the scale of the nineteenth century.

Of America's role in World Wars I and II, Davidy states: "The First and Second World Wars were fought against Germany and her allies. *These wars were won by Britain and her daughters with the USA assisting and assuring victory AFTER the trend of the struggle had been decided in both cases*" (*ibid.*).

What rubbish!

The facts tell a decidedly different story.

Davidy implies that during the First World War and the Second World War, Britain was still dominant and winning the wars, when the United States finally entered the conflicts. He declares that the supremacy of the United States did not start until after World War II, and that it has only been dominant during the struggle against Communism. In these conflicts, he simply denigrates the role of the United States.

World War I would have been *lost by Britain and the allies* if the Yanks from the U.S.A. had not intervened. Historians note that British troops were exhausted and Britain's finances were drained, when America rode in to the rescue.

Also, in World War II the British fought from 1939 till 1941, and Britain was gradually being overwhelmed, when the United States entered the War in December, 1941. If the U.S. had not become a major participant in that war, the whole history of the world would have been turned upside down and the Nazis would have won.

Any fair-minded, balanced, objective analysis of World War I and II shows that without America coming to the rescue, Germany would have won both wars. That is the simple truth. Britain was on the ropes, in both cases, and would have lost the wars if the United States had not intervened! World Wars I and II were by no means "already decided" when the United States entered the fray. America certainly did not enter the war "after the trend of the struggle had been decided." This statement is utterly untrue, completely false – as any historian or history of the period will attest.

For example, Sir Basil Liddell Hart wrote in *A History of the First World War*:

"France did not win the war, but unless she had held the fort while the forces of Britain were preparing and those of America still a dream, the release of civilization from this nightmare of militarism would have been impossible. Britain did not win the war, but without her command of the sea, her financial support, and her army, to take over the main burden of the struggle from 1916 onwards, defeat would have been inevitable. The United States did not win the war, but without their economic aid to ease the strain, without the arrival of their troops to turn the numerical balance, and, above all, without the moral tonic, which their coming gave, *victory would have been impossible.*"

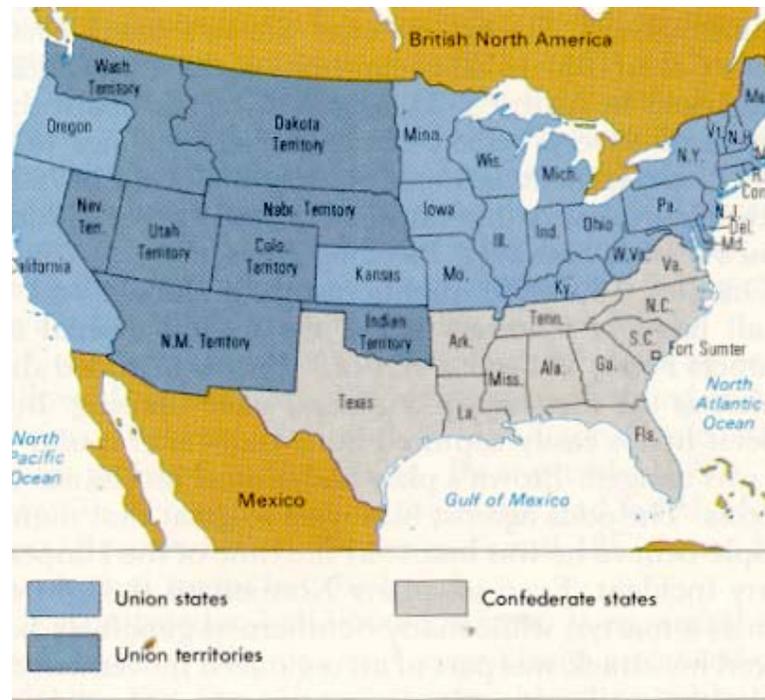
### ***The American Civil War***

Yair Davidy points out that in his opinion the southern United States was dominated by descendants of the Galatae from Gilead, in ancient Israel, east of the Jordan River, an area settled by Manasseh. He refers to an ancient tradition that from the descendants of the tribe of Manasseh, that settled east of the Jordan River, would come the first groups to return to Israel out of all the Lost Ten Tribes. He says that these

people are located, today, mainly in the so-called “Bible Belt” in the Southern and Midwestern United States.

Davidy says many of the Southerners came from parts of Britain, such as Scotland, where Manasseh dwelt in large numbers. If that is true, what does it really tell us? What does it prove?

Perhaps the Southern States were largely settled by people from Manasseh. It is interesting that during the Civil War, the first major battle fought was called “The Battle of Manassas” by the South, named after a nearby Virginia town. The Northerners called it “The First Battle of Bull Run,” after the name of a nearby creek. The town’s name does not prove America was settled by the tribe of Manasseh and that it was the dominant tribe; however, it may well attest to the fact that the *South* was largely settled by Manasseh tribesmen, since they named their town “Manassas.”



The South was greatly out-numbered in population, industrial and military might, and lost the war. It could be that many sons of Manasseh settled in the Old South – but the South, despite early victories, was soon overwhelmed and subjugated. Could this fratricidal conflict have had an ethnic basis, as well as a political motivation? Could it have been caused in part by the differences between two estranged brothers?

### ***Brothers Dwelling Together***

We know for a fact that the two peoples of Ephraim and Manasseh definitely intermingled in ancient times. In the book of Joshua we read: “And the separate cities for the children of Ephraim *were among the inheritance* of the children of Manasseh, all the cities with their villages” (Joshua 16:9). We also read: “Now Manasseh had the land

of Tappuah; but Tappuah on the border of Manasseh belonged to the children of Ephraim. And the border descended unto the river Kanah, southward of the river. These cities of Ephraim are among the cities of Manasseh” (Joshua 17:8-9).

Therefore it stands to reason that there is still much admixture between the two sons of Joseph in their modern geographic locations as well.

### *Civil War Statistics*

In the Civil War, the break-away states only numbered 11 out of 43 states in the Union. Population-wise, the Southern states in 1860 had a population of approximately 9,000,000. There were 32 Northern states, on the other hand, and they held an aggregate population of about 22,500,000 people. Thus the population of the south, if it was primarily Manasseh, would have been about 29% of the total population of the country!

Notice that the previous map shows how dominant the North was in the American Civil War. The South was in every way the “underdog” – greatly outmatched in material, manpower, resources, and economy – although they fought very bravely.

Yair Davidy states that the sons of Manasseh, which settled in North Britain, were “frequently poverty stricken, known for being poor, proud, and potentially violent. They did not make for good servants.” He says they “had a tendency for spontaneous ‘Tent-Gospel’ type religious experiences, for literal interpretation, and for fanaticism” (*Joseph*, p.176). He claims that they tended to be more violent and made very good soldiers. By 1790, he says, they were found all over the United States, but “their largest concentration was in the ‘back country’ including southwest Pennsylvania, the western parts of Maryland and Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, Kentucky and Tennessee” – *primarily the region of the South!* (p.177).

Davidy calls them a “warrior race” and says they made “good soldiers” and the best military generals (such as Robert E. Lee, Stonewall Jackson, and Nathan Bedford Forest, during the Civil War, and Gen. George Patton in World War II). Davidy says they were “known for bigotry, anarchy, violence, and courage” (p.178). All these characteristics, he asserts, depict the true Southerner.

This fact, if true, may well provide a totally new perception into a hitherto unknown and unexpected underlying cause of the American Civil War.

If the South was largely populated by Manassites, however, we must remember that the people of the “Southern states” were a distinct minority in the America of 1860. The states that seceded from the Union numbered only 11 out of 43, and their population was only 29% of the population of the country.

If this is the case, then the *VAST MAJORITY* of the early settlers who comprised the *NORTHERN STATES* were from the tribe of *EPHRAIM!*

Could it be that the Manassites living in the south did not appreciate being under the thumb of Ephraimite brethren, any more than Ephraimites dwelling in Scotland appreciated dwelling in the realm dominated by Manasseh? The strife and continuing antagonism between the North and the South in the United States could be partly due to genetic differences – the differences between one brother and another! It may be that the southern Manassites simply did not enjoy having the Ephraimite Northern “Yankees” ruling over them and threatening their way of life, any more than the northern Ephraimites enjoyed having the British Manassites ruling over them!

If Davidy is correct, then Machir’s descendants dwelt primarily in the Southern and Western regions of the United States. Perhaps they accounted for 29% of the American population being of the tribe of Manasseh. But the overwhelming portion of the population of the United States remained with the North, identified with the North, dwelt north of the Mason-Dixon line, and rejected the call to rebellion. They would have been mostly from the tribe of Ephraim. They are well known for their culture, high society, nobility, and aristocracy. Many American presidents are derived from this aristocracy – including George Washington, Ronald Reagan, George Bush, Bill Clinton, Theodore Roosevelt, Franklin Roosevelt, and many more. Their roots go back to a genealogical connection with British royalty.

Brothers dwelling together don’t always get along. This may also be reflected in the English Civil War in Great Britain, which broke out in 1642, during the time of Oliver Cromwell. It involved the whole of the British Isles in the 1600s. Cromwell was a Puritan and supported Parliament in its war against the king. He led his army in a series of victories, and king Charles was beheaded in 1649. During his rule, Cromwell brought Scotland and Ireland under English control. Once again, this Civil War may have been in large part a squabble between the descendants of the two sons of Joseph.

This bloody fratricide of Civil War, in Britain in the seventeenth century, the revolutionary war in America in the eighteenth century, the war of 1812, as well as the American Civil War in the nineteenth century, could all throw new light on an interesting prophecy found in Isaiah. Nick Wood in Great Britain, drew my attention to Isaiah 9:21. The prophet declares: “*Manasseh devoured Ephraim, and Ephraim Manasseh, and together they were both against Judah*” (Isaiah 9:21, NRSV).

On occasion, in history, the two tribes, Ephraim and Manasseh, have not gotten along so well. They have “devoured,” or fought, one another.

### ***More Research Needed***

To his credit, Yair Davidy admits that more needs to be researched and investigated on this subject. He wrote in “Brit-Am Now”-392, sent out to his mailing list April 26, 2004: “According to the Midrash it will be people from Gilead in Manasseh who will lead the return of the Lost Ten Tribes. We traced these people historically to the west and north of Britain and from there to the USA, especially the ‘Celtic’ dominated areas of the Old South and West including the so-called ‘Bible Belt.’ These

areas also include important elements from Ephraim and other areas and *much more work needs to be done on this subject. We have not even scratched the surface.*"

### ***Does It Really Matter?***

Some may think that it doesn't really matter who is Ephraim and who is Manasseh, in terms of Biblical identity and our roots, heritage, and destiny.

However, I beg to differ. It does matter. Truth matters. The word of God speaks of those who, in the latter days, will be deceived by "all power, signs, lying wonders, and every kind of wicked deception," why? – "because they *refused to LOVE THE TRUTH and so be saved*" (II Thess.2:9-10).

Does it really matter, after all is said and done? Error always has a penalty.

Actually, it does matter a great deal in terms of understanding of the end-time prophecies related specifically to "Ephraim," such as those in Jeremiah and Hosea. These prophecies have much to say about what will occur to Ephraim, especially, in the "end of days." When God speaks of Ephraim, it is important for us to know who He is talking to! When God describes something that is to happen to Ephraim, as He does in the book of Hosea, wouldn't you like to know to whom the prophecy is referring?

Maybe it is *you!*

Truth always matters, to all of those who desire to know the *truth*. Jesus Christ said, "You shall know the truth, and the truth will make you free" (John 8:32). How important is "truth"? It liberates us, it sets free our understanding, it increases our knowledge, it prevents us from making serious mistakes, based on false conclusions or erroneous ideas.

What is prophesied for one brother will not automatically befall the other one. Down through history, the two brothers have stood together far more than they have stood apart. But not always so. The United States, for example, *fought* the British in the Revolutionary War, 1775-1783, and also in the War of 1812. When the U.S. suffered its Civil War, Great Britain stayed out of it, but the North was always wary that she might intervene on the side of the South.

Truly, down through history when the two brothers have been together, united, as allies, they have been blessed, fulfilling the prophecies assigned to them by God. At other times they have had their internecine fights, squabbles, wars, conflicts, competition and striving – as brothers are always wont to do. In the long run, however, they tend to stand together "against all odds." Indeed, they are "brothers," and two of the sons of Jacob, two of the greatest tribes of "Israel."

Ephraim and Manasseh stood together arm in arm, shoulder to shoulder, in fighting the forces of Nazism in World War II, and repelling Saddam Hussein from

Kuwait in the Gulf War, and removing the threat of Iraq in the 2003 Iraq War. The world has enjoyed relative peace since World War II largely because of this strong alliance.

They did not stand together in Vietnam – and the United States lost the war in Vietnam.

They did not stand together in the Suez crisis of 1956, when Great Britain, together with France and Israel, seized the Suez Canal which Egypt had “nationalized” and seized from British control. In that conflict, President Dwight Eisenhower forced the British and their allies to retreat, to stand down, and relinquish the Canal to the Egyptians. This horrendous decision led to increased conflict in the Middle East ever since and contributed immensely to the present Arab-Israeli conflict.

Winston Churchill once said, so long as America and Great Britain remain united, nobody could stand against them. December 26, 1941, shortly after the Japanese bombed Pearl Harbor, bringing the United States into World War II, Churchill declared to the U.S. Congress:

“Prodigious hammer-strokes have been needed to bring us together again, or if you will allow me to use other language, I will say that *he must indeed have a blind soul who cannot see that some great purpose and design is being worked out here below*, of which we have the honor to be the faithful servants. It is not given to us to peer into the mysteries of the future. Still I avow my hope and faith, sure and inviolate, that in the days to come the *British and American peoples will for their own safety and for the good of all, walk together side by side in majesty, in justice and in peace.*”

Together, we stand strong, united, and mighty. But when we become divided, the world falls into catastrophe.

Prophetically speaking, it IS important to *know* the identity of Ephraim and Manasseh, the two sons of Joseph, and to understand their birthright. Although it is not something vital to salvation, it is important to understand Biblical prophecy and what it portends for our future.

True knowledge is priceless. King Solomon wrote, “It is the glory of God to conceal a thing: but the honor of kings is to search out a matter” (Proverbs 25:2).

*Chapter Sixteen*

# Prophesied for Ephraim-America in the End of Days

The Old Testament book of Hosea contains a vital message to “Ephraim – the United States of America – as well as the rest of the Ten “Lost Tribes” of Israel, and modern Judah – the nation of Israel in the Middle East! These prophecies refer to this present fearsome age of nuclear terror and international turmoil.

God loves the English-speaking peoples – the modern descendants of the ancient tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, sons of Joseph – the tribes destined for greatness, who received the greatest blessings of prosperity and resources from the patriarch Jacob (Gen.48:13-20).

God pleads, “How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel? . . . My heart is changed within me; all my compassion is aroused. I will not carry out my fierce anger, nor will I turn and devastate Ephraim. For I am God, and not man – the Holy One among you. I will not come in wrath. They will follow the LORD; he will roar like a lion. When he roars, they will come trembling like birds from Egypt, like doves from Assyria. I will settle them in their homes, says the LORD” (Hos.11:8-11, NIV).

God loves His people, and it saddens Him greatly to see the way they are behaving. He says, “Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth! For the LORD has spoken: I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against Me. The ox knows its owner, and the donkey its master’s crib; but Israel does not know, My people do not consider.

“Alas, sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a brood of evildoers, children who are corrupters! They have forsaken the LORD, they have provoked the Holy One of Israel, they have turned away backward” (Isaiah 1:2-4).

The prophet continues: “Why should you be stricken again? You will revolt more and more. The whole head is sick, and the whole heart faints. From the sole of the foot even to the head , there is no soundness in it, but wounds and bruises and putrefying

sores . . .” (verses 5-6). What has happened to our people?

God declared, “Ephraim also is the strength of mine head” (Psalm 60:7). “Ephraim is my *helmet*” says the NIV. God intended Ephraim to be a mighty nation in righteousness, setting an example of goodness to all the nations of the world. How disappointed He must feel, when He looks upon modern America and Britain, and the other English-speaking peoples!

Yet, God loves America and Great Britain, and all the English-speaking peoples, descended from Joseph, and all the tribes of Israel, located primarily in Northwestern Europe. And He loves the Jewish people. But what must He think when He sees the awful wickedness and increasing violence in our land? What does His heart tell Him when He sees the crime, rape, pornography, incest, homosexuality, hatred, theft, fraud, deceit, violence, drug abuse, spousal abuse, abortion, murder, mayhem, and overall wickedness escalating throughout our nations? What does He think when He sees the judicial approval and endorsement of the homosexual way of death and disease, and the widespread government acceptance of abortion, with *millions* of babies being sadistically butchered annually – their chance for a full life snuffed out just because of a woman’s indiscretion and inconvenience?

### ***God Reveals His Plans and Purpose***

The prophet Amos foretold, “If a trumpet is blown in a city, will not the people be afraid? If there is calamity in a city, will not the LORD have done it? Surely the Lord GOD does nothing, unless he reveals his secret to his servants the prophets. A lion has roared! Who will not fear? The Lord GOD has spoken! Who can but prophesy?” (Amos 3:6-8).

Or as the Moffatt translation has it: “Do not townsfolk tremble, when the alarm is blown? Can trouble befall a town, unless the Eternal is at work? The Lord Eternal never does anything without telling his prophets.”

What does God in heaven say about the FUTURE of the United States and the Western world, in our END-TIME generation?

Daniel the prophet looked into our times and foretold a time of world-engulfing travail and crisis during the “time of the end.” He declared, “And at that time Michael the great prince shall stand up, that stands over the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of tribulation, such tribulation as has not been from the time that there was a nation on the earth until that time” (Dan.12:1, Septuagint).

Jesus Christ called it a time of “great tribulation.” He declared of the time before His promised Advent, “For at that time there will be great suffering, such as has not been from the beginning of the world until now, no, and never will be. And if those days had not been cut short, no one would be saved; but for the sake of the elect those days will be cut short” (Matt.24:21-22, NRSV).

The prophet Hosea goes into specific details in his prophecies concerning end-time Ephraim – and announces tidings of doom and destruction against the greatest superpower the world has ever known – the United States – and the nations of modern end-time “Israel.”

### ***A Warning to the United States and Great Britain***

Hosea thunders, “My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I will also reject you . . . Because you have forgotten the law of your God, I also will forget your children. The more they increased [in population], the more they sinned against Me; I will change their GLORY *into shame*” (Hos.4:6-7, NKJV).

Hosea goes on, “Hear this, O priests [ministers], take heed, O house of Israel [the ten tribes which separated from Judah, and migrated into Europe and the western lands], give ear, O house of the king [president, or ruler]. . . For yours is the judgment . . . The revolters are deeply involved in slaughter, though I rebuke them all. *I know Ephraim*, and Israel is not hidden from Me: for now, *O Ephraim*, you commit harlotry; Israel is defiled. They do not direct their deeds toward turning to their God, for the spirit of harlotry is in their midst, and they do not know the LORD” (Hos.5:1-4).

God goes on, “The pride of Israel testifies to his face: *therefore Israel and Ephraim STUMBLE in their iniquity*; JUDAH [the Jews, and the nation of “Israel” today] also stumbles with them” (Hos.5:5).

This means a time of JUDGMENT is coming – and coming soon – upon our land!

### ***A World in Peril***

In a revealing issue of *Vortex* magazine, an article titled “U.S. Facing Catastrophic Attack,” revealed that national security experts commissioned by Congress to examine America’s vulnerabilities in a changing, hostile world, warned that a crippling assault can be expected within 25 years. Authorities, however, are concerned that such attacks could occur at *almost anytime!*

The commission reported, “Weapons proliferation [and] the persistence of international terrorism will END *the relative invulnerability of the U.S. to catastrophic attack. A direct attack against American citizens on American soil is likely over the next 25 years*” (*Vortex*, March 2001).

*Insight* magazine reported, “For safety reasons, the federal government has decided not to bring the general public into the loop about how to prepare for a likely biological- or chemical-weapon attack.” Says the magazine:

“Without warning, civilians won’t have a clue until days or weeks later that an attack even has occurred, let alone whether they have been subjected to

the deadly agents. . . .

“Experts agree that the threat of attack by bioterrorists – whether state sponsored or carried out by independent radicals with weapons of mass destruction (WMDs) such as biological or chemical agents – *no longer is a matter of IF, but WHEN*. Indeed, ‘low tech’ attacks have already occurred, and the threat of such terrorism is simply a grim reality of the new millennium. . . .

“Knowing the possibility, even the certainty, that such attacks will occur is only the beginning. Given the almost total lack of information provided to the civilian population about avoidance and preparation, the real life hysteria that played out during the *War of the Worlds* broadcast [in 1938 on radio by Orson Wells] is comical compared to the drama that experts agree will unfold following a biological or chemical attack” (*Insight*, March 26, 2001).

Why isn’t the public being warned, and prepared? Why is the American public being left without even the most rudimentary information? Israeli citizens are taught the use of gas masks, and sealing off a room from outside contamination, in case of a biological-chemical attack. But the U.S. government acts fearful and afraid to warn the public of the very real dangers. Surgical masks, even basic surgical masks, could provide some protection. It appears in many ways our leaders are more concerned with politics and re-election than in protecting the American people from disaster and terrorism. But hiding our faces in the sand will not make the dangers go away. Says *Insight*, “If panic is born of fear, say some experts, how better to deal with it than by education and preparation?” (*ibid.*).

### ***Terrorist Threat Won’t Go Away***

The hated-filled terrorists and Muslim fanatics will commit suicide if necessary to destroy their arch enemy, the “Great Satan” as the fanatical Arabs refer to the United States. They hate the Americans and British almost as much as they hate Israel!

Terrorists continue to seek to obtain weapons of mass destruction (nuclear preferably, dirty bomb materials second, and things like biological warfare etc. third). Some claim that terrorists may have already inserted these mass destruction weapons into our cities clandestinely. If perhaps 30 U.S. major cities are “seeded” that way, the terrorists would have the capability to suddenly unleash those weapons in all 30 cities – causing devastating destruction throughout the United States. The casualties could soar into the millions. In a worst case scenario, something like 100 to 150 million casualties could result from such a calamity.

If al Qaeda possesses such assets in the United States, why have they not used them as of this moment? Perhaps they don’t have that number in place. Perhaps they are still in the process of smuggling and stock-piling such weapons.

Al Qaeda announced to the Arab world quietly that it has succeeded in getting 7 nuclear bombs into 7 U.S. cities. Most are 100 kilotons, a couple or so are 10 kilotons.

Meanwhile, anthrax and smallpox have also been inserted. This indicates that the enemy is waiting for the *opportune moment to strike*. To strike prematurely could lead to a devastating nuclear response.

Besides various nuclear bombs sold on the black market, al Qaeda has been smuggling radioactive components and things like Cesium 137, which could make for a very effective “dirty bomb.” In Thailand, some 50 pounds were seized, about the amount that was released into the atmosphere in the Chernobyl nuclear reactor disaster.

Imagine 30 Chernobyl-type incidents in U.S. cities – or worse! It is not a pleasant thought. If al Qaeda struck in this manner, who would the United States retaliate against? The entire Arab-Muslim world might suffer from the consequences of retaliation against such an attack.

There is no doubt that the fanatical Moslems intend to do all they can to cripple and destroy American power around the world. It is only a matter of time. President Bush is right – this is a struggle for survival. America and the West are at war, although much of Europe and many in America still seem to be in complete denial of this reality. How many attacks will it take to wake them up and catch their attention?

Writes Tom Bearden, “When Bush took us into Iraq, we had no greater than five years before the completion of the ‘insertion phase’ and then the order to unleash everything and destroy the entire United States. He has bought us a little time, but not too much. Interceptions of the Cesium etc. continue to buy a little time; but we do not know how many such incidents have been successful. *So the clock is ticking to our utter demise*. Meanwhile, we see the war on terrorism being turned into a convenient football by those arch liberals who think that all war can be evaded, and everything can be negotiated and solved peacefully. Sadly, they do not even realize that now, there is no such thing as ‘peace’, but only the insertion phase of the full strategic war. This is the perpetual war that will last till we are destroyed, or until the fanatical Muslims are destroyed . . .”

Says Bearden, “So we face nothing but this war we are already in, and ever increasing excursions and additional wars and battles and struggles. Warfare is again being reduced to wholesale murder of entire populations, and in our own way we have just entered the *new Dark Ages*.” Bearden fears that this war will last as long as the last Dark Ages did, *or until more than two thirds of humanity is destroyed*. Smallpox alone, he pointed out, released in a single major city, “will eventually kill off 2 billion. And it is going to be released. Not if, but when” (*Tom Bearden Report*, June 2003).

Bearden is not, to my knowledge, a fundamentalist Christian. But his words have an eerie Biblical ring. They sound very apocalyptic. What does Bible prophecy say is going to happen? What does the future hold?

### ***Ephraim and Syria***

In Isaiah, chapter 17, we read: “The burden against Damascus. Behold,

*Damascus will cease from being a city, and it will be a ruinous heap. The cities of Aroer are forsaken; they will be for flocks which lie down, and no one will make them afraid. The fortress also will cease from Ephraim, the kingdom from Damascus, and the remnant of Syria; they will be as the glory of the children of Israel, says the LORD of hosts. In that day it shall come to pass that the GLORY OF JACOB WILL WANE [margin, FADE], and the fatness of his flesh grow LEAN” (Isa.17:1-4, NKJV).*

The prophecy of Isaiah 17 goes on:

“In that day a man will look to his Maker, and his eyes will have respect for the Holy One of Israel. He will not look to the altars, the work of his hands; he will not respect what his fingers have made, nor the wooden images, nor the incense altars.

“In that day his strong cities will be as a forsaken bough [Targum, ‘laid waste’] and an uppermost branch, which they left because of the children of Israel; *and there will be desolation.*

“Because you have forgotten the God of your salvation, and have not been mindful of the Rock of your stronghold [refuge], therefore you will plant pleasant plants and set out foreign seedlings; in the day you will make your plant to grow, and in the morning you will make your seed to flourish; but the harvest will be A HEAP OF RUINS *in the day of grief and desperate sorrow*” (Isaiah 17:7-11).

These prophecies suggest strongly that there will be another round of war in the Middle East. It will involve the nation of Syria, a sponsor of terrorism, and Syria will suffer massive destruction, and its capital Damascus laid waste.

At that same time, God says, “The *fortress* also shall cease from Ephraim” (Isaiah 17:3). The word for “fortress” here in Hebrew is *mibtsar* and means “a fortification, castle, or fortified city; fig., a defender – fenced, fortress, (most) stronghold.”

But notice – even the “fortress” of America – *Ephraim* – will suffer mightily. “Fortresses” can refer to military bases and establishments. It can also refer to American floating “fortresses” – our proud Navy’s aircraft carriers and the far-flung U.S. Fleet which projects American power around the world. Could enemies attack and destroy these fortresses, and do vast damage to American power and interests?

The prophecy states clearly that Ephraim’s fortresses will cease; that cities will be laid waste. This could be the result of terrorism – biological and nuclear terrorism – and war.

### ***Economic Maelstrom in the Making***

To project military might, a nation must be strong economically. This is becoming a serious problem in modern America, with debt reaching staggering levels in every sphere of life. God thunders in Isaiah 17: “And in that day it shall come to pass,

that the glory of Jacob shall be MADE *THIN*, and the fatness of his flesh (economic strength) shall WAX *LEAN*” (Isaiah 17:4, KJV).

These dramatic events are the key starters which presage the time known in Bible prophecy as the “TIME OF JACOB’S TROUBLES.” Jeremiah the prophet spoke of it. He declared, “Thus says the LORD: We have heard a cry of panic, of terror, and no peace. Ask now, and see, can a man bear a child? Why then do I see every man with his hands on his loins like a woman in labor? Why has every face turned pale? Alas! that day is so great there is none like it; *it is a time of distress for Jacob*; yet he shall be rescued from it” (Jer.30:5-7, NRSV).

Economically, the United States has no rivals – at the present time. The nation has a gross domestic product (GDP) of over *\$10 trillion dollars*. The next largest economy is China with a GDP only one half as large, but four times the population. On a per capita basis, America’s GDP is *eight times* that of China, and *40% larger* than that of the United Kingdom.

Nevertheless, the U.S. economy is not immune to recessions, stock market crashes, currency crises, or depressions. What goes up can come down. As powerful as America is today, it is towing an enormous amount of debt – trillions of dollars worth. The risks are so real that Alan Greenspan and the Federal Reserve have lowered interest rates to the lowest they have been in half a century.

The tip of the spear that could gore the American economic ox in the next few years is the “bubble economy.” A “bubble” occurs when speculation drives prices of stocks and commodities through the ceiling, far beyond their real intrinsic worth. When such a ‘bubble’ is pricked, and pops, the economic results can be devastating, resulting in widespread panic and fear.

### ***Holding a Tiger by the Tail***

What happens when the immovable object – debt – meets the irresistible force – creditors – who demand payment? How much longer can this charade go on? How much longer can we re-arrange the deck chairs on the Titanic, before we sink?

The bubble economy of the U.S. is matched by the concordant bubble investment economy of China, growing by leaps and bounds, supplying the needs of the U.S. and other nations. “What happens when two bubbles collide?” asks the Asian Times. “Do they both burst, or do they coalesce and become an even bigger bubble – which will eventually burst even more spectacularly?”

The days of living on borrowed money will – *must* – come to an end. Increased inflation and massive debt default will prove to be impossible to avoid, ultimately. Today, the Federal Reserve is printing money like crazy to fight deflation in assets. In the long run, this could prove disastrous, as the dollar becomes increasingly worthless. This could torpedo the entire world economy. As one investment guru noted, “Sometime

between now and the crack of doom, Americans will turn their heads toward the stars . . . and wonder what they were thinking . . .” (Bill Bonner, *The Daily Reckoning*, Feb.18, 2004).

In 1958, America was the world’s largest net exporter. Today, it is the largest net importer. In 1958, it was the world’s largest creditor nation; today, it is the world largest debtor with a foreign financial deficit of \$4 trillion dollars. In 1958, the U.S. savings rate was over 10%; today it is near 1%. In 1958, total debt in the U.S. was 150% of GDP; today it is over 300%, a level never before seen.

Herbert Hoover, the 31<sup>st</sup> president of the United States, quipped, “Blessed are the young, for they will inherit the national debt!” Is that any kind of legacy and inheritance to bequeath to our children?

Common sense, historical experience, and Bible prophecy, all predict an awesome “bump in the road” lies ahead. We had better get prepared. It is high time for nations – and individuals – to *get out of debt!* Wise king Solomon wrote, “The borrower is servant [slave] to the lender” (Proverbs 22:7).

### ***High Stakes Poker***

To keep the world economy going, foreign nations are willing to loan America billions, so they can sell billions of dollars worth of exports to our nation, thus fueling their own economies. It is like a game of high stakes poker. No other nation wants to call the “bluff” of the United States today. They have too much to lose. Such a “call” could destroy the entire world economic/financial system.

But eventually their interests and ours will collide. As American strength continues to hemorrhage, and weakness sets in, the time to strike will present itself. One day they will decide that they no longer want to lend us all this money, and they will want their debts paid in full. They will even decide to SELL their U.S. stocks and bonds. Even a relatively “small” sale of such could cremate the economy, sending markets into a downward tailspin, causing a wild increase in interest rates.

It would be an explosion – the financial equivalent to an economic *hydrogen bomb*. And the world will never be the same.

The U.S. deficit is a very significant threat facing the entire world economy. Unless checked, and brought under control, it could cause a currency or financial crisis which would result in a sharp decline in output and employment. Such deficits do not correct themselves painlessly. No country is immune to the laws of financial prudence.

About three years ago, the U.S. Trade Deficit Review Commission examined the problem, and concluded, “The financial laws of gravity have not been repealed for the United States.”

The United States now has the worst trade deficit in history, far worse than it was in 2000. It also has the worst budget deficit in history – one which didn't even exist in the year 2000. With both these deficits, it is only the monumental size of the United States that prevents other countries from pulling the plug and taking their money and running. Their economies and fates are tied up with the United States.

Like in a high stakes game of poker, the question is – who is going to blink first?

It's not rocket science. It's simply cause and effect. Simple economics. You cannot spend more than you make. Sooner or later, you must pay the bill or declare bankruptcy. When the day of reckoning comes, it won't be easy. It will require some of the hardest sacrifices and toughest decisions, we will all have to make – in order to survive the coming crisis and “lean times” that are prophesied. Foolish financial policies and habits are bringing these things upon ourselves!

Lean times lie ahead! The prophet Isaiah foretold it. Speaking of Ephraim and Israel in the last days, the amazing prophecy of Isaiah 17 continues:

“It shall be as when the harvesters gather the grain, and reaps the heads with his arm; it shall be as he who gathers heads of grain in the Valley of Rephaim [dead, deceased, or giants]. Yet gleanings shall be left in it, *like the shaking of an olive tree, two or three olives at the top of the uppermost bough, four or five in its most fruitful branches*, says the LORD God of hosts” (Isaiah 17:5-6).

“Rephaim” in Hebrew is variously translated as “dead,” “deceased,” or “giants.” It is rendered “dead” seven times. This is a picture of severe economic dislocation and barren, harsh times. Is America and the western world facing such times? Could we be on the threshold of *seven lean years* lying ahead, as fell on the world during the time of Joseph? As America sees its trouble, and weak economy, it will turn to Gentile nations – primarily Europe and Germany – for help. But none will be forthcoming.

God says, “When Ephraim saw his *sickness*, and Judah his sores, then *Ephraim turned to Assyria* [a United Europe, led by Germany, where many of the ancient Assyrians migrated], and sent to the great king [the leader of the European Union] for help. But he is not able to cure you, not able to heal your sores [hemorrhaging economy, swelling trade deficit, growing unemployment, spreading recession, or depression]” (Hos.5:13).

Could this be the time when the U.S. is forced to knuckle under to the New World Order and hand over control of its military in return for economic aid? Is this when our peoples will become economic servants – slaves – of the “New World Order”?

God warns our peoples today: “For I will be like a LION to Ephraim, like a great lion to Judah. I will *tear them to pieces* and go away; I will carry them off, with no one to rescue them. Then I will go back to my place, until they admit their guilt. And they will seek my face; in their misery they will earnestly seek me” (Hos.5:14-15, NIV).

***“Homeland INsecurity”***

The prophet Hosea warns, “Ephraim has mixed himself among the peoples; Ephraim is a cake unturned [half-baked, cooked on one side and not on the other]. ALIENS HAVE DEVoured HIS STRENGTH, *but he does not know it*. Yes, gray hairs are here and there on him, yet he does not know it” (Hos.7:8-9).

In the March issue of NewsMax, 2004, John L. Perry writes about “Massive Immigration ‘Swamping’ U.S. Cities.” He declares:

“Mass immigration, most of it coming from south of the border, is ‘swamping’ the United States, with six large U.S. cities now consisting mostly of foreign-born inhabitants, says a new report.

“The Federation for American Immigration Reform (FAIR), a Washington, D.C.-based group advocating tighter immigration restrictions, says 1.1 million immigrants will enter the U.S. this year alone. In its new report, FAIR says the immigration population nearly doubled from 19.8 million to 31.1 million a decade later.

“ ‘America’s immigration policies have launched us into a risky experiment never tried by a modern-day country’ said Dan Stein, FAIR’s executive director; in reference to the new numbers, ‘This demographic change is unlike anything this country has ever experienced, and is unprecedented in modern times.’”

The report mentions that about 9.2 million immigrants, or 30% of the total foreign-born population, comes from Mexico, according to the Census Bureau’s 2000 report. In 2000, more than half of the foreign-born lived in three states – California, New York, and Texas. If current levels of immigration continue, by 2010 the country’s foreign-born population will swell to 45,000,000.

Many regions of the United States are already struggling to provide basic services for people. Adding more numbers will simply make it far more difficult. A sad fact is that many of these immigrants, unlike immigrants generations ago, end up on welfare rolls and a sizable portion end up in prison because of lawlessness.

Homeland Security chief Tom Ridge says that the bottom line is that we must come to grips with the presence of 8-12 million illegals. But the United States seems to be in a quandary about how to handle this explosive issue. Representative Tom Tancredo, from Colorado, head of the House Immigration Reform Caucus, says we need to plug “gaping holes in both America’s porous borders and its dysfunctional guest worker programs.”

A number of extremist aliens in our midst would like nothing better than to begin to dominate the southwestern states, and carve out a new nation, called “Azatlan.” Some from Mexico still seethe over the fact that the United States fought Mexico in the middle of the nineteenth century, and then “liberated” or purchased the territories of California,

Arizona, New Mexico, and, of course, Texas.

Foreign-born aliens with close ties to Mexico and other nations could become a dangerous “fifth column” in our midst in the years ahead.

It was prophesied, long ago!

***“Aliens . . . Shall Ascend Above You”***

In the book of Deuteronomy, God warns that He will punish His people if they disobey Him and forsake His covenant and break His commandments. He warns, “But if you will not obey the LORD your God by diligently obeying all his commandments and decrees, which I am commanding you today, then all these curses shall come upon you and overtake you: Cursed shall you be in the city, and cursed shall you be in the field . . . Cursed shall be the fruit of your womb, the fruit of your ground, the increase of your cattle and the issue of your flock. Cursed shall you be when you come in, and cursed shall you be when you go out. . .

*“Aliens residing among you shall ascend above you higher and higher, while you shall descend lower and lower. They shall lend to you but you shall not lend to them; they shall be the head and you shall be the tail”* (Deut.28:15-19, 43-44, NRSV).

Truly, “Ephraim mixes himself with the peoples,” and “foreigners devour his strength; gray hairs are sprinkled upon him, but he does not know it” (Hosea 7:8-9, NRSV). The foreign-born population dwelling in our midst is a ticking time bomb ready to explode.

How many of these ‘immigrants’ are disguised terrorists, sneaking across our borders, lurking in our midst, preparing to strike? Who knows?

***The Muslim Menace***

Besides aliens from south of the border, the United States, Britain, and Europe have accepted millions of Muslim immigrants during the past decades. An unknown but substantial number of these are fanatical extremists, or are influenced by fanatical Muslims of the Arab world. How many of them are potential terrorists? How many of them incite hatred against the Jewish people?

In Europe about 31 million Muslims live, work, and carry on their business. How many of these have been seduced by the appeal of “jihad” and Muslim extremism is anybody’s guess. The numbers, however, are no doubt growing and pose a serious threat, especially to such countries as France where they are a major population group. In Europe, the Muslim population poses a real threat to the European way of life. In Britain, terrorist plots have been nipped in the bud – but the danger remains at a high level.

Even in the United States, there is a vast Muslim subculture which is no doubt

infected with Muslim extremists who are potential terrorists and who sympathize with al Qaeda and its militants. There are about six million Muslims in the U.S.

In *Onward Muslim Soldiers*, written by Robert Spencer, and published in 2003, the Muslim terrorist threat is carefully documented. Spencer asserts that radical Islam exists, and is widespread, and that terrorists and militants around the world are using the Koran and teachings of Islam to recruit and motivate terrorists, making use of the doctrine of “jihad.”

Says Spencer, jihad is a vital part of Islamic theology. Jihad teaches that non-Muslims must be fought – that there can be no peaceful state of coexistence between Muslims and non-Muslims. Sheikh Muhammad Al-Khasif said, “There are . . . millions who lift up their eyes to Osama bin Laden as a savior” (quoted on page 11). Says Spencer: “*Many of these are in the United States right now*” (*ibid.*).

The Wahhabi sect is considered the most dangerous, and its birthplace is Saudi Arabia, supposedly an American ally in the Middle East. Their teachings are dispersed around the world through mosques and schools bankrolled by Saudi oil money. Wahhabism routinely identifies “Jews and Christians” as the enemy of Muslims.

A typical example of their rhetoric is sheikh Muhammad Saleh Al-Munajjid who said in a Saudi mosque: “It is impossible to ever make peace with the Jews . . . The Jews are defiled creatures and satanic scum . . . The Jews are our enemies and hatred of them is in our hearts.” His prescription for fighting the Jews, and Christians, is to wage “jihad” against them – warfare, both spiritual and physical. Muslims, he said, must “educate their children to Jihad . . . educating the children to Jihad and to hatred of the Jews, the Christians, and the infidels; educating the children to Jihad and to revival of the embers of Jihad in their souls. This is what is needed now” (p.14).

Textbooks of Muslim schools in the United States are provided by the Saudis and promote this same hatred. One text so used states, “Judaism and Christianity are deviant religions,” and goes on: “Befriending the unbelievers, through loving and cooperating with them while knowing that they are unbelievers, makes those who are their friends the same as them.”

Even the radical terrorist group Hezbollah has a core membership in the United States at this time and has been infiltrating into this core those who have been through their terrorist training camps, developing terrorist skills.

Muslim American apologists claim the threat of Jihad is misleading and irrelevant, and dismiss the idea that it refers to real war and acts of terrorism. They claim “Jihad” is merely a “spiritual struggle.” This blithe dismissal plays down the martial element and is intended to put the American public and government at ease – off guard. But the truth is not so gentle. Says Spencer, “The first thing we must do is end our myopic complacency and accept the nature of the threat from radical Islam” (p.290).

Spencer warns, “There is unmistakable evidence that Islamic radicalism may have penetrated deeply into the fabric of American Islam” (p.292). Among the evidence is the Wahhabi bankrolling of mosques and schools; the hate-filled venom in the textbooks; the rejection of American identity by Muslim students; discovered al Qaeda cells; and support for radical Muslim terrorism by Muslim professors and educators.

In his book *Secrets of the Koran*, Don Richardson reveals that the heart and core of Islam is violence. He writes, “In fact, there are at least 109 identifiable *war verses* in the Koran. One out of every 55 verses in the Koran is a war verse. War verses are scattered throughout Mohammed’s chapters like blood splatter at a crime scene” (p.28).

Here are some enlightening examples from the Koran, the “Bible” of the Muslim world, that we would all do well to understand:

“Fight against them until idolatry is no more and God’s religion reigns supreme” (Koran 2:193).

“Strike off their heads. Strike off their finger-tips! . . . because they defied God and his Apostle” (Koran 8:12-13).

“Prophet! Rouse the faithful to arms. If there are twenty steadfast men among you they shall vanquish two-hundred . . . A prophet may not take captives until he has fought and triumphed in the land [or, “until he has made a great slaughter in the earth” – Rodwell’s rendering of this last phrase]” (Koran 8:65, 68).

“Seize them and put them to death wherever you find them” (Koran 4:89).

“Believers, make war on the infidel who dwells around you” (Koran 9:123).

“When you meet the unbelievers in the battlefield strike off their heads and, when you have laid them low, bind your captives firmly” (Koran 47:4).

“When the sacred months [Ramadan] are over slay the idolaters wherever you find them. Arrest them; besiege them; and lie in ambush everywhere for them. If they repent [“convert,” Rodwell’s translation] and take to prayer and render the alms levy, allow them to go their way” (Koran 9:5).

Mohammed taught that both Jews and Christians were to be fought, even though the Scriptures were given to them. He considered them as “unbelievers,” because they do not follow his own teaching or accept him as a true prophet. For example, he considered Christians as idolaters and polytheists because of the teaching of the “Trinity” doctrine and Jesus Christ as being divine. He taught that such “idolaters” were to be sought out “relentlessly” (Koran 4:104) and called upon his followers to “annihilate the infidels” (Koran 3:141) (p.61, *Secrets of the Koran*).

Following his teaching, Islamic armies conquered far and wide, extorting wealth from Jewish and Christian populations, thereby funding their ongoing conquests. Islam

has a secret plan for world domination and seeks to “prevail over all religions” (Koran 9:33; see also 48:28; 61:9).

Says Don Richardson, “Islam has again set its sights on a conquest of Europe and of European civilization, wherever the latter has spread to North and South America and other regions. Muslim strategists ask their followers, *Why do we find in these modern times that Allah has entrusted most of the world’s oil wealth primarily in Muslim nations?*”

What is their answer? “Allah foresaw Islam’s need for funds to finance a final politico-religious victory over what Islam perceives as its *ultimate enemy: Christianized Euro-American civilization*. So, Islam follows Nazism, fascism and communism as the world’s latest hostile takeover aspirant” (p.161).

With this understanding, we ought to discern that the presence of Islamic schools, mosques, and peoples in our nations is nothing less than a dangerous “Trojan horse” getting ready to attack our nations *from within our own borders!*

Muslim radicals seek to exploit massive immigration – both legal and illegal – into western nations. With millions of Muslims now in place, and enemy countries thoroughly infiltrated, they will seek to take over by influencing the political process, and acts of violence and terrorism.

The Islamic threat looming over America, Britain, Canada, and the European nations, is serpentine, mostly hidden, but growing increasingly dangerous, and ought to be of highest priority and of urgent concern. Though not all Muslims seek war, the “true believers” who adhere to the Koran – who are a growing and forceful group – seek nothing less than all-out Jihad against the West!

### ***Sleep-Walking Into the Apocalypse***

The peril to modern America and Britain is breathing down our necks, yet the majority of people are still sleep-walking through the night, failing to comprehend the onrushing Apocalypse.

There is an air of “unreality” about it all. A nuclear weapon has not been unleashed since the end of World War II, when the U.S. dropped atomic bombs on Nagasaki and Hiroshima, Japan. Since the end of the “Cold War,” the massive majority of citizens have buried their heads in the sands of eternal optimism.

But today, even terrorists have possession of nuclear weapons, and more and more nations are joining the nuclear club.

The U.N.’s chief nuclear inspector says the situation is way out of control. Iranians have been bamboozling nuclear inspectors for the past 18 years, and now have the ability to produce nuclear weapons.

Sources report that “dozens” of nuclear “dirty-bomb” warheads are missing from storage stockpiles, and al Qaeda may have as many as *twenty suitcase nukes*. One source says he purchased them from ex-KGB agents for a measly \$30 million, mere pocket-change to the oil-rich terrorist sponsors.

In addition to that peril, says Joseph Farrar, “In a few short years today’s terror-sponsoring nations may not need to send terrorists with backpack nukes to wreak devastation on the West because they will be capable of hitting New York or Los Angeles with warheads mounted on ICBMs” (*Worldnetdaily.com*, January 19, 2004, “Return of the Nuclear Threat”).

All of these factors are pushing the world toward the “New World Order” – and its aftermath.

### *“A Senseless Dove”*

Incredibly unwise government decisions and policies have brought the United States to a very vulnerable state.

Says the prophet Hosea, “Ephraim is like a dove, easily deceived and senseless – now calling to Egypt, now turning to Assyria” (Hos.7:11). Other nations are taking advantage of the U.S. “free trade” policies and dumping merchandise in the United States, creating a tremendous balance of payments deficit. The U.S. is presently running a tremendous trade deficit with virtually every nation on the earth! Meanwhile, we sell or give vital and sensitive technology to nations which are our avowed enemies or questionable “new friends.”

Truly, the United States seems like a *silly, senseless dove* – not even realizing what foreign nations are doing to her own once robust economy! “Ephraim,” God says, “has *sold herself to lovers*” (Hosea 8:9, NIV). America gives billions to Russia, and gives the Chinese avowed enemy “most favored trade status.”

The sun set on the once mighty British Empire. America’s own sun is now beginning to set on her own world “Empire”! America is becoming a victim of its own lies, arrogance, folly and deception.

Moses warned the people long ago: “*Be sure your sin will find you out*” (Numbers 32:23, NRSV).

The day of reckoning is not far off.

## *Chapter Eighteen*

# **God's Awesome Hand in Our History**

The history of the United States and Great Britain is a marvelous history of the intervention of the unseen hand of God in our destiny, preserving us in wars, saving us through astonishing miracles, and leading us to extraordinary victories over our enemies.

In this chapter, I will recount only a few of the many instances of Divine Favor, where the Hand of God proved decisive in granting victory in battle for the American and British peoples in their history.

Truly, as Scripture says, "Happy is the nation whose God is the LORD, the people whom he has chosen as his heritage" (Psalm 33:12, NRSV).

### ***"God Blew and They Were Scattered"***

Bad feelings existed between Spain and England in the sixteenth century. Religious differences caused conflict between them, as well as economic issues. Spain thought it controlled the New World of the Americas, and the British didn't think so. Spain was a Roman Catholic country, and Britain had largely become Protestant because of the Reformation. The British were aiding the Dutch Protestants who were rebelling against Spanish rule. King Philip of Spain, in the 1580s, began planning to send a massive fleet to invade England, with the blessing of the Pope. The English were looked upon as heretics, "island dogs," and the Pope had cursed them. Philip was going to put an end to this outrage.

In 1588, the fate of Britain hung in the balance. Her very existence was threatened by king Philip's mighty Spanish Armada – a huge fleet of massive and powerful vessels. Spain at the time was the most wealthy, powerful country on the earth. All England trembled as Philip assembled the mightiest navy in the world to attack her. The Spanish intended to rid the world of the pestilential Protestant heretics. The Spanish were so confident of victory that the fleet was called "The Invincible Armada." About

130 ships set sail for England from Lisbon on May 20, 1588.

The English were led by Admiral Lord Howard, and his squadron leaders included Sir Francis Drake, John Hawkins, and Martin Frobisher. Prior to the battle, Sir Francis Drake had written in a letter to John Fox the following:

“Wherefore I shall desire you to continue a faithful remembrance of us in your prayers that our part and service may take that effect as God may be glorified. His Church, our Queen and country preserveth, the enemies of truth, so vanquished that we may have continued peace in Israel. . . Our enemies are many, but our Protector commandeth the whole world. Let us pray continually and our Saviour will hear us in good time mercifully.”

Notice that Drake referred to the British as being “Israel.” Even then there was a sense of our destiny and identity.

When the struggle was joined, the British had only 54 vessels which were battle ready, and they were much smaller than their Spanish counterparts. Battle was engaged for ten grueling days. Some of Philip’s ships had hulls nearly four feet thick, and British cannonballs bounced off harmlessly. For days, the “invincible Armada” sailed toward Calais, France, in stately majesty. It reached port but was unable to rendezvous with Spanish troops on the mainland which it sought to ferry to England. While in harbor, Drake attacked by sending fire-ships laden with gunpowder toward them. The Spanish ships sailed out to sea to escape the flames, and later that morning 60 English ships attacked an equal number of Spanish vessels, sinking two and damaging others. As time wore on, Philip’s supplies began to run low, ammunition was nearly expended, and food was spoiling. Sensing the Spanish plight, the English ships moved in close to fire broadsides at the Spanish galleons, firing at point-blank range, but were still unable to inflict much damage to the huge ships. But they did destroy most everything above the thick hulls of the lower decks.

Frustrated, and out-fought, the Spanish decided to set sail for home waters. But, in order to do so, because of a *strong contrary wind*, they sailed northward up the English Channel, into the North Sea, hoping to wheel around Scotland and double back toward Spain. This course of action proved to be an unmitigated disaster.

This meant many more weeks of slow, difficult sailing with a contrary wind as Admiral Medina was running low on stores of food and water. One by one, crippled ships began to fall behind the fleet, only to be pounced on by the enemy. Twenty to thirty ships were lost on the coasts of Scotland and Ireland. Ship after ship went down in the awful storms. Spanish sailors muttered, under their breath, “God is fighting against us!” How right they were!

In the proud crusade, about *half* of the “invincible” Armada’s ships were lost, half of the sailors died, and those who made it back to Spain were sick and so malnourished

that they died within months. Half of those returning vessels were so damaged that they never sailed again! The disaster was a severe blow to the prestige of Spain, the most powerful country of the time.

Winston Churchill wrote about the defeat of the Spanish Armada. He declared, “To the English people as a whole *the defeat of the Armada came as a miracle*. For thirty years the shadow of Spanish power had darkened the political scene. A wave of *religious emotion* filled men’s minds. One of the medals struck to commemorate the victory bears the inscription ‘*Afflavit Deus et dissipantur*’ – ‘God blew and they were scattered.’

“Elizabeth and her seamen knew how true this was. The Armada had indeed been bruised in battle, but it was demoralized and set on the run by the *weather* [which the Creator controlled]. Yet the event was decisive. The English seamen might well have triumphed. Though limited in supplies and ships the new tactics of Hawkins had brought success. The nation was transported with relief and pride” (*A History of the English Speaking Peoples*, vol. 2).

God had indeed intervened – the weather proved decisive!

### ***Miracles in America***

Similar miracles have occurred in American history. Students of the Revolutionary war know that it was by a miracle that General George Washington led a raid across the Potomac River and wiped out a garrison of Hessian soldiers in the midst of winter, on Christmas. It was also by a miracle of arms and intervention that the Revolutionary Army was able to bottle up General Cornwallis and his troops at Yorktown, and force them to surrender, ending the war.

Shortly after the British surrender at Yorktown, Washington’s mother wrote him a letter, saying: “Truly does this event proclaim that the Great Sovereign of heaven and earth governs the world. There are no accidents of fortune. Things are not left to the wills of men, to blind chance, to their own contingency, but all are inspired, guided, and ordered by Him. He is still the same and will order all things well. No snares, intrigues, or difficulties puzzle or prevent the ways and purposes of God.”

It was an incredible, astonishing defeat of a world power by a group of brash, young upstarts – thirteen small colonies!

In the American-Mexican war of 1847-48, Brigadier General Stephen Kearny captured New Mexico with 1,700 men. American settlers in California revolted against the Mexican government and U.S. Naval forces under Commodore John Sloat captured Monterrey and the San Francisco area.

General Kearny, having pushed into California from New Mexico, fought and won a battle near Los Angeles. General Winfield Scott took 10,000 men and fought his way all the way from Veracruz to Mexico City, forcing the Mexicans to capitulate. This brief war led to the sudden acquisition of 525,000 square miles of territory, including the annexation of Texas, New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, Nevada and California.

When France later tried to conquer Mexico, following the U.S. example, they were met with resounding defeat. God was with the American forces. It is staggering to the mind that General Winfield Scott, with an army of only 6,000 effective men, could conquer a nation of some 7,000,000 inhabitants, and seize and hold their capital, Mexico City. Outnumbered in every battle, his audacious and dauntless soldiers met every battle with heroism and alacrity, resoundingly defeating Santa Anna's troops time and time again. As John S. D. Eisenhower wrote in *So Far from God: The U.S. War with Mexico 1846-1848*, "The success of American arms represented a remarkable feat. Considering the vast distances, the slowness of transport, the paucity of local resources, and the menace of virulent disease, it is remarkable that Taylor and Scott even managed to reach the scenes of their victories, let alone face the guns of the Mexicans" (p.xxi-xxii).

In the Civil War in the 1860s, God Almighty preserved our union as one people. He raised up one of America's greatest presidents, Abraham Lincoln, to guide the country through those fateful years of national travail and tribulation. Students of that war can also point to Divine Providence as playing a crucial role in its outcome.

### ***The Spanish-American War***

It was in 1898 that the United States was suddenly catapulted into being a true world power. God raised up Theodore Roosevelt at that fateful moment in history. Roosevelt then was Assistant Secretary of the Navy. On February 25, 1898, when Secretary Long went home early to rest, Roosevelt transformed history in three or four hours. During that short span of time, as acting Secretary of the Navy, he cabled Admiral Dewey of the U.S. Pacific Fleet, sent instructions to the U.S. European and South Atlantic squadrons where to rendezvous if war broke out with Spain, ordered commanders around the world to keep their ships filled with the best coal, and bought all the coal he could in the Far East.

When hostilities broke out, the U.S. Navy was prepared – it immediately went on the offensive. Commodore George Dewey with six ships sailed to Manila, in the Philippines, and destroyed the entire Spanish fleet of 10 vessels, miraculously, without the loss of a single American life!

That same year the U.S. Atlantic fleet blockaded Cuba, and when the Spanish fleet attempted to escape, it pursued, sank or beached every Spanish vessel – again, without the loss of a single American vessel!

As a result of this brief war, the United States suddenly became a true world power. As Edmund Morris writes, "Theodore Roosevelt, as the British M.P. John Morley later observed 'was' America – the America that grew to maturity after the Civil War, marshaled its resources at Chicago, and EXPLODED into world power at the turn of the century" (*The Rise of Theodore Roosevelt*, p.461). The Spanish-American war of 1898, in which the United States defeated imperial Spain, led to the acquisition of Puerto Rico, freed Cuba, and brought America the colony of the distant Philippines.

In a quite amazing manner, the invisible hand of Almighty God was also evident in the fateful days of World War I, when the Germans were advancing and defeat for the allies seemed inevitable. Resistance seemed “futile,” and collapse of the allied lines seemed imminent, but something unique happened – something a little “weird,” one might even venture to say.

### *The Angels of Mons*

In the early months of World War I the “contemptible little British Army,” as the German High Command termed it, was hurriedly equipped and sent across the Channel to support the French and Belgian Allies to stop the German advances. But these combined forces were still far weaker in guns and manpower than the Germans, and so, fighting a dogged, rearguard action, they fell back before the terrific impact of massed enemy attacks. Serious defeat and tremendous losses appeared inevitable; but, during two days of fighting around Mons, the German advance was halted long enough to allow the British Expeditionary Force to withdraw.

Differing accounts have been written on the subject of the Angels of Mons. There are many versions of the phenomena. Nevertheless, where there is smoke there must be a fire. The accounts ring true in all the basic parameters, and substantially agree that indeed miracles of deliverance took place on the battlefield!

It was 1914. The British Expeditionary Force (“the Old Contemptibles,” as Kaiser Wilhelm II called them), had valiantly resisted huge, overwhelming German attacks, fighting desperate rear-guard actions, resisting the German advance, near a town called Mons. A National Day of Prayer was called by King George V of Britain. Writes Andrew Adams,

“Soon after occurred the appearance of the Angels of Mons, which slowed the German advance. Thousands of British and German soldiers saw them and many accounts have been written, among them being ‘The White Comrade’ by Phyllis Campbell who nursed the wounded at Mons” (Adams, *As Birds Flying*, p.156).

Andrew Adams states that his own grandfather – Regimental Sergeant Major Adams, of the Royal Garrison Artillery – swore that he himself saw beings at Mons that he could only describe as “angels” – white-robed and bare-headed. Says Adams, “He was not a particularly religious man, nor prone to exaggeration” (*ibid.*).

Some of the accounts are gathered together and examined by Harold Begbie in his book, *On the Side of the Angels*. Both British and German troops were aware of supernatural intervention during the battle.

Begbie writes that in the summer 1982 edition of *This England*, a correspondent in “Post-box” inquired about the mystery from the First World War which became known to our troops as “The Angels of Mons.” Apparently, though outnumbered three

to one and on the verge of annihilation by advancing Germans, a heavenly host intervened between the rival armies thus saving the British and causing the enemy to flee in panic.

Was the story true or false? A major eye-witness to the miracles was Captain Cecil Wightwick Hayward, formerly Staff Officer in the First Corps Intelligence, British Army Headquarters. He refers to two incidents, the “Angels of Mons,” an event claimed to have been seen in late August 1914 and an even more remarkable phenomenon known as “The White Cavalry” which occurred during July, 1918 and was witnessed by the Germans. Says Captain Hayward:

“The first of these visions was near the town of Mons, during the battle of that name between the German forces and the British Army, towards the end of August, 1914. The German Army, after sweeping all resistance aside, had advanced on a wide front right into the heart of Belgium and France. Although the Belgians, French and British put up a stout defense, it was principally against the British that the heaviest enemy attacks were launched. Our troops greatly outnumbered, had been fighting continuously for several days, with little or no rest, and our men were almost dropping from fatigue after a prolonged rearguard action during which we lost numbers of men and guns. Serious defeat appeared inevitable, especially as we had practically no reserves ready. It was realized that a ‘Day of Trouble’ has arrived, and that God alone could help us. Churches were crowded with the whole of the British Nation at prayer.

“Then occurred the event afterwards known as the appearance of the ‘Angels of Mons,’ in answer to national prayer. Of several accounts referring to the appearance of ‘Angels,’ the following two are typical, both having been related by British soldiers who vouched for the occurrences as having been observed by them personally.

“While a detachment of British soldiers was retiring through Mons under very heavy German artillery and machine-gun fire in August 1914 they knelt beside a hastily erected barricade and endeavoured to hold up the enemy advance. The firing on both sides was very intensive, and the air reverberated with deafening crashes of exploding shells.

“Suddenly, firing on both sides stopped dead and a silence fell. Looking over the barrier, the astonished British saw four or five wonderful beings much bigger than men, between themselves and the halted Germans. They were white robed and bareheaded, and seemed rather to float than stand. Their backs were towards the British, and they faced the enemy with outstretched arm and hand as if to say: ‘Stop. Thus far and no further.’ The sun was shining quite brightly at the time. Next thing the British knew was that the Germans were retreating in great disorder.

“On another occasion, the British were in danger of being surrounded by the Germans, and had lost numbers of men and guns. Just when matters seemed hopeless, the heavy enemy fire suddenly stopped dead and a great silence fell over all. The sky opened with a bright shining light and figures of luminous beings appeared. They seemed to float between the British and the German forces, and to prevent the further advance of the enemy. Some of the German cavalry were advancing and the officers and men were unable to get their horses to go forward.

“Before the surprised British were able to realize what had happened, the whole of the apparently victorious enemy force were retreating in great disorder. This allowed the British and the Allied Armies to reform and fall back upon a line of defense several miles further west, where they ‘dug in.’ Then began the period of ‘trench warfare’ which continued for over three years, with varying fortunes to either side until the Spring of 1918.”

### *The White Cavalry*

The second occasion of angelic intervention became known as “The White Cavalry.” Captain Cecil Wightwick Hayward continues his report:

“The following account of what occurred between the months of April and August, 1918, I (Captain Cecil Wightwick Hayward) can personally vouch for as being true; as far as that area of the front line trenches is concerned, lying roughly between the town of Bailleul, some fifteen miles south Ypres, and the town of Arras, some fifteen miles south of Bethune, in La Bassee, France.

“I was responsible for the intelligence on this sector of the battle area, and therefore made my headquarters in the bright little town of Bethune, as it was a very good position strategically and had also remained practically untouched by enemy shell fire, although it was barely three miles from the trenches just across the La Bassee Canal.

“It was an anxious time for Great Britain. The British troops had been in the trenches fighting for weeks without rest or relief owing to the fact that reserves were practically exhausted.

“It was at this juncture that Portugal came in on our side, and raised a conscripted Army which landed in France early in March, 1918. Towards the end of that month I was instructed by Headquarters that a Portuguese force would be passing through Bethune shortly in order to take over a sector of the front line trenches just in front of Bethune, so as to relieve the British who had been holding it for so long.

“It was evident that the enemy was about to intensify this offensive shortly, with a greater concentration of men and heavy guns. On our side, especially between March and June, our troops had been greatly reduced in numbers by heavy casualties in the prolonged fighting during those months, and our reserves were practically exhausted.

“Although by the middle of May the United States of America had decided to join Great Britain and her Allies, their troops were still being formed, though the first contingent was on its way across the Atlantic. Later on, they came over at the rate of 50,000 weekly; but these reinforcements were not available for the front line much before the middle of June, according as they were dispatched to the various sectors.

“As things stood, owing to the vigorous enemy action against the Allied lines to the north of Bethune, the line from La Bassee to Lens and Arras was left in a ‘pocket’

which was liable to be ‘hemmed in’ at any moment, with all the troops, ammunition, arms and equipment it contained.

“It was highly improbable that the Portuguese troops, who had by now taken over the La Basse trenches in front of Bethune, would make much difference to the enemy’s plans. Indeed, they did not, for though there had been a temporary lull in the roar of the gun fire, it broke out again shortly afterwards with intensified fury. So tremendous was the reverberating crash of concentrated shell and high explosive fire, that it literally shook the ground and dazed us, though we were nearly three miles behind the front line.

“It fell with a dense hail of shrapnel and lead on the unfortunate Portuguese, practically blotting them out wholesale, and thus causing a gap in our front line, through which the enemy began to pour in mass formation. The few Portuguese left came staggering through Bethune, having thrown away their arms and equipment in their mad desire to get away from the hell behind them as quickly as possible.

“Shortly afterward they were followed by British troops, whose flank had been turned, and who were retiring in good order, keeping up a stiff rearguard action as they went.

“In Britain everyone was asking: ‘Would the Germans get through to Paris?’ ‘Would the Americans arrive in time to check their advance?’ ‘Will the English ports be shelled shortly by German big guns from the coast of France?’

“But then we remembered the ‘Angels of Mons’ and once again the whole British nation was *called to prayer*. The President of the United States summoned the American people to do likewise; and *united prayer* went up from all the English speaking peoples.

“In the meantime, the enemy shell fire, which had been largely directed against the shattered town of Bethune, suddenly lifted and began to burst on a slight rise beyond its outskirts. This open ground was absolutely bare of trees, houses or human beings, yet the enemy gun fire broke on it with increasing fury, and was augmented by heavy bursts of massed machine guns which raked it backward and forward with a hail of lead. We stood looking in astonishment.

“‘Fritz has gone balmy, Sir,’ said the Sergeant, ‘what in the world is he peppering the naked ground for?’

“‘I can’t think,’ I replied. ‘Get along down to the canal and see what is happening there.’

“I followed him shortly afterwards, being eager to see for myself, as there were obviously no troops within sight against whom the Germans could be directing their fire.

“As I made my way over the scattered debris of the ruined houses, the enemy’s fire suddenly ceased, and a curious calm fell on everything. I went on wondering, and

got outside the town. Then a lark suddenly arose from the remains of a meadow, and soared up, up, up, singing a trilling song which rings on my inward ear today, when I think of it.

“I saw my Sergeant and men standing on the edge of a shell hole waving their tin hats. They shouted out: ‘Fritz is retiring!’

“Indeed he was. Outlined on the slight rise by the La Bassee village, and as far as we could see, was a dense line of German troops, who a short time before had commenced a forward movement to victory, in mass formation. This line suddenly halted, and, as we watched, we saw it break!

“Before our astonished eyes, that well-drilled and seemingly victorious army broke up into groups of frightened men who were fleeing from us, throwing down their arms, haversacks, rifles, coats and anything which might impede their flight.

“It was not long before my Sergeant arrived with two German officer prisoners, and was soon followed by Tommies bringing in batches of twenty or so at a time.

“Briefly, the statement the senior German officer made was as follows:

The order had been given to advance in mass formation, and our troops were marching behind us singing their way to victory; when Friedrich my lieutenant here said:

“Herr, Kapitan, just look at that open ground behind Bethune, there is a brigade of cavalry coming up through the smoke drifting across it. They must be mad, these English, to advance against such a force as ours in the open. I suppose they must be cavalry of one of their Colonial forces, for see, they are all in white uniform and are mounted on white horses.”

“Strange,” I said, “I never heard of the English having any white uniformed cavalry, whether Colonial or not. They have all been fighting on foot for several years past, and anyway, they wear khaki, not white.”

We saw the shells bursting amongst the horses and their riders, all of whom came forward at a quiet walk trot, in parade ground formation, each man and horse in his exact place.

Shortly afterwards, our machine guns opened a heavy fire, raking the advancing cavalry with a dense hail of lead. But they came quietly forward, though the shells were bursting amongst them with intensified fury, and not a single man or horse fell.

Steadily they advanced, clear in the shining sunlight; and a few paces in front of them rode their Leader, a fine figure of a man, whose hair, like spun gold, shone in an aura around his bare head. By his side was a great sword, but his hands lay quietly holding his horse’s reins, as his

huge white charger bore him proudly forward.

In spite of heavy shell, and concentrated machine gun fire, the White Cavalry advanced, remorseless as fate, like the incoming tide surging over a sandy beach. Then a great fear fell on me, and I turned to flee; yes I, an Officer of the Prussian Guard, fled, panic-stricken, and around me were hundreds of terrified men, whimpering like children, throwing away their arms and accoutrements in order not to have their movements impeded, all running. Their intense desire was to get away from that advancing White Cavalry; but most of all from their awe-inspiring Leader.

That is all I have to tell you. We are beaten. The German army is broken. There may be fighting, but we have lost the war. We are beaten, by the White Cavalry. I cannot understand.

Captain Hayward continues: “During the following few days I examined many prisoners, and in substance, their accounts tallied with the one given here. This is in spite of the fact that at least two of us could swear that we saw no cavalry in action, here or elsewhere, at that particular time. Neither did any of us see so much as a single white horse either with or without a rider. But it was not necessary for us to do so, the evidence of their presence had to come from the enemy.

“Shortly after this, the American forces came into action on the whole front, and about the second week in July there was a general advance which resulted in the capture of over 4,000 enemy and 100 guns on the sector between Bethune and Ypres during the ensuing weeks” (this account is taken from *New Beginnings*, December 2001).

Andrew Adams in his book *As Birds Flying*, sums up the extraordinary event:

“The Germans had seen on the rise beyond Bethune what they initially thought was a brigade of cavalry advancing toward them. The Germans thought it strange that this cavalry was dressed in white and mounted on white horses. Artillery and, later, machine-gun fire was brought to bear, but the white cavalry came on in perfect formation, with not a rider nor horse falling. The Germans saw then that these beings astride their white horses were dressed not in uniforms but in white robes. At their head was a fine figure of a man whose hair, like spun gold, shone in an aura around his head. At his side was a great sword. The Germans said a great fear then fell upon their soldiers and they turned and fled from the white cavalry. *A few days previously, King George V had once again called the nation to prayer*” (p.157).

For a more detailed account of these unusual manifestations, and others, which occurred during World War II, I refer the reader to the book *We Have a Guardian*, by W. B. Grant.

Official reports give July 11<sup>th</sup> as the date of the Allied advance. By November 11<sup>th</sup>, 1918, at 11:00am, the war ended and an Armistice was declared. Between these dates the British and Allied forces captured 385,000 prisoners, and over 5,000 guns.

Things would have turned out quite differently if it had not been for the timely intervention of the “Angels of Mons” and the “White Cavalry.” Both of these miraculous manifestations, and deliverances, occurred as a result of national intercessory *prayer*.

### *Allenby and the Road to Jerusalem*

Surely the most phenomenal aspect of the First World War, which had the most to do with miraculous divine intervention and fulfillment of Biblical prophecy, was the campaign to defeat the Turkish Empire and recapture Jerusalem from Turkish control. The Turks had ruled the region for almost five centuries, as part of the Ottoman Empire.

In accomplishing this feat, Almighty God used a quiet-spoken man, General Edmund H. H. Allenby, born in 1861. He had participated in the Boer War in South Africa, and seeing the slipshod incompetence of his superiors, determined to instill common sense, imagination, and thorough preparation into military planning and strategy. Allenby radiated tremendous resolution, decisiveness and iron discipline.

General Allenby was not only a military genius, but a sensitive man who was deeply interested in music, literature, history, and roses. He deeply believed in God and often consulted the Bible for spiritual guidance and when campaigning in Palestine, for historical and geographical insights. He often asked staff officers to bow their heads and pray with him for success in combat with few casualties. When British artillery came within striking distance of Jerusalem, he didn't want to have to fire on the holy city. He cabled Prime Minister Lloyd George for instructions, and he replied to do whatever he deemed necessary. He cabled the King George V for guidance, and he replied, “Pray about it.”

Gathering his staff together, they prayed, as the King advised. Soon thereafter he was given the amazing news that the Turkish army had ceased firing and the Turkish garrison in Jerusalem had surrendered! The date was December 9, 1917.

What had led up to this prodigious event? God was in the process of fulfilling His divine timetable for prophecy. As we have seen earlier in the pages of this book, God works prophetic events out on a unique schedule. From the time ancient Judea was carried away into captivity by king Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon in 604 B.C., the word of God had foretold that the Jewish people would suffer “seven times” for their sins (Lev.26:18). Seven “times” mean seven prophetic “years” of 360 days each – or a total of 2,520 days, each day representing a year in fulfillment (Num.14:34; Ezek.4:6). Counting 2,520 years from 604 B.C., brings us to 1917 A.D. – the very year General Allenby liberated Palestine from the control of the Turkish Empire, restoring it to the

control of the House of Israel, and that same year the Jews were permitted to begin emigrating back to Palestine by the Balfour Declaration.

### *Beersheba*

But there is much more to this significant fulfillment of Biblical prophecy. Unlike his predecessors who sought to capture Gaza directly and were repulsed, Allenby decided to reverse the seemingly logical plan. He made Beersheba, the “Well of the Oath,” the first target of his attack. This would “break the hinge” of Gaza and hopefully would catch the Turks by surprise. But it meant he would have to send a large force across the waterless desert undetected, to achieve complete surprise. Otherwise, the operation would end in disaster. Timing was crucial. And so was stealth.

To achieve their aims, the British embarked on one of the most successful ruses of deception in the history of warfare. They managed to convince the Turkish commanders and their German advisors that they were really going to attack Gaza, just as before, merely jabbing in a feint toward Beersheba to make them think otherwise. The ruse succeeded, and 47,000 British infantry marched secretly by night to outflank Beersheba.

On the night of October 30, 1917, after desperate combat, a British fighter shot down a German spotter aircraft which had taken pictures behind British lines which would have exposed the British strategy and meant certain defeat.

Up until 1917, the Turks had enjoyed air supremacy in the battles in the Middle East, with German-flown aircraft supporting them. Allenby knew that for him to emerge victorious, he would have to have air supremacy. He cabled Britain for over 60 modern aircraft. From 1917 on, the enemy aircraft were almost driven from the skies. The British airplanes swooped down upon the hapless Turks, machine-gunning, bombing, and strafing targets at will, and spotting for artillery bombardments.

Beersheba had to be taken the day it was attacked, before the Turks could send reinforcements. At 3:00 pm, the British launched their final attack – the last major cavalry assault in modern warfare. Eight hundred men charged forward in the dimming sunlight, swinging their bayonets. With the sun setting behind them, they took Beersheba. The German engineer, however, had begun detonating the explosives planted to blow up all Beersheba’s water supplies. Two Australian Light Horsemen caught him in the act, and for a “few moments three men held the fate of Allenby’s campaign to capture Jerusalem and the entire future of the Middle East in their hands,” writes Andrew Adams in *As Birds Flying* (page 61).

Adams continues, “The course of Biblical prophecy and history could be changed in a split second of time, with a few twists of wire and flicks of a switch. All the planning and all the fighting hinged on this small personal confrontation.” The wells of Beersheba were saved, and as the sun set, 58,500 men and 100,000 animals swarmed into Beersheba, with plenty of water to slake their thirst. Says Adams, “History’s last great mounted charge had saved an army and set it on the way to Jerusalem” (p.63).

### *The Battle for Jerusalem*

Allenby had advanced 50 miles in ten days against a tough Turkish army. How good soldiers the Turks were was revealed at Gallipoli, near the Dardanelles, when the Turks had stood off and defeated a British attempt to seize the straits and bring an army up through eastern Europe to aid the Russians on the eastern front. In this fighting, the British had to finally withdraw, suffering 252,000 casualties. But the Turks also suffered similar casualties and were near the breaking point. Perhaps this “defeat” for the British was a victory in disguise, because it destroyed some of the best Turkish fighting units, thus preventing their later disposition to Palestine to bolster defenses there! If the British had succeeded in Gallipoli, then Jerusalem would not have been attacked, or have fallen, in the Biblical prescribed prophetic timetable.

Says Adams, “The spectre of assaulting Jerusalem haunted many knowing full well the sullen ferocity the Turks could show in defense. But spreading from regiment to regiment, from padre to padre, there was a feeling that something unusual was about to happen. Some said Biblical prophecy was going to be fulfilled” (p.71).

A costly, nasty battle appeared to be in the offing. At dawn on December 8, strong defensive positions were stormed and seized west of Jerusalem. Near sunset, British troops occupied the Mount of Olives to the east, after some of the bitterest fighting of the war.

At this point, “A *sudden panic* fell on the Turks west and southwest of Jerusalem. Cavalry and transport columns broke ranks and galloped furiously cityward along the Jaffa road. In passing, they alarmed all units within sight or hearing and the infantry arose and fled bootless and without rifles, never pausing to think or fight. While the shades of night hung about the Holy City, Turkish guns fired continuously to cover their retreat. German and Turkish officers, wild with rage, tried to rally the retreating rabble, but to no avail. This day, December 8, was the *Feast of Hanukkah* commemorating the *deliverance of Jerusalem* by Judah Maccabaeus many years ago” (p.74-75).

In 164 B.C. Jerusalem had also been saved from Syrian occupation by the heroic forces of the Maccabees. The Temple of God was recaptured on Kislev 25 and cleansed from contamination. This gave rise to the Jewish festival of Hanukkah, the “Festival of Lights.”

The governor of Jerusalem, Izzet Bey, wrote a letter of surrender. At two o’clock in the morning, December 9, worn-out Turkish troops began filing through the Jaffa gate, into Jerusalem. Officers were heard to sullenly mutter, “We’ve got to go.” From 2:00 am to 7:00 am, Turkish troops streamed through and out of the city. The mayor of Jerusalem, with the surrender letter composed by the Turkish governor, bearing a white flag, sought to deliver the notice of surrender to the British, but first encountered a party of British cooks who had lost their way. A group of gunnery officers were too busy to be bothered with it, but eventually the surrender party found General O’Shea of the 60<sup>th</sup>

Division who formally accepted the surrender.

It was December 9, 1917.

***“Like Birds Hovering”***

What is so significant about the capture of Jerusalem? The prophet Isaiah wrote: *“Like birds hovering overhead, so the LORD of hosts will protect Jerusalem; he will protect and deliver it, he will spare and rescue it”* (Isa.31:5, NRSV). This was written by Isaiah the prophet in 713 B.C. – about 2,700 years ago.

One of the key factors that led to Allenby’s successful conquest of the Turks and the capture of Jerusalem was his *air superiority* – the absolute domination of the skies by British airmen – “like birds hovering.” The Turks counter-attacked Jerusalem thirteen times, but were beaten off as citizens in Jerusalem prayed on their rooftops that the British might withstand the attacks. The attacks all failed, as Turkish prisoners later related, because of the constant bombing and machine-gunning from aircraft! As one captured officer put it, they were “like a flock of angry birds.”

There was a proverb among the Arabs, which was well known to the Turks: “When the waters of the Nile flow into Palestine, then will a prophet of the Lord deliver Jerusalem from the Turkish yoke.” To the Arabs, Allenby was known as “Allah-en-Nebi” which means “prophet of the Lord.” And, the British army had, as it marched from Egypt to Gaza, laid a pipeline carrying fresh water from the Nile delta. Thus to the Arabs and superstitious Turks, it appeared that Allenby was the embodiment of the fulfillment of this ancient prophecy!

It is also striking that from the conquest of Beersheba, 31 October, till the fall of Jerusalem, was precisely *forty days* – a very significant number in the Bible, representing a ‘time of trial and testing.’”

Is it mere coincidence that the Church of England’s Prayer Book had in its morning lesson for December 8, 1917, Isaiah chapter 31, verse 5 – *““Like birds hovering overhead, so the LORD of hosts will protect Jerusalem”*”? In the Prayer Book of Edward VI, 1552 A.D., Isaiah 31 was the lesson for December 12. When revised in 1862 it became the lesson for December 8. Andrew Adams writes:

“The Church of England’s Prayer Book had in its morning lesson for 8 December 1917, Isaiah Chapter 31, which of course included verse 5. December 8 was the date that the Turks began their disorderly retreat from Jerusalem. From thousands of scriptures which could have been chosen for December 8, the very prophecy which was to be fulfilled on that date happened to be the lesson!

“In the Prayer Book of Edward VI, 1552, the chapter Isaiah 31 was the lesson for December 12. In the revision in 1662, it became the lesson for December 9, while in the revision in 1872 it became the lesson for Dec-

ember 8. *Thus for 365 years Isaiah 31 was the lesson for the very days in December during which Jerusalem would be delivered from the Turks to Israel-Britain*” (*As Birds Flying*, p.99).

Andrew Adams notes that Dr. Grattan Guinness in 1886 boldly predicted, from Bible prophecy, “the very year 1917 when Jerusalem would be delivered.” He adds, “This was confirmed in 1898 by Dr. H. Aldersmith – another student of Biblical prophecy. He also stated that he believed some type of flying machine would play a major role in this deliverance” (*ibid.*). Notice that this, of course, was several years before the “airplane” was even invented. The Wright Brothers did not fly their first flimsy airplane until 1903 at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina.

Adams also points out that Daniel, chapter 12, speaks of a deliverance of God’s people from “the abomination of desolation” after 1335 days (verse 12). This “abomination of desolation” can be seen as the Muslim occupation of the Holy City of Jerusalem and the Temple Mount. Thus, if we count from the rise of Mohammedan power, which began in 622 A.D., with Mohammed’s flight from Mecca to Medina where he was received as a prophet and a prince – 1335 years later, *by the Muslim lunar calendar*, brings us to the year *1917 A.D.*! Says Adams, “Egyptian coins minted in 1917 bear two corresponding dates, side by side, the Muslim date in Arabic numerals **1335** and in ordinary numerals **1917**” (p.100). The Muslim calendar has twelve lunar months, so approximates 354 days a year, and is 11 days shorter than the Roman solar-based calendar. Therefore, from 622 A.D. to 1917 A.D., according to the Muslim lunar calendar, is a period of exactly 1335 years!

Adams also reveals that if we use the Roman calendar’s solar year, we also arrive at some significant dates in Middle Eastern history. Applying the solar calendar of 365  $\frac{1}{4}$  days in a year, 1260 solar years from 622 A.D. brings us to 1882, the year Britain invaded Egypt, which was then part of the Turkish Ottoman Empire, causing a decline in the Turkish power. 1290 solar years brings us to 1912, the year of the First Balkan War, which was the beginning of the final break-up of the Turkish Empire. Subtracting 1335 solar years from 622 brings us to 1957 – a year of great turmoil in the Middle East, involving especially Israel, Egypt and Turkey.

What about the date December 9, itself? Says Adams, “*Even the day and month of Jerusalem’s deliverance* was recorded by the little known prophet Haggai. He said it would be the 24<sup>th</sup> day of the Hebrew month Kislev, which for the year 1917 was 9 December” (p.105). God brought a message of blessing to the Jews during the time of Zerubbabel, when the Temple of God was rebuilt in ancient times. The blessing message was delivered on the 24<sup>th</sup> day of the ninth month, Kislev (Haggai 2:15-18). Three times in the book of Haggai God emphasized for His people to “consider” this date!

As Adams says, “Therefore we may recognize here again the finger of God in the deliverance of Jerusalem, when we find that it occurred on the exact date of the blessing foretold through Haggai twenty-four centuries beforehand, for in 1917 the 24<sup>th</sup> Kislev fell on 9 December. Furthermore, all Hebrew days begin at the previous sunset, and from the beginning of the 24<sup>th</sup> Kislev (sunset on 8 December 1917) and all through the night,

Turkish troops were evacuating the holy City. By early morning, all had gone and soon after 8:00 am on 9 December (24<sup>th</sup> Kislev), the Mayor of Jerusalem, under a white flag, was seen coming from the city to surrender the keys” (p.107-108).

***“Beyond All Reasonable Doubt”***

Concludes Adams: “It must surely be *beyond all reasonable doubt* that all these extraordinary prophecies cannot just be coincidence! Many incidents related in the history of this campaign also bear the stamp of an overriding divine omnipresence – the defeat at Gallipoli making a campaign in Palestine to defeat Turkey, and therefore take Jerusalem, a necessity, Allenby’s interest in divine prophecy and the identification of Britain and kindred peoples as being of Israel.”

The brilliant plan of deception to fool the Turks, the shooting down of the German spotter plane, the mounted charge just before nightfall to secure Beersheba and its water wells, just before the German engineer began to blow them up, the unexplained “panic” of the Turkish troops on the evening of December 8, as the British approached – surely all these “coincidences” when put together demonstrate the reality of Divine Intervention and the Hand of Providence!

Many men in Allenby’s campaign insisted they had seen visions and angelic beings at various times during the fighting. After a successful battle at Wadi El Arish, returning British troops saw a “mysterious series of night manifestations.” Says Andrew Adams:

“From the ANZAC commander (Chauvel) down through the officers and troopers, visions of ancient buildings, strange animals (for the region of Palestine), lighted villages and angelic beings were witnessed en masse. During debriefing, the stories of hundreds of men were corroborated through cross-checking examinations. As there was no logical explanation, officially the incident was recorded as ‘lack of sleep,’ with a reference to the mysterious ‘Angels of Mons, in 1914 when thousands had seen angelic beings” (p.155).

Adams continues:

“Reports of angelic beings appearing during fighting occurred right up to the cessation of hostilities in Palestine in 1918. They are too numerous to detail, however it is interesting to note that once again men of all ranks swore that they saw them. Statements were also taken from captured Turkish and German officers who had witnessed the same manifestations. General Allenby called for and interviewed some witnesses himself. However, the official army view was ‘hallucinations caused by extreme weariness” (*ibid.*).

Almighty God is very much alive, and present, and active, on the behalf of His people, to accomplish His will. We are indeed a people of Destiny!

Our Great God – the God of Israel – has not lost His power or His interest and love for His people. He intervened in World War I, at significant times, when it suited His purpose, and saved His people from sore defeat. When? *When His people unitedly cried out to Him in prayer, in all the churches and synagogues, and amongst the military planners, leaders and soldiers, when they implored His mercy, forgiveness, and deliverance.*

I pray earnestly and hopefully that our precious people will never forget this divine truth – the power of heart-rending prayer. I pray we will remember always this divine maxim – this visceral, unalterable truth. And I pray that we will take it to heart.

Almighty God says, “See, the LORD’s hand is not too short to save, nor his ear too dull to hear. Rather, your iniquities have been barriers between you and your God, and your sins have hidden his face from you so that he does not hear” (Isa.59:1-2, NRSV).

God told king Solomon,

“If my people, who are called by my name humble themselves, pray, seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin and heal their land” (II Chron.7:14).

When danger and peril threaten, there is hope if we turn our hearts to God. Almighty God says,

“Yet even now, says the LORD, return to me with all your heart, with fasting, with weeping, and with mourning; rend your hearts and not your clothing. Return to the LORD, your God, for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love, and relents from punishing” Joel 2:12-13).

### ***Miracle of Dunkirk***

Many have written about the miracle of the deliverance of the British army at Dunkirk, in the beginning months of World War II. The German army had pinned about 400,000 Allied troops against the coast of Flanders on May 24, 1940. There seemed no escape. Annihilation was imminent. Hitler’s advancing tanks were only ten miles away, and there was nothing in between. Yet the trapped army was saved. By June 4, just eleven days later, over 338,000 men had been safely evacuated to England in one of the greatest rescues of all human history – a crucial turning point of World War II.

Writes Walter Lord in *The Miracle of Dunkirk*:

“ ‘*Miracle*’ – that was the word. There seemed no other way to describe such an unexpected, inexplicable change in fortune. In his address to Parliament Winston Churchill called it a ‘miracle of deliverance.’ Writing

a naval colleague, Admiral Sir William James of Portsmouth could only ‘thank God for that *miracle* at Dunkirk.’ Gort’s Chief of Staff, General Pownall, noted in his diary, ‘The evacuation from Dunkirk was *surely a miracle*.’

“Actually, there were *several miracles*. First, the weather. The English Channel is usually rough, rarely behaves for very long. Yet a calm sea was essential to the evacuation, and during the nine days of Dunkirk the Channel was a millpond. Old-timers still say they have never seen it so smooth. . . .

“*Another miracle* was Adolf Hitler’s order of May 24, halting his tanks just as they were preparing to close in for the kill. That day Guderian’s panzers had reached Bourbourg, only ten miles southwest of Dunkirk. Nothing stood between them and the port. The bulk of the BEF [British Expeditionary Force] still lay near Lille, 43 miles to the south. By the time the tanks began rolling again in the predawn hours of May 27, the escape corridor had been established, the BEF was pouring into Dunkirk and Ramsay’s rescue fleet was hard at work. . . .

“Still *another miracle* was provided by the Luftwaffe itself. Perhaps Goering could never have stopped the evacuation, but he could have caused much mischief. The German planes rarely strafed the crowded beaches; they never used fragmentation bombs; they never attacked tempting targets like Dover or Ramsgate. None of this was through lack of desire; it was through lack of doctrine. The Stuka pilots had been trained for ground support, not for interdiction. The fighters were expected to stay upstairs, covering the bombers, not to come down and mix it up. Whatever the reasons, these lapses allowed additional thousands of men to come home.

“ ‘Had the BEF not returned to this country,’ General Brooke later wrote, ‘it is hard to see how the Army could have recovered from the blow.’ . . . “In the summer of 1940 they were the only trained troops Britain had left. Later, they would be the nucleus of the great Allied armies that won back the Continent. The leaders – Brooke, Alexander, and Montgomery – to name only three – all cut their teeth at Dunkirk.

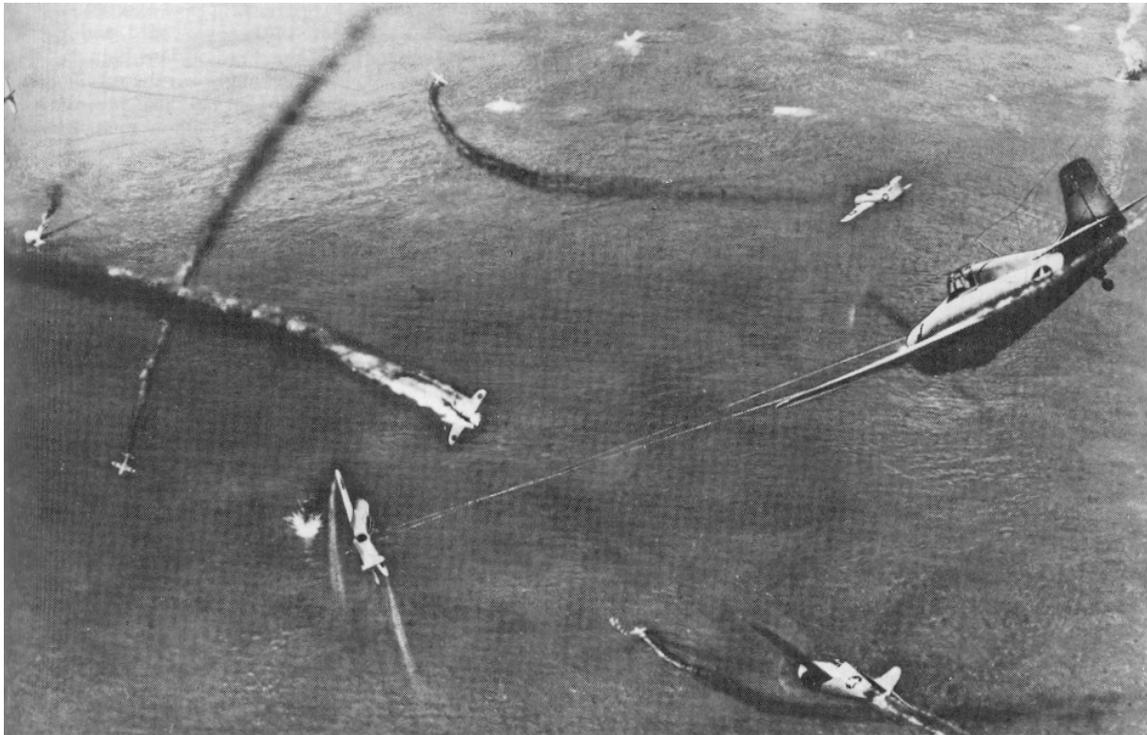
“But the significance of Dunkirk went far beyond such practical considerations. The rescue electrified the people of Britain, welded them together, gave them a sense of purpose that the war had previously lacked” (pp.272-274).

In many ways, Dunkirk was a major turning point of the war. If the British had been defeated at Dunkirk, Britain would have fallen. If that had happened, Germany would have concentrated all her energy on Russia, and there would have been no “Stalingrad.” Germany would have won. The history of the world would have been changed. There would have been no invasion of North Africa, no Normandy.

### *Miracle at Midway*

It was also in World War II that God Almighty showed His divine hand in the Pacific, at the Battle of Midway island. In a fateful total of just *six minutes*, at the Battle of Midway in the Pacific, American attack planes – especially dive bombers – struck a death-blow against the Imperial Japanese fleet. In just a few minutes the pride of Japan – three aircraft carriers – were burning like infernos of hell, and a fourth carrier was sunk a few minutes later. The U.S. planes had caught them unprepared, with no fighter cover, with stockpiles of bombs lying on their decks. Four Japanese carriers were sunk, and a minuscule American fleet of 28 ships turned back the Japanese fleet of 88 vessels, including the world's most powerful battleships.

The whole story is quite remarkable. Several miracles were involved in this amazing victory. First was the strange way the navy cryptographers were able to crack the imperial Japanese code just in time to learn of their plans to attack Midway. This allowed the U.S. to send its few remaining aircraft carriers to the area to protect the island base. The whole plan depended on the U.S. fleet remaining undetected by the Japanese. Fortunately, the Japanese spotter airplane, which was to scout the area where the U.S. fleet lay in waiting, developed trouble and was delayed in getting to its patrol area.



The U.S. launched its planes to attack the Japanese fleet. The torpedo bombers attacked first, but their torpedoes did not work properly. Little damage was done. However, this attack caused the Japanese air cover, protecting their fleet, to descend from their positions over the fleet, to swoop down to destroy the American torpedo bombers, leaving the fleet unprotected and vulnerable to American dive bombers which soon

arrived at the opportune moment!

The Japanese had already launched one air assault on Midway island. Their planes caused much damage, and returned to their carriers to prepare for another assault. They were loaded with new bombs when the discovery of the American fleet was made. The admiral quickly decided to unload the bombs which were intended for Midway and replace them with armor piercing bombs – designed to sink ships. *While they were in the process of converting to armor-piercing bombs, the American dive bombers struck!*

The previous picture is of the Battle of Midway in the Pacific, during World War II. Midway was a major turning point of World War II, when US aircraft from the carriers *Yorktown*, *Hornet* and *Enterprise* destroyed four Japanese carriers and broke the back of Japanese air power – in a total of eighteen minutes. The Battle of Midway has been hailed as one of the most decisive victories in history. It has fittingly been called “The miracle at Midway.” This is just another part of the puzzle – another piece of evidence clearly showing that America has been blessed by God, who has intervened on our behalf, throughout our history.

The Japanese aircraft carriers went up in wild flames like a goulsh, incendiary scene from Dante’s inferno. The course of the War in the Pacific was forever changed. The hand of God was clearly evident.

Writes Gordon W. Prange in *Miracle at Midway*:

“Nevertheless, the results were such a narrow squeak that we believe the title *Miracle at Midway* is not so much alliterative as *exactly factual*. Land-based bombing proved totally ineffectual and carrier-based efforts equally so until the last-minute linking up and successful marksmanship of the dive bombers” (p.xii).

Prange also declared:

“The final debacle was due to a stroke of good luck on the United States side – the uncoordinated coordination of the dive bombers hitting three carriers at once while the torpedo strikes were still in progress. *Except for those six minutes*, Nagumo would have been the victor”(p.375).

But it wasn’t merely “good luck.” God Almighty was fighting on behalf of modern Ephraim and Israel! He clearly intervened in ways that astonish men. Such a series of fortuitous circumstances cannot rationally be ascribed to mere “good luck”!

The Battle of Midway was one of the turning points of the Second World War. But God was not finished. He controlled the weather, to make the invasion of North Africa a success. He intervened and created favorable weather conditions which facilitated the invasion of Normandy in June 1944. The weather was so bad at the time that the Germans were certain the allies would not invade in early June. But a

surprisingly quick change in the weather, when millions were praying, enabled the greatest invasion force in history to catch the German defenders by surprise.

### *The Power of Prayer -- Battle of the Bulge*

On December 16, 1944, the German Sixth Panzer Army crept out of the Schnee Eifel Forest under the cover of heavy rains, swirling ground mists and thick fogs which muffled their sound, blotted out the sun, and limited visibility to only a few yards.

In what later came to be known as “The Battle of the Bulge,” they knifed through American lines, catching the few divisions aligned against them by total surprise. For three days, the Nazis raced ahead, jubilant, dashing toward the port city of Antwerp, Belgium. They had caught the Americans completely flatfooted and achieved complete tactical surprise. The American First Army’s VIII Corps was attempting to hold this region with only three infantry divisions spread out along an 88-mile front.

The fate of the Second World War hung in the balance. If the weather had continued bad, as meteorologists expected it to, an American counter-attack would have been impossible, aircraft would have remained grounded. The situation was desperate.

Meanwhile, shortly before the German blitzkrieg, on December 8 General George Patton, commander of the U.S. Third Army, telephoned the army chaplain, saying, “Do you have a good prayer for weather? We must do something about those rains if we are to win the war.”

The chaplain got busy, and soon came up with a short prayer which he typed on a small 3” x 5” filing card which said:

“Almighty and most merciful Father, we humbly beseech Thee, of Thy great goodness, to restrain these immoderate rains with which we have had to contend. Grant us fair weather for Battle. Graciously hearken to us as soldiers who call upon Thee that, armed with Thy power, we may advance from victory to victory, and crush the opposition and wickedness of our enemies and establish Thy justice among men and nations. Amen.”

Patton told the chaplain, James H. O’Neill, to have 250,000 printed up and distributed to every soldier in the Third Army. The General then sat down behind his desk, leaned back in his swivel chair, and said:

“Chaplain, I am a strong believer in prayer. There are three ways that men get what they want: by planning, by working, and by praying. Any great military operation takes careful planning or thinking. Then you must have well-trained troops to carry it out: that’s working. But between the plan and the operation there is always an unknown. That unknown spells defeat or victory, success

or failure. It is the reaction of the actors to the ordeal when it actually comes. Some people call that getting the breaks; I call it God. God has His part or margin in everything. That's where prayer comes in. Up to now, in the Third Army, God has been very good to us. We have never retreated; we have suffered no defeats, no famine, no epidemics. This is because a lot of people back home are praying for us. We were lucky in Africa, in Sicily, and in Italy, simply because people prayed. But we have to pray for ourselves, too."

Patton then told the chaplain that he wanted a Training Letter on the subject of Prayer to all the chaplains of the Third Army. He declared, "We've got to get not only the chaplains but every man in the Third Army to pray. We must ask God to stop these rains. These rains are the margin that holds defeat or victory." He alluded to a statement made just a few days earlier by Dr. Alexis Carrel, a foremost scientist who described prayer as "one of the most powerful forms of energy man can generate," and said, "it will be like plugging in on a current whose source is in Heaven. I believe that prayer completes that circuit. It is power."

The Training Letter was presented to Patton the next day, approved without any changes, and circulated to the 486 chaplains and every commander down to the regimental level. 3,200 copies were distributed to every unit in the Third Army. Distribution was completed on December 11-12, in advance of its date line, which was December 14, 1944. The letter said, in part:

"At this stage of the operations I would call upon the chaplains and the men of the Third Army to focus their attention on the importance of prayer.

"Our glorious march from the Normandy Beach across France to where we stand, before and beyond the Siegfried Line, with the wreckage of the German Army behind us, should convince the most skeptical soldier that God has ridden with our banner. Pestilence and famine have not touched us. We have continued in unity of purpose. We have had no quitters, and our leadership has been masterful. . . .

"Urge all of your men to pray, not alone in church, but everywhere. Pray when driving. Pray when fighting. Pray alone. Pray with others. Pray by night and pray by day. Pray for the cessation of immoderate rains, for good weather for Battle. Pray for the defeat of our wicked enemy whose banner is injustice and whose god is oppression. Pray for Victory. Pray for our Army, and Pray for peace.

"We must march together, all out for God. . . . Now is not the time to follow God from 'afar off.' This Army needs the assurance and the faith that God is with us. With prayer, we cannot fail.

“Be assured that this message on prayer has the approval, the encouragement, and the enthusiastic support of the Third United States Army Commander.”

The timing of this prayer is vital to the story. Working night and day, the prayer card and training letter were both distributed to the troops by December 12-14. The German Army breakout was on December 16. For three days, it looked as if they had pulled off a masterful stroke and would destroy the allied lines and advance, wreaking havoc in the rear, cutting the allied troops from their supplies.

General Patton and the Third Army rushed northward on December 19 to relieve the First Army’s VIII Corps. They furiously attacked the German salient from the south. Meanwhile, the weather cleared. The prayers were answered!

Says Chaplain O’Neill, “As General Patton rushed his divisions north from the Saar Valley to the relief of the beleaguered Bastogne, the prayer was answered. On December 20, to the consternation of the Germans and the delight of the American forecasters who were equally surprised at the turn-about – the rains and the fogs ceased. For the better part of a week came bright clear skies and perfect flying weather. Our planes came over by tens, hundreds, and thousands. They knocked out hundreds of tanks, killed thousands of enemy troops in the Bastogne salient, and harried the enemy as he valiantly tried to bring up reinforcements. The 101<sup>st</sup> Airborne, with the 4<sup>th</sup>, 9<sup>th</sup>, and 20<sup>th</sup> Armored Divisions, which saved Bastogne, and other divisions which assisted so valiantly in driving the Germans home, will testify to the great support rendered by our air forces. General Patton prayed for fair weather for battle. He got it” (“The True Story of the Patton Prayer,” by James H. O’Neill, *The New American*, January 12, 2004).

Once again – a miracle of deliverance – a powerful answer to prayer!

Surely there is a God in Heaven who guides the destinies of men and nations, and answers the heart-felt, earnest prayers and supplications of His people, when they turn to Him!

### *God’s Promises*

The Book of Isaiah is full of promises God made to His people, Israel, including the birthright tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh.

We read in Isaiah 41:8-14, “But you, O Israel, my servant, Jacob, whom I have chosen, you descendants of Abraham my friend, I took you from the ends of the earth, from its farthest corners I called you. I said, ‘You are my servant’; I have chosen you and have not rejected you. So do not fear, for I am with you; do not be dismayed; for I am your God. I will strengthen you and help you; I will uphold you with my righteous right hand.

“All who rage against you will surely be ashamed and disgraced; those who

oppose you will be as nothing and perish. Though you search for your enemies you will not find them. Those who wage war against you will be as nothing at all. For I am the LORD, your God, who takes hold of your right hand and says to you, ‘Do not fear; I will help you. Do not be afraid, O worm, Jacob, O little Israel, for I myself will help you,’ declares the LORD” (Isaiah 41:8-14, NIV).

### *Weighed in the Balances*

As the leading birthright tribe of Israel, our nation is even now being judged, and weighed in the balances, by Almighty God, the Giver of every good and bountiful gift. He gave us in His mercy victory in World War II. He is presently allowing us an opportunity to “prove ourselves,” and whether we are worthy of His blessings. He is testing our national character and obedience. The entire world is looking to us for leadership and guidance. Are we setting them the right example?

At the end of World War II, on board the battleship *U.S.S. Missouri*, in Tokyo Bay, General Douglas MacArthur stated:

“Today the guns are silent. A great tragedy has ended. A great victory has been won. The skies no longer rain death – the seas bear only commerce – men everywhere walk upright in the sunlight. The entire world is quietly at peace. The holy mission has been completed. . .

“As I look back on the long, tortuous trail from those grim days of Bataan and Corregidor, when an entire world lived in fear, when democracy was on the defensive everywhere, when modern civilization trembled in the balance, I thank a merciful God that He has given us the faith, the courage and the power from which to mold victory. We have known the bitterness of defeat and the exultation of triumph, and from both we have learned there can be no turning back. We must go forward to preserve in peace what we won in war.

MacArthur continued:

“A new era is upon us. Even the lesson of victory itself brings with it profound concern, both for our future security and the survival of civilization. The destructiveness of war potential, through progressive advances in scientific discovery, has in fact now reached a point which revises the traditional concept of war.

“Men since the beginning of time have sought peace. Various methods through the ages have attempted to devise an international process to prevent or settle disputes between nations. . . .

“Military alliances, balances of power, leagues of nations, all in turn failed, leaving the only path to be by way of the crucible of war. *We have had our last chance.* If we do not now devise some greater and more equitable system, Armageddon will be at our door. The problem basically is theological and involves a spiritual recrudescence and

improvement of human character that will synchronize with our almost matchless advances in science, art, literature and all material and cultural developments of the past two thousand years. *It must be of the spirit if we are to save the flesh.*”

General MacArthur hit the nail right on the head. “It must be of the spirit if we are to save the flesh,” and survive the hellish time that lays in store for the world because it has refused to acknowledge the sovereign role of Almighty God in human affairs.

### **A Prophetic Final Warning**

The Septuagint translates a special passage in Malachi:

“And behold, I will send to you Elijah the Tishbite, before the great and glorious day of the Lord comes; *who shall turn again the heart of the father to the son, and the heart of a man to his neighbor, lest I come and smite the earth grievously.* Remember the law of my servant Moses, accordingly as I charged him with it in Horeb for all Israel, even the commandments and ordinances” (Malachi 4:5-6, 4, LXX).

Please note that the Septuagint – the Greek version of the Old Testament or Tanakh – puts verse 4 after verse 6, as it is in the Jewish Tanakh. The King James and all English versions follow the Tanakh, here. Why does the LXX put verse 4 after verse 6? Scholars now point out that the LXX is based on an ancient Jewish version of the Scriptures which differs in some respects from the Massoretic text. The New Testament generally follows the version that the LXX was translated from. This implies there is ancient authority for placing verse 4 after verse 6 as it is in the Septuagint!

What does this tell us about the message of the age-ending prophet who comes in the spirit and power of Elijah? Clearly, the final admonition is meant to be the “final word” – and its placement emphasizes its importance. God intends, and “Elijah” will stress, that all God’s people must “remember the law” – the Torah – which God gave to His people in the time of Moses. This includes all the commandments and ordinances!

This tells us, in essence, *how we are to return to God!*

The time for returning is now. Let us return to our glorious heritage, our brilliant past, and the God of our fathers and forefathers, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof – the LORD of Hosts, the Holy One who inhabits Eternity, the God who revealed Himself to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Moses. The God who called Joseph to be His servant, and who blessed his sons Ephraim and Manasseh.

God Almighty, *El Shaddai*, is calling to us, now, pleading with us, saying, “I am God Almighty; walk before me, and be blameless. And I will make my covenant between me and you” (Gen.17:1-2, NRSV). God says to this generation: “Repent and

turn from all your transgressions; otherwise iniquity will be your ruin. Cast away from you all the transgressions that you have committed against me, and get yourselves a new heart and a new spirit! Why will you die, O house of Israel? For I have no pleasure in the death of anyone, says the Lord GOD. Turn, then, and live” (Ezek.18:30-32).

Will you return? Will you return to God and His ways, His truth, His commandments, through His promised Messiah?

“He has told you, O mortal, what is good; and what does the Lord require of you but to do justice, and to love kindness, and to walk humbly with your God?”  
(Micah 6:8, NRSV).

“When you search for me, you will find me; *if you seek me with all your heart*, I will let you find me” (Jer.29:11-13, NRSV).

“ ‘If with all your hearts ye truly seek me, ye shall ever surely find me,’ thus saith our God.”

--Aria No. 4, “If with all your hearts,”  
*ELIJAH An Oratorio*, by Felix Mendelssohn.

## The Recessional

God of our fathers, known of old –  
Lord of our far-flung battle line –  
Beneath Whose awful hand we hold  
Dominion over palm and pine –  
Lord God of Hosts, be with us yet,  
Lest we forget – lest we forget!

The tumult and the shouting dies;  
The captains and the kings depart;  
Still stands Thine ancient Sacrifice,  
An humble and a contrite heart.  
Lord God of Hosts, be with us yet –  
Lest we forget – lest we forget!

Far-called, our navies melt away;  
On dune and headland sinks the fire;  
Lo, all our pomp of yesterday  
Is one with Nineveh and Tyre!  
Judge of the Nations, spare us yet –  
Lest we forget – lest we forget!

If, drunk with sight of power we loose  
Wild tongues that have not Thee in awe –  
Such boastings as the Gentiles use  
Or lesser breeds without the Law –  
Lord God of Hosts, be with us yet –  
Lest we forget – lest we forget!

For heathen heart that puts her trust  
In reeking tube and iron shard –  
All valiant dust that builds on dust,  
And guarding, calls not Thee to guard –  
For frantic boast and foolish word,  
Thy mercy on Thy people, Lord!  
Amen.

-- Rudyard Kipling